



See what you and your digital SLR camera can do  
— in **FULL COLOR!**

# Digital SLR Cameras & Photography

FOR  
**DUMMIES**<sup>®</sup>

2nd Edition



David D. Busch

***Digital SLR Cameras  
& Photography***

FOR

**DUMMIES®**

2ND EDITION

by **David D. Busch**



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

## Digital SLR Cameras & Photography For Dummies®, 2nd Edition

Published by  
**Wiley Publishing, Inc.**  
111 River Street  
Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774  
[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2007 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Legal Department, Wiley Publishing, Inc., 10475 Crosspoint Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46256, (317) 572-3447, fax (317) 572-4355, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.**

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 800-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007933287

ISBN: 978-0-470-14927-0

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



## About the Author

As a roving photojournalist for more than 20 years, **David D. Busch** illustrated his books, magazine articles, and newspaper reports with award-winning images. He's operated his own commercial studio, suffocated in formal dress while shooting weddings-for-hire, and shot sports for a daily newspaper and upstate New York college. His photos have been published in magazines as diverse as *Scientific American* and *Petersen's PhotoGraphic*, and his articles have appeared in *Popular Photography & Imaging*, *The Rangefinder*, *The Professional Photographer*, and hundreds of other publications. He's also reviewed digital cameras for CNet Networks and *Computer Shopper*.

When About.com named its top five books on Beginning Digital Photography, occupying the #1 and #2 slots were Busch's *Digital Photography All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies*, and *Mastering Digital Photography*. His 98 other books published since 1983 include bestsellers like *The Nikon D40/D40x Digital Field Guide*, *The Official Hewlett-Packard Scanner Handbook*, and *Digital Photography For Dummies Quick Reference*.

Busch earned top category honors in the Computer Press Awards the first two years they were given (for *Sorry About The Explosion* and *Secrets of MacWrite, MacPaint and MacDraw*), and later served as Master of Ceremonies for the awards.



# *Dedication*

For Cathy

# *Author's Acknowledgments*

Thanks as always to senior acquisitions editor Steve Hayes at Wiley, who was quick to see that a book about digital SLR cameras should cover both the cameras and photography in depth. Special thanks as both an author and avid consumer of Dummies books go out to Wiley for publishing books like this one in full color at a price anyone can afford. Technical editor Mike Sullivan, as usual, provided his sage advice from the viewpoint of one of the pioneers of digital SLRs, dating back more than a decade. Mike was also quick to come up with useful photos to illustrate particular points when my own portfolio came up short.

More thanks to project editor Rebecca Senninger and copy editor Jen Riggs for keeping this book looking sharp. Working behind the scenes was my agent, Carole McClendon.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our online registration form located at [www.dummies.com/register/](http://www.dummies.com/register/).

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### ***Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development***

**Project Editor:** Rebecca Senninger  
*(Previous Edition: Rebecca Huehls)*  
**Senior Acquisitions Editor:** Steve Hayes  
**Copy Editor:** Jennifer Riggs  
**Technical Editor:** Michael Sullivan  
**Editorial Manager:** Leah Cameron  
**Editorial Assistant:** Amanda Foxworth  
**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case  
**Cartoons:** Rich Tennant ([www.the5thwave.com](http://www.the5thwave.com))

### ***Composition Services***

**Project Coordinator:** Adrienne Martinez  
**Layout and Graphics:** Denny Hager,  
Stephanie D. Jumper, Melanee Prendergast,  
Alicia B. South, Amanda Spagnuolo  
**Proofreaders:** R. Sean Medlock, Susan Moritz,  
Charles Spencer  
**Indexer:** Potomac Indexing, LLC  
**Anniversary Logo Design:** Richard Pacifico

---

### **Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies**

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher  
**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher  
**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director  
**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

### **Publishing for Consumer Dummies**

**Diane Graves Steele**, Vice President and Publisher  
**Joyce Pepple**, Acquisitions Director

### **Composition Services**

**Gerry Fahey**, Vice President of Production Services  
**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Contents at a Glance

<i>Introduction</i> .....	1
<i>Part I: Digital SLRs and You</i> .....	5
Chapter 1: The Digital SLR Difference.....	7
Chapter 2: Safari Inside a dSLR.....	27
Chapter 3: Tracking the Ideal dSLR.....	51
Chapter 4: Accessorizing Your dSLR.....	65
<i>Part II: Oh, Shoot!</i> .....	83
Chapter 5: Taking Control of Your dSLR.....	85
Chapter 6: Mastering the Multi-Lens Reflex.....	103
Chapter 7: Special Features of dSLRs .....	121
<i>Part III: Beyond the Basics</i> .....	135
Chapter 8: Working with RAW and Other Formats.....	137
Chapter 9: Action, Flash, and Other Challenges.....	157
Chapter 10: Composition and dSLRs .....	177
<i>Part IV: Fine-Tuning Your Output</i> .....	199
Chapter 11: Fixing Up Your Images .....	201
Chapter 12: Combining and Reorganizing Your Images .....	235
Chapter 13: Hard Copies Aren't Hard .....	257
<i>Part V: The Part of Tens</i> .....	269
Chapter 14: Ten Ways to Improve Your dSLR Photography .....	271
Chapter 15: Ten Things You Never Thought of Doing with Your Digital SLR .....	283
Chapter 16: Ten Online Resources for Digital SLR Photography .....	299
Chapter 17: Ten (Or More) Confusing Concepts Clarified .....	313
<i>Index</i> .....	325



# Table of Contents

## *Introduction* ..... 1

About This Book.....	1
Foolish Assumptions .....	2
How This Book Is Organized.....	2
Part I: Digital SLRs and You .....	3
Part II: Oh, Shoot!.....	3
Part III: Beyond the Basics .....	3
Part IV: Fine-Tuning Your Output .....	3
Part V: The Part of Tens.....	3
Icons Used in This Book.....	4

## *Part 1: Digital SLRs and You* ..... 5

### **Chapter 1: The Digital SLR Difference** ..... 7

dSLR: dNext Great Digital Camera .....	7
Improving Your Photography with a dSLR .....	9
Composing shots with a more accurate viewfinder .....	10
Flexing the more powerful sensor .....	11
Reducing noise in your photos .....	12
Reclaiming depth-of-field control .....	14
Taking photos faster .....	17
A dSLR works like a camera .....	18
Getting more lens flexibility .....	19
Freeing yourself from image editors .....	20
The Downsides That Don't Matter .....	21
The lack or expense of super-wide lenses .....	21
Fending off dirt and dust .....	22
Working without an LCD preview .....	23
Carrying that weight .....	25
Budding Spielbergs are out of luck .....	26

### **Chapter 2: Safari Inside a dSLR** ..... 27

Megapixels and Why dSLRs Have More of Them.....	27
Pixelementary, my dear Watson .....	29
Deciding how many pixels your camera needs .....	30
Matching pixels to print sizes and printers .....	31
Nothing's super about superfluous pixels .....	33



- Touring through a Digital SLR .....33
  - Sensorship.....35
  - The bits that control exposure.....40
  - Taking time out for viewing.....43
  - Through the looking glass.....44
  - Storage.....45
- Overcoming Quirks of the dSLR.....46
  - Out, out, damned spot: Cleaning the sensor .....47
  - Multiplication fables: Working around the crop factor .....47

**Chapter 3: Tracking the Ideal dSLR ..... 51**

- Features for Now and the Future .....51
- Breadcrumbs on the Upgrade Path .....53
- Cameras of Today and Tomorrow.....55
  - Basic dSLR cameras .....55
  - Entry-level enthusiast dSLRs .....57
  - Prosumer dSLRs .....58
  - Professional dSLR models .....58
  - dSLR-like cameras — a fading star? .....59
- Checking Out Key Features.....60
  - Lenses .....61
  - Sensors and image processors .....62
  - Exposure systems.....62
  - Focusing systems .....62
  - Special features.....63

**Chapter 4: Accessorizing Your dSLR ..... 65**

- Memory Cards in a Flash.....66
  - Choosing between flash memory and hard disks .....67
  - The right write speed.....67
  - Finding the key to the (capa)city .....68
- Storing Your Images .....69
  - Exploring options for backup media.....69
  - Creating image archives that last.....70
- Filtering Factors .....71
- The Tripod: Your Visible Means of Support .....74
  - Putting a tripod to good use .....75
  - Choosing a tripod.....76
- Electronic Flash in the Pan .....78
  - Perusing different types of flash units .....78
  - Tools for triggering the flash.....79
- Other Must-Have (Or Maybe-Have) Gear .....80
  - A second camera .....80
  - Sensor cleaning kit .....81
  - Close-up equipment .....81

**Part II: Oh, Shoot!.....83**

<b>Chapter 5: Taking Control of Your dSLR .....</b>	<b>85</b>
Discovering the Secrets of Exposure .....	86
Understanding why exposure is tricky .....	86
Getting exposure right with the histogram .....	88
Fine-Tuning Exposure with the Metering System .....	90
Metering works how? .....	91
Choosing a metering scheme.....	91
More versatility with metering options .....	92
The Many Ways to Choose Exposure .....	94
Adjusting exposure the easy way.....	94
Giving up control (in Program mode).....	95
Taking control .....	96
Focus Pocus .....	99
Focusing manually.....	99
Oughta' autofocus .....	101
<b>Chapter 6: Mastering the Multi-Lens Reflex .....</b>	<b>103</b>
Optical Delusions .....	104
Shooting in lower light.....	104
Improving your shutter speed .....	105
Producing sharper images .....	105
Taking a step back.....	106
Getting closer.....	107
Focusing closer .....	108
Choosing Your Prime Lens — or Zoom .....	108
Prime time .....	108
Zoom, zoom, zoom .....	110
Special (lens) delivery .....	112
Lens Concepts .....	112
Different strokes .....	113
Going for bokeh .....	114
Using Lenses Creatively .....	115
Creative use of wide angles.....	115
Creative use of telephotos .....	117
<b>Chapter 7: Special Features of dSLRs .....</b>	<b>121</b>
Feel the Noize at Night .....	121
A fast lens . . . or not?.....	122
Taking night shots at short shutter speeds .....	122
Noise Reduction Made Easy .....	123
Shake, Shake, Shake .....	125
Leaving camera shake myths behind .....	125
Testing for tremors.....	126

Everyday solutions for shakiness .....	128
Image stabilization: The ready-steady-shoot technology .....	128
Time Waits for Someone: Creating Time-Lapse Sequences .....	131
Better Infrared than Dead .....	131
Dust Off.....	133

## **Part III: Beyond the Basics ..... 135**

### **Chapter 8: Working with RAW and Other Formats ..... 137**

So Many Formats, So Little Time.....	138
Worth the Fuss: Understanding the Main Formats .....	140
Don't get TIFFed .....	140
JPEG o' my heart .....	141
The RAW deal.....	143
Choosing a File Format .....	144
TIFF enuff.....	144
JPEG junkies unite! .....	145
JPEG+RAW .....	147
Working RAW.....	147
Using RAW Files as Digital Negatives .....	148
Salvaging images from RAW files .....	148
Archiving RAW files .....	149
Finding RAW image-editing applications .....	150

### **Chapter 9: Action, Flash, and Other Challenges ..... 157**

Kind of a Lag .....	158
Comparing point-and-shoot cameras with dSLRs .....	158
Understanding the sources of lag .....	160
Minimizing shutter lag .....	161
Minimizing first-shot delays .....	162
Minimizing shot-to-shot delays .....	163
Minimizing flash delays .....	164
Shooting in Sequences.....	165
Stopping Action in Its Tracks .....	167
Going with the flow (or, panning).....	168
Catching peak action .....	169
Zapping action with flash .....	170
Flash in the Pan: Other Keys to Good Flash Photography .....	171
Understanding flash at different distances .....	171
That sync-ing feeling: Coordinating flash and shutter.....	172
Getting the right exposure .....	174
Yo, Trigger! Setting Off an External Flash.....	174

<b>Chapter 10: Composition and dSLRs</b> .....	<b>177</b>
Composing a Photo: The Basics .....	178
Composing for message and intent .....	179
Applying the Rule of Thirds .....	181
Posers and Poseurs .....	182
Shooting individual portraits .....	183
Shooting group photos .....	184
Tips for Publicity and PR Photography .....	185
Capturing Architecture .....	188
Reeg, your perspective is out of control! .....	188
Charge of the lighting brigade .....	192
You've been framed! .....	193
Designing Your Landscape Photos .....	194
Compositional Ideas That Travel Well .....	195

## ***Part IV: Fine-Tuning Your Output*** ..... **199**

<b>Chapter 11: Fixing Up Your Images</b> .....	<b>201</b>
Editor-ial Comments: Choosing an Image Editor .....	202
Adobe Photoshop .....	202
Adobe Photoshop Elements .....	205
Corel Photo-Paint .....	207
Corel Paint Shop Pro .....	208
Corel Painter .....	210
Ulead PhotoImpact .....	212
Workflow Workarounds .....	213
Fixing Your Photos .....	215
Cropping .....	216
Fixing murky or contrasty photos .....	219
Correcting those colors .....	223
Spot removers .....	226
Look sharp, be sharp .....	229
Blurring for effect .....	230
Fixing with filters .....	231
<b>Chapter 12: Combining and Reorganizing Your Images</b> .....	<b>235</b>
Making Selective Modifications .....	236
What is a selection? .....	236
Performing everyday changes with selections .....	237
Making Basic Selections .....	238
Making rectangles, squares, ovals, and circles .....	238
Selecting odd shapes .....	239
Selecting pixels .....	240

Painting selections .....	242
Fiddling with your selections.....	244
Adding to and Subtracting from Your Pictures .....	245
Evicting your ex-brother-in-law .....	245
Bringing a family closer together .....	248
Adding New Backgrounds .....	248
Combining Several dSLR Photos into One.....	251
The pitfalls of compositing images .....	254
Getting creative with compositing .....	255

### **Chapter 13: Hard Copies Aren't Hard . . . . .257**

Prints? What Prints? .....	258
You Pays Your Money, You Takes Your Choice .....	259
Doing it yourself .....	260
Online output outsourcing options.....	260
Live, and in person! .....	261
Choosing a Printer .....	263
Inkjet printers .....	264
Dye-sublimation printers.....	267

## **Part V: The Part of Tens .....269**

### **Chapter 14: Ten Ways to Improve Your dSLR Photography.....271**

Does Lighting Ever Strike Twice? .....	271
Choosing a Righteous Resolution and Other Settings.....	273
Changing environments.....	273
Living with limited memory card space.....	274
Shooting for a low-resolution destination.....	275
Hurrying along.....	275
Stop! What's That Sound? .....	276
Working the Right F-Stop.....	276
Focus Is a Selective Service .....	277
Playing the Angles.....	278
Through a Glass Brightly .....	279
Feel the Noize .....	280
Editing, Retouching, and Compositing Images.....	280
Reading the Funny Manual (RTFM) .....	282

### **Chapter 15: Ten Things You Never Thought of Doing with Your Digital SLR . . . . .283**

Capturing the Unseen with Infrared Photography.....	283
Lighting for All in Tents and Purposes .....	286

Turning Your dSLR into a Pinhole Camera .....287  
 Warping Time with Time-Lapse Photography .....289  
 Expanding Your Creativity with Slow Shutter Speeds .....291  
 Capturing an Instant in Time with Fast Shutter Speeds .....292  
 Making Your Own Effects Filters .....293  
 Shooting the Works! .....295  
 Going for Baroque .....296  
 Going Crazy with Your Image Editor .....298

**Chapter 16: Ten Online Resources for Digital SLR Photography . . .299**

All Your PBase Are Belong to Us .....300  
 Digital Photography Viewed and Reviewed .....301  
 For the Shutterbug in You .....303  
 Pop Goes the Photo! .....304  
 News Groupies .....305  
 Landscapes Can Be Luminous .....307  
 Photos That Don't Bite .....307  
 Cult of Personality .....308  
     Rob Galbraith .....308  
     Charmin' Miranda .....309  
 Don't Miss eBay .....310

**Chapter 17: Ten (Or More) Confusing Concepts Clarified . . . . . 313**

Ambient Lighting/Available Lighting .....314  
 Anti-Aliasing .....314  
 Bracketing .....315  
 Chromatic Aberration .....316  
 Dodging/Burning .....317  
 Fill Flash .....318  
 Hyperfocal Distance .....319  
 Lossy/Lossless Compression .....319  
 Moiré .....320  
 Saturation .....321  
 Threshold .....322  
 Tolerance .....323  
 Unsharp Masking .....324

*Index* .....325





# Introduction

---

**T**he digital single-lens reflex (dSLR) is the great step upward for photographers who want to expand their creative horizons — or simply just get better pictures. Whether you want to become a serious photo hobbyist, have a hankering to turn pro, or want to take advantage of the improved control digital SLRs give you over your photography, discovering how to use this tool of the future should be high on your priorities list.

In the right hands, digital SLRs in the \$600 to \$1,000 range can outshoot the \$5,000 professional models of five years ago and are light-years ahead of even the best point-and-shoot models of today. The dSLR provides more control over what portions of your image are in sharp focus, boasts lower levels of the annoying grain effect called *noise*, and operates fast enough to capture the most fleeting action. If that isn't enough, you can change lenses, too, adding super-wide perspectives or the huge magnification possibilities of long, long telephoto lenses to your repertoire.

Almost all the other advantages of digital photography come with your digital SLR camera, too. You can review your image immediately, upload the photo to your computer, make adjustments, and print a sparkling full-color print within minutes. You never need to buy film. You decide which images to print and how large to make them. You can proudly display your digital photographic work framed on your wall or over your fireplace. You can even make wallet-sized photos, send copies to friends in e-mail, or create an online gallery that relatives and colleagues can view over the Web.

## About This Book

Technology and techniques — you find both in this book. Understanding exactly how a digital SLR works can help you use its capabilities more fully. By mastering the technology, you're better equipped to understand how to use interchangeable lenses, set up speedy continuous-shooting burst modes, apply selective focus, and shoot under the lowest light levels. Understanding how a point-and-shoot digital camera works offers you little advantage because such entry-level cameras don't give you the creative control that a dSLR does.

You don't need to understand internal combustion to drive a Porsche, but it helps if you know a little about double-clutching and limited-slip differentials. Technology also provides the grounding you need to work with advanced photographic techniques, such as the ones I discuss in this book. I fill these pages with basic information and tips you can use to hone your skills while you grow as a digital SLR photographer.

## *Foolish Assumptions*

This book is written for both experienced and budding photographers who have a good grasp of using their computers and navigating the operating system, and at least a cursory knowledge of the operation of their digital SLR camera. You needn't be an expert photographer — all you need is a desire to improve your skills and knowledge.

Because dSLRs are a more-advanced type of digital camera, you might be making the upgrade from a conventional film SLR. At the very least, I assume that you aren't new to photography and have some knowledge of conventional photography. If so, this book helps you fine-tune your capabilities.

Although most of the emphasis in this book is on picture-taking, I offer a couple chapters on image-editing, too, so it helps if you have some familiarity with an image editor, such as Paint Shop Pro, Ulead PhotoImpact, Adobe Photoshop, or Adobe Photoshop Elements.

## *How This Book Is Organized*

Organization is your friend! All the chapters in this book are grouped together into parts that address a broad, general area of interest. If you're especially keen to know more about a particular topic, such as how to select the perfect dSLR or its accessories, turn to the part that includes that material. You don't have to read this book in any particular order. You can absorb each part and chapter on its own. If I explore a certain topic, such as shutter lag or infrared photography, in more detail elsewhere in the book, I give you a cross-reference pointing to the relevant section in case you want more background. Read in any order you like. Skim through and study the photo examples, or examine only the odd-numbered pages if you prefer. It's your choice. I hope that eventually you'll wade through the whole thing, but my top priority is delivering the information you need right now to take better photographs.

## *Part I: Digital SLRs and You*

Find out all the advantages of digital SLRs and why they beat the pants off both film and digital point-and-shoot cameras. Take a safari through the innards of a typical dSLR to track down the most-needed and most-desired features. Then, choose the accessories that will take your dSLR to the next level.

## *Part II: Oh, Shoot!*

Digital SLRs bristle with controls and components that give you absolute sovereignty over virtually every feature and function. In this part, you work with those controls, master the mysteries of interchangeable lenses, and discover special features, like image stabilization.

## *Part III: Beyond the Basics*

It's time to take the next step and improve your photography by using more advanced features, such as the RAW format and your dSLR's action, sequence shooting, and flash capabilities. Then, apply the advanced features to get better compositions in a variety of settings.

## *Part IV: Fine-Tuning Your Output*

Your creative possibilities don't end when the shutter snaps. After you transfer the photo to your computer, you can further enhance and refine your picture by using image-editing software. Then make hard-copy prints you can show off, hang on the wall, or display on your mantel. This part shows you some of the things you can do with your prize (and prize-winning) photos.

## *Part V: The Part of Tens*

Four (not ten) chapters are in The Part of Tens, and each provides a-dozen-minus-two interesting things you can do to enjoy your digital SLR even more. You discover the ten best ways to improve your photography *right now*, ten fascinating things you probably never thought of doing with your dSLR, and ten online resources with more information and showcases for your digital dexterity. I also provide you with clarifications for ten (or more) of the most confusing terms applied to digital photography and image editing.

## Icons Used in This Book



I use the following icons throughout the book:

The Tip icon marks tips (what a surprise!) and shortcuts that you can use to make working with your digital SLR easier.



Remember icons mark the information that's especially important to know. To siphon off the most important information in each chapter, skim through these icons.



The Technical Stuff icon marks information of a more technical nature that you can normally skip over unless you have a special interest in the background info I discuss.



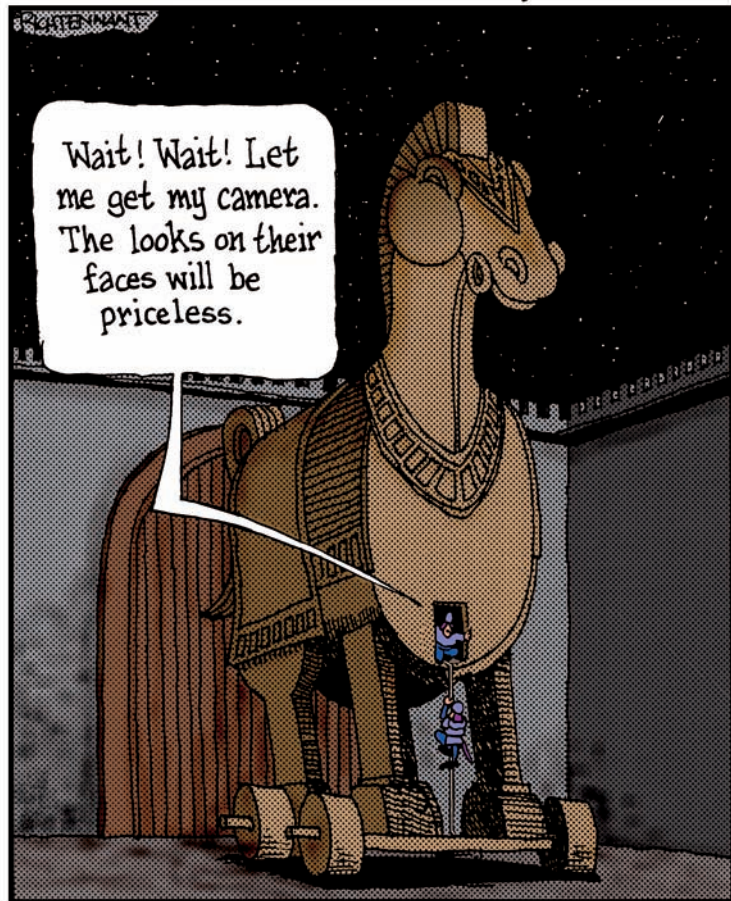
The Warning icon tells you to watch out! It marks important information that might save you headaches, heartaches, and even cash aches, especially when your dSLR starts acting in unexpected ways or won't do exactly what you want it to do.

# Part I

# Digital SLRs and You

## The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant

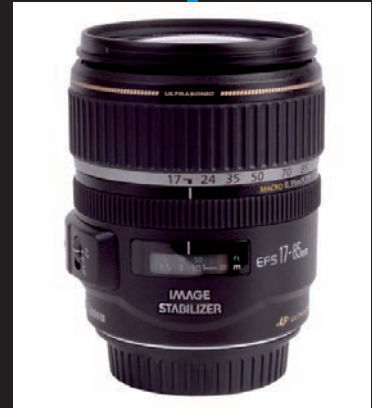




## *In this part . . .*

**T**he digital SLR difference is significant, as you discover in this part. I tell you exactly why dSLRs produce better results faster, and you master the technology behind these advanced cameras. You also discover how to select the best digital SLR for your needs and which accessories can help you do a better job.

Chapter 1 explains the advantages of dSLRs and outlines a few of the disadvantages — and why they don't matter. Chapter 2 takes you into the darkest recesses of your digital SLR camera, so you can understand sensors, shutters, and how exposure works. In Chapter 3, you find a list of the features you need, want, and wish you had. Chapter 4 tells you about the accessories that any dSLR photographer must have.



# The Digital SLR Difference

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Discovering why digital SLRs are a Big Deal
- ▶ Finding out how your shooting changes — big time!
- ▶ Exploring dSLR advantages
- ▶ Looking at downsides? *What* downsides?

Now that you can buy a fully featured digital SLR (or dSLR) for five or six C-notes, virtually everyone, including your grandmother, probably knows that SLR stands for *single lens reflex*. However, your Nana — or you for that matter — might not know precisely what *single lens reflex* means. *SLR* is a camera (film or digital) that uses a marvelous system of mirrors and/or prisms to provide bright, clear optical viewing of the image you're about to take — through the same lens that's used to take the picture.

The key thing to know is that a dSLR is a very cool tool for taking photos electronically.

Welcome to the chapter that tells you exactly how smart you were when you decided to upgrade from whatever you were using previously to a digital single lens reflex camera. You find out how a digital SLR transforms the way you take and make pictures, why the strengths of the dSLR are important to you, and why the few downsides really don't matter. Although digital SLRs have become a Big Deal, it's not too late to get in on the ground floor, and I tell you why.



## *dSLR: dNext Great Digital Camera*

Surprise! Digital SLRs are now available in virtually every price range. It was amazing when these cameras, which as recently as 2004 cost \$2,000 or more, dipped below the \$1,000 price point. By 2007, dSLRs — complete with a zoom lens — could be had for \$599 or less. And resolution has been increasing dramatically. Today, it's hard to find a dSLR that *doesn't* have at least ten million pixels' worth of image-grabbing sharpness.

So, almost anyone can afford to make the jump to a digital SLR. If you have, you've discovered that the dSLR lets you take pictures the way they're *meant* to be taken. After using other film or digital cameras, avid photographers interested in taking professional-looking photos notice why dSLRs stand out:

- ✔ **You can view a big, bright image that represents (almost) exactly what you'll see in the final picture.** No peering through a tiny window at a miniature version of your subject. No squinting to compose your image on an LCD (liquid crystal display) viewfinder that washes out in bright sunlight. Nor do you have to wonder whether you've chopped off the top of someone's head or guess how much of your image is in sharp focus.
- ✔ **A dSLR responds to an itchy trigger finger almost instantly.** Forget about pressing the shutter release and then waiting a second or two before the camera decides to snap off the shot. Unlike some sluggish point-and-shoot digital cameras, dSLRs can crank out shots as fast as you can press the button.
- ✔ **You have the freedom to switch among lenses.** For instance, you can switch among an all-purpose zoom lens, a super-wide angle lens, an extra-long telephoto lens, a close-up lens, or other specialized optic quicker than you can say *170-500mm F/5-6.3 APO Aspherical AutoFocus Telephoto Zoomexpialidocious*. (Best of all, you don't even have to know what that tongue-twister of a name means!)

Just be prepared to succumb to *lens lust*, a strange malady that strikes all owners of dSLRs sooner or later. Before you know it, you'll find yourself convinced you *must* have optical goodies, like the lens shown in Figure 1-1, a telephoto lens that's absolutely essential (you'll think) for taking photos of wildlife from enough of a distance to avoid scaring away the timid creatures.



**Figure 1-1:** Playing with lenses, lenses, and more lenses is one of the inevitable joys of working with a dSLR.



If you're ready to say *sayonara* to film, *adiós* to poorly exposed and poorly composed pictures, and *auf Wiedersehen* to cameras with sluggardly performance, it's time to get started.

The sections that follow (as well as other chapters in this part) introduce you to the technical advantages of the digital SLR and how to use the dSLR features to their fullest. When you're ready to expand your photographic horizons even further, Parts II, III, and IV help you master the basics of digital photography, go beyond the basics to conquer the mysteries of photo arenas (such as action, flash, and portrait photography), and then discover how you can fine-tune your images, organizing them for sharing and printing.

## Improving Your Photography with a dSLR

The differences between digital SLRs and the camera you were using before you saw the light depends on where you're coming from. If your most recent camera was a point-and-shoot digital model, you know the advantages of being able to review your photos on an LCD an instant after you took them, and, if you're serious about photography, you also understand the benefits of fine-tuning them in an image editor. If you're switching to a digital SLR from a film SLR, you're likely a photo enthusiast already and well aware that a single lens reflex offers you extra control over framing, using focus creatively, and choosing lenses to give the best perspective. And, if you're making the huge leap from a point-and-shoot non-SLR film camera to a digital SLR, you're in for some *real* revelations.

A digital SLR has (almost) all the good stuff available in a lesser digital camera, with some significant advantages that enable you to take your photo endeavors to a new, more glorious level of excellence. Certainly, you can take close-ups or sports photos with any good-quality film or digital camera. Low-light photography, travel pictures, or portraits are all within the capabilities of any camera. But digital SLRs let you capture these kinds of images more quickly, more flexibly, and with more creativity at your fingertips. Best of all (at least for Photoshop slaves), a digital SLR can solve problems that previously required working long hours over a hot keyboard.

Despite the comparisons you can make to other cameras, a digital SLR isn't just a simple upgrade from a conventional film camera or another type of digital camera. A dSLR is very different from a film SLR, too, even though some vendors still offer film and dSLRs that look quite a bit alike and share similar exposure metering, automatic focusing, and other electronics, as well as interchangeable lenses. If you look closely, you find that the digital SLR camera is different, and how you use it to take pictures is different.

In the sections that follow, I introduce you to the advanced features and inner workings so that you can begin getting the most out of your dSLR.

## Composing shots with a more accurate viewfinder

With non-SLR cameras, what you see isn't always what you get.

Theoretically, the LCD on the back of a point-and-shoot digital camera *should* show exactly what you'll get in the finished picture. After all, the same sensor that actually captures the photo produces the LCD image. In practice, the LCD might be difficult to view under bright light, and it's so small (a few LCDs on older cameras are as tiny as 1.5 inches diagonally) that you'll feel like you're trying to judge your image by looking at a postage stamp that's gone through the wash a few times.

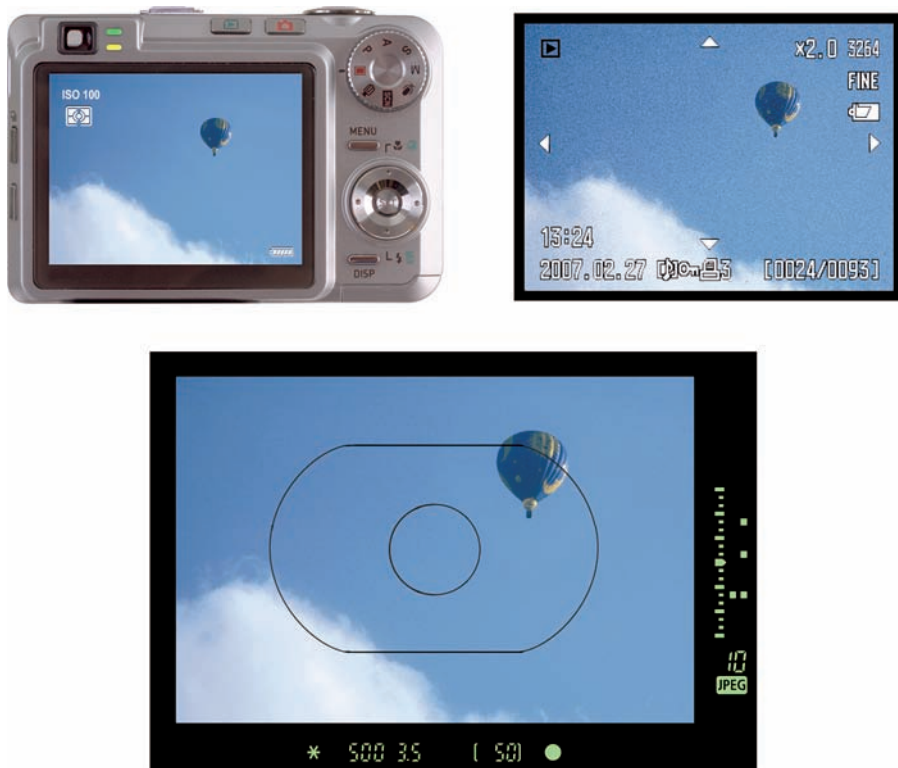
The view through a non-SLR camera's optical viewfinder is likely to be even worse: diminutive, inaccurate enough to make chopping off heads alarmingly easy, and with no information about what's in focus and what isn't.

More advanced cameras might use an electronic viewfinder (EVF), which is a second, internal LCD that the user views through a window. EVFs provide a larger image that's formed by the actual light falling on the sensor and can be used in full sunlight without washing out. However, they might not have enough pixels to accurately portray your subject and tend to degenerate into blurred, ghosted images if the camera or subject moves during framing. They also don't work well in low light levels. An EVF is a good compromise, but not as good as a dSLR for previewing an image.

A digital SLR's viewfinder, in contrast, closely duplicates what the sensor sees, even though the image is formed optically and not generated by the sensor itself. It's all done with mirrors (and other reflective surfaces) that bounce the light from the lens to your viewfinder, sampling only a little of the light to measure exposure, color, and focus. As a result, the viewfinder image is usually bigger and brighter — from 75 percent to 95 percent (or more) of life size using a dSLR "normal" lens or zoom position, compared with 25 percent or smaller with a point-and-shoot camera's optical or LCD viewfinder. You see 95 percent of the total area captured, too.

Check out Figure 1-2 and decide which view of your subject you'd rather work with. Even the 2.5-inch LCD on the point-and-shoot model in the upper-left corner is difficult to view in bright light; the electronic viewfinder in the upper-right corner can be fuzzy, making it hard to judge focus. The digital SLR's big bright viewfinder (bottom) is, as Goldilocks would say, *just right*.

A dSLR shows you approximately what's in sharp focus and what isn't (the *depth-of-field*), either in general terms (all the time) or more precisely when you press a handy button called the *depth-of-field preview*, which is available on many dSLRs. Your dSLR viewing experience is likely to be more pleasant, more accurate, and better suited for your creative endeavors.



**Figure 1-2:** A point-and-shoot LCD (upper left) or an EVF LCD (upper right) is no match for a dSLR's optical system (bottom).

### *Flexing the more powerful sensor*

Digital SLR sensors are *much* bigger than their point-and-shoot camera counterparts, and this gives them a larger area for capturing light and, potentially, much greater sensitivity to lower light levels.

A dSLR's extra sensitivity pays off when you want to

- ✓ Take pictures in dim light.
- ✓ Freeze action by using shorter exposure times.
- ✓ Use smaller lens openings to increase the amount of subject matter that's in sharp focus.

Within the Canon digital camera line alone, you find digital SLRs with 22.2 x 14.8mm to 24 x 36mm sensors (the size of a 35mm film frame). By comparison, some of Canon's digital point-and-shoot cameras use a sensor that measures only 7.8 x 5.32mm. Put in terms that make sense to human beings, the dSLR sensors have 8 to 20 times more area than their Lilliputian sensor-mates. Figure 1-3 gives you a better idea of the relative sizes.

If you think of a sensor as a rectangular bucket and the light falling on it as a soft drizzle of rain, you see that the larger buckets will collect more drops (or the particles of light called *photons*) more quickly than the smaller ones. Because a certain minimum number of photons is required to register a picture, a larger sensor can collect the required amount more quickly, making it more sensitive than a smaller sensor under the same conditions.

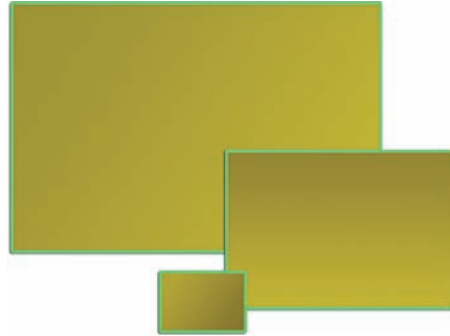
In photography, the sensitivity to light is measured by using a yardstick called ISO (International Organization for Standardization). Most point-and-shoot digital cameras have a sensitivity range of about ISO 50 to ISO 100 (at the low end) up to a maximum of ISO 800 (at the high end). Fuji has introduced a compact digicam with its SuperCCD sensor that includes *two* light-sensitive areas per pixel, boasting an ISO 1,600 maximum sensitivity, and Olympus introduced a model with a freakish ISO 10,000 capability. It remains to be seen how useful these ultra-high ISO point-and-shoot models are, but in the meantime, most other non-SLR digital cameras top out at ISO 800. Those with higher ISO settings generally don't do a very good job in terms of image quality.



In contrast, digital SLRs — with their more sensitive sensors and larger light-gathering pixels — commonly have usable ISO settings of up to ISO 1,600. Many are capable of ISO 3,200 or even higher. There's a downside to this extra speed, as you see in the section “Reducing noise in your photos,” but in general, the added sensitivity is a boon to people who want to shoot photos in dim light, take action pictures, or stretch the amount of depth-of-field available.

### Reducing noise in your photos

*Noise* is that grainy look digital photos sometimes get, usually noticeable as multi-colored speckles most visible in the dark or shadow areas of an image.



**Figure 1-3:** These images represent the comparative size of a dSLR's 24 x 36mm sensor (upper left), a dSLR's 22.2 x 14.8mm sensor (center), and a point-and-shoot digital camera's 7.8 x 5.32mm sensor (bottom).

Although you can sometimes use noise as a creative effect, it's generally a bad thing that destroys detail in your image and might limit how much you can enlarge a photo before the graininess becomes obtrusive.

The most common types of noise are produced at higher sensitivity settings. That's because cameras achieve the loftier ISO numbers by amplifying the original electronic signal, and any background noise present in the signal is multiplied along with the image information. Figure 1-4 shows an image with a relatively low ISO value of 200 that's virtually free of the noise, but jumping the sensitivity to ISO 1,600 produces a lot more noise — even though a person used a digital SLR for both pictures.



**Figure 1-4:** A noise-free photo shot at ISO 200 (top); a noisy photo shot at ISO 1,600 (bottom).



One reason why point-and-shoot digicams often don't have ISO settings beyond ISO 800 is that the noise becomes excessive at higher ratings, sometimes even worse than you see in the bottom example in Figure 1-4. However, you can boost the information that the bigger dSLR sensors capture to higher ISO settings with relatively lower overall noise. I've used digital SLRs that had less noise at ISO 800 than some poor-performing point-and-shoots displayed at ISO 100. Obviously, the larger sensors found in dSLRs score another slam-dunk in the noise department and make high ISO ratings feasible when you really, really need them.

Noise doesn't always result simply from using high ISO settings: Long exposures can cause another kind of noise. Although some techniques can reduce the amount of noise present in a photo (as you discover in Chapter 2), by and large, digital SLR cameras are far superior to their non-SLR counterparts when it comes to smooth, noise-free images.



Thanks to the disparity in size alone, all sensors of a particular resolution are *not* created equal, and sensors with fewer megapixels might actually be superior to higher-resolution pixel-grabbers. For example, most older 8-megapixel dSLRs produce superior results to the newest 10-megapixel non-SLR digicams. I've seen results from one \$3,000 4.3-megapixel pro-level dSLR that runs rings around the best images possible from an \$800 EVF model with an 8-megapixel sensor. So no matter how many megapixels a point-and-shoot camera's sensor can hoard, that sensor isn't as big as a dSLR's. And when it comes to reducing noise, the size of the sensor is one of the most important factors.

## Reclaiming depth-of-field control

*Depth-of-field* is the range over which components of your image are acceptably sharp. In general, being able to control the amount of depth-of-field is a good thing because having more or less depth-of-field gives you creative control over what's sharp and what isn't. You might prefer to zero in on a specific subject and let everything else remain blurry. Or you might want to have everything in your frame as sharp as possible.

To understand how dSLR cameras give you more control over depth-of-field, you need to understand the three factors that control this range, which I outline in Table 1-1.

**Table 1-1**      **How Depth-of-Field Affects Photos**

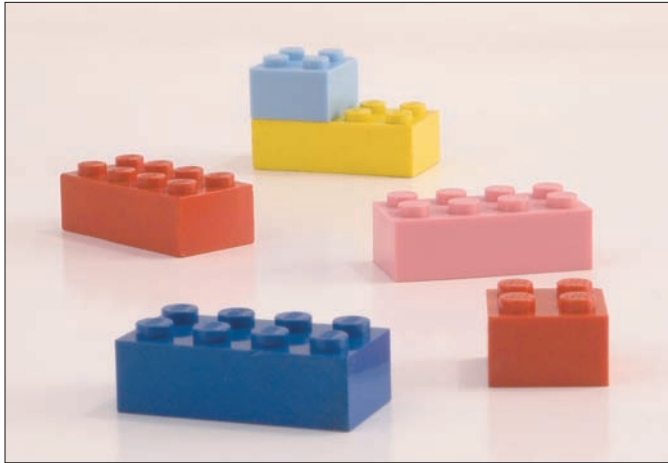
<i>Factor</i>	<i>How It Affects a Photo</i>
The distance between the camera and the subject	The closer your subject is to you, the greater the tendency for the objects in front or behind the subject to be blurry.
The size of the lens opening (the <i>f-stop</i> or <i>aperture</i> ) used to take the picture	Larger f-stops (smaller numbers), such as f/2 or f/4, produce less depth-of-field than smaller f-stops (larger numbers), such as f/11 or f/16. <b>Remember:</b> The sizes of the numbers are reversed because apertures are actually the denominators of fractions, so $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{4}$ are <i>larger</i> than $\frac{1}{11}$ or $\frac{1}{16}$ .
The magnification (or <i>focal length</i> ) of the lens	The shorter the focal length of the lens (say, 18mm or 20mm), the more depth-of-field is present. When the focal length grows longer (say, to 70mm or 100mm), depth-of-field shrinks.

Point-and-shoot digital cameras offer very little control over depth-of-field because unless you're shooting an extreme close-up (see Factor 1 in Table 1-1), virtually everything is in sharp focus (despite Factor 2). This condition (which can be a bad thing if you're trying to use focus selectively) is due to Factor 3: Non-SLRs use that tiny sensor, which calls for lenses of a much shorter focal length.

So, a point-and-shoot digital camera might have a 7.5mm to 22.5mm 3X zoom lens that provides a slightly wide-angle to slightly telephoto field of view. A digital SLR with the largest (24 x 36mm) sensor might need a 35mm to 105mm zoom to provide the same perspective.

Yet, depth-of-field is dependent on the *actual* focal length, not the equivalent. So that point-and-shoot camera's lens, even at its longest telephoto position, provides more depth-of-field than the dSLR's same-perspective zoom at its widest angle. So much is in focus with a non-SLR digital camera that, in practice, you have very little control over depth-of-field except when shooting close-up pictures from very short distances.

You can see the effect of the maximum aperture in Figure 1-5, which was shot at a small lens opening ( $f/22$ .) Although the focus is on the building block in the middle, all the blocks are fairly sharp. Shooting the same scene at  $f/5.6$  shows how control over depth-of-field can be used creatively to isolate a subject (see Figure 1-6). Only the middle left red block is in sharp focus, whereas the others are blurred. In Chapter 6, I explain depth-of-field in more detail.



**Figure 1-5:** A small aperture yields too much depth-of-field for selective focus.



**Figure 1-6:** A larger  $f$ /stop makes it easy to isolate a subject with creative application of blur.



## Taking photos faster

Everything about a digital SLR seems to work more quickly and responsively. That's important when you want to make a grab shot on the spur of the moment, or expect the camera to take an action photo *right now* when you press the shutter release at the peak moment. Most point-and-shoot digital cameras are downright sluggardly compared to dSLRs when it comes to performance. You can find improved speed in three key areas, which I explain in the following sections.

### Wake-up time

A non-SLR digicam that can be powered up and ready to snap its first photo in as little as two seconds is considered fast. Many take three to four seconds to emerge from their slumber. Worse, because they consume so much power, these cameras go into stand-by mode or shut off completely if you don't take a picture for 30 to 60 seconds.



When you flip the power switch of a dSLR, the camera is usually ready to take the picture before you can move the viewfinder up to your eye. Some are ready to go in 0.2 of a second! Digital SLRs don't need to go to sleep, either, because they consume so little power when not in active use. I've left dSLRs switched on for days at a time with little perceptible draining of the battery. Certainly, the autofocus and autoexposure mechanisms go on standby a few seconds after you move your finger from the shutter release, but they're available again instantly with a quick tap on the button.

### Shot-to-shot time

Conventional digital cameras have limits on how quickly you can take pictures in succession. Unless you're using the motor-drive-like *burst* mode, one shot every second or two is about all you can expect. Even in burst mode, you're lucky to get much more than about 1 frame per second for 5 to 11 shots, max.

Digital SLRs have large amounts of built-in memory that temporarily stores each photo you snap before the camera transfers it to your memory card at high speed. You can probably take pictures in single-shot mode as quickly as you can press the shutter release, and for at least eight to ten shots before a slight pause kicks in. With faster dSLRs and some quality level settings, you can often keep taking pictures for as long as your finger (or memory card) holds out.

A dSLR's burst mode can capture 3 to 8 frames per second for 12 to 30 shots, depending on the speed of the camera and the quality level you've chosen; lower quality (higher compression) settings produce smaller images that can be written to the memory card faster (see Figure 1-7). No point-and-shoot camera comes anywhere close to that level of performance.



Figure 1-7: Digital SLRs make high-speed action sequences easy.

### Shutter lag

When I've spoken before groups promoting my other books, such as *Digital Photography All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies*, 3rd Edition (Wiley Publishing, Inc.), the number one question I get from new digital photographers is "What can I do about shutter lag!?!". This pause — between the moment you click and the moment the sensor captures a slightly different image — seems to be the thing that digicam owners like the *least* about their shooters.

Digital SLRs experience shutter lag, too, but it's likely to be so brief — on the order of 0.1 to 0.2 of a second — that you never notice it. That's true only *most* of the time, of course. Point your lens at a difficult-to-focus subject, such as the sky, or try to take a photo under low light, and your speedy autofocus lens might hunt back and forth while you gnash your teeth in frustration. (You discover some ways around this in Chapter 5.)

### A dSLR works like a camera

Another reason why digital SLRs have improved performance is that they're easier to use, so you, as the photographer, can work faster while you shoot. Most point-and-shoot cameras have to be configured for consumers who are more interested in grabbing a quick snapshot than investing some artistry in creating a photograph.

Moreover, point-and-shoot cameras tend to be designed by an engineer who did a really, really good job adding photo capabilities to the vendor's cell phone line last year, and who obviously *must* be the best choice to cobble together a full-fledged digital camera. So, like a cell phone, non-SLR digital

cameras tend to have most of the controls tucked away out of sight in the menu system, where the average consumer never has to see them and where the photo enthusiast has to hunt for them.

Digital SLRs, on the other hand, are always designed by a team of engineers with extensive photographic experience. They know which controls are essential and which can be buried away in the menus because you access them when setting up the camera and maybe once a month (if that) thereafter.



Digital SLR designers know that you don't want to go three levels deep into a menu to set the ISO sensitivity or adjust white (color) balance for the type of illumination you're using. You want to press an ISO or a WB (white balance) key and dial in the setting without giving it much thought. You don't want to activate an onscreen display to set shutter speed or aperture — you want to have separate dials for each. Nature intended zooming and manual focusing to be done by twisting a ring on the lens — not by pressing a little lever and letting a motor adjust the lens at its own pace.

Simply having a camera that operates like a camera instead of a DVD player makes your picture-taking much easier and faster.

### *Getting more lens flexibility*

With non-SLRs, the lens mounted on the camera is the one you use. Some models have add-on telephoto and wide-angle attachments, but those accessories tend to subtract a bit of sharpness even while they change the camera's viewpoint.

So point-and-shoot camera owners must decide at the time they buy the camera what kind of pictures they intend to shoot. If they want to take a lot of photos indoors or of architecture outdoors, they might need cameras with the equivalent of a film camera's 24mm wide-angle lens, which is still fairly rare among non-dSLR models. (And if they need something even wider, they're probably out of luck.) Or, perhaps a photographer wants to shoot sports and would like a lens that's the equivalent of a 400mm lens on a film camera. Those are available, too, although not, generally, with cameras that also have wide-angle capabilities.

Digital SLR camera owners have fewer limitations. I own a 12–24mm zoom that's the equivalent of an 18mm to 36mm wide-angle lens. (You find out why lenses are measured in equivalents later in this chapter.) Other lenses I own cover every single focal length up to 500mm (750mm equivalent). I have two lenses designed especially for close-up photography and others with fast  $f/1.8$  apertures that are perfect for low-light sports shooting. I've far from exhausted the possibilities, either: Longer and wider lenses than what I own are available, along with specialized optics that do tasks, such as canceling sharpness-robbing vibration caused by a photographer's unsteady hand.



Owners of dSLR cameras don't have to mortgage their homes to buy these lenses, either. Camera vendors offer some very sharp-fixed focal length lenses (*prime* lenses) for around \$100. You'll find inexpensive 70mm to 210mm zoom lenses for as little as \$150–\$200. A versatile 28mm to 200mm zoom that I bought cost only \$300. Because dSLRs can often use lenses designed for their film camera counterparts, hundreds of inexpensive used lenses are available, too. With a non-dSLR, if you want to expand your lens horizons, you frequently have to buy a new camera. You find out more about selecting lenses in Chapter 6.

### *Freeing yourself from image editors*

Digital SLRs do more than change how you *take* pictures. They change how you *make* pictures, as well. Perhaps you're a seasoned image editor, accustomed to cropping images in Photoshop or Photoshop Elements to mimic the extreme telephoto perspective your previous camera couldn't duplicate. You might have used an image editor's Zoom Blur feature because your digi-cam's zoom lens didn't zoom fast enough to permit creating that effect in the camera, as shown in Figure 1-8. You've faked fish-eye lens effects because your camera didn't have a fish-eye lens, or you've manually added lens flare instead of trying to create the real thing.



**Figure 1-8:** Don't settle for fake zoom blur when you can have the real thing.



## A closer look at shutter lag

Typically, the snapshooter can finally coax a niece or nephew into smiling and press the shutter release to capture the moment. Or, a batter swings lustily at a fat pitch and lofts the game-winning run into the stands just as the photographer presses the shutter button. However, the crucial moment is never captured on pixels.

What happens instead is that the digicam's autofocus and autoexposure mechanisms make some last-minute adjustments, a bunch of electronic components process some algorithms,

and, eventually, two or three seconds later (it seems), the camera takes the picture. This period of time is measured in *ohnoseconds*; ohnoseconds are the interval between when you *want* to take the picture and when you actually *hear* the shutter-click sound your camera emits. I've tested hundreds of digital cameras, and the actual elapsed time for non-SLRs ranges from 0.6 seconds to 1.2 seconds under bright, contrasty lighting conditions, or up to 1 to 2 seconds in dimmer lighting. It just *seems* even longer than that.

Or, you had to blur the background of your images in an image editor because your digital point-and-shoot camera always brought *everything* into sharp focus (an excellent trait when you *want* everything in focus, and not so great when you want to use focus selectively for creative effects).

Those limitations might be behind you now. A digital SLR can do lots of tricks that you had to fake in Photoshop in the past. Image editors are still helpful for some tweaks, as you discover in Chapters 11 and 12.

## The Downsides That Don't Matter

Of course, the digital SLR isn't perfect — yet. I've found a couple downsides to using these *Wundermaschinen* that range from the annoying to the almost irrelevant. I address them in decreasing order of concern (at least for most photographers).

### *The lack or expense of super-wide lenses*

Many high-end digital SLRs have sensors that are the same size as the 35mm film frame, so there are no equivalency factors to calculate. A 200mm lens provides the same magnification on a full-frame dSLR as it does on a film camera. More importantly, a 16mm or 14mm super-wide-angle lens retains its same wide field of view.

More affordable digital SLRs have smaller-than-full-frame sensors (more on *that* in Chapter 2), so the sensor crops the field of view of any lens you mount on the camera, to match the smaller sensor size. The *crop factor* ranges from 1.3 to about 2.0 for the current, er, crop of digital SLRs. In practice, that means that a 100mm telephoto lens mounted on one of these cameras has the same field of view as a longer 130mm to 160mm telephoto lens on a 35mm film camera. Because you figure the effective field of view by multiplying the actual focal length by the crop factor, the figure is also sometimes called a *magnification factor*, and this is where all the mentions of “equivalency” come in when comparing lenses. But magnification factor isn’t an accurate term because no magnification is taking place. The camera simply crops out part of what the lens sees. Your 100mm lens might *look* like it’s been magically transformed into a longer 160mm optic, but the depth-of-field and other characteristics remain the same as the 100mm lens it really is.

Photographers who shoot sports and distant subjects often love the crop factor, even though it gives them nothing they couldn’t have achieved just by cropping a full-size frame. That’s because the crop factor *seems* to provide a longer telephoto lens for the same money. The good news turns bad, however, when they mount 28mm wide-angle lenses on their beloved dSLRs and find that they have the same field of view as a 45mm standard (*normal*) lens, or that their favorite 18mm super-wide lenses are now 29mm ordinary wide-angle optics. (I use a 1.6 crop factor in all these examples.) In this case, you get a less wide view from a particular lens.



Fortunately, plenty of true wide-angle lenses are available for digital SLRs. Three different vendors offer 12–24mm super-wide zooms for my favorite dSLR, making it possible to shoot expansive shots, like the one shown in Figure 1-9. Focal lengths down to 8mm to 10mm are available. None of these are particularly cheap. If you want to shoot wide and have a dSLR with a crop factor, prepare to spend a bit more money on lenses than you’d need to if you’d stuck to film.

On the positive side, however, most of these accessory lenses are considerably wider than the (current) widest-angle optics available for point-and-shoot cameras, which seem to get no wider than the equivalent of 24mm with a traditional film camera.

## Fending off dirt and dust

For some dSLR owners, the bane of this category isn’t the lack of wide-angle lenses, but the plethora of dust bunnies and odd particles of matter that seem to attach themselves to the camera’s sensor at every opportunity.



Take extra care when changing lenses to keep dust from wending its way back to the sensor area (which is fully exposed only when you’re taking a picture, anyway). You also need to know how to clean this dust off your sensor, a process that’s much easier to do than it is to describe. You find out more about sensor cleaning in Chapter 4.



**Figure 1-9:** Panorama-like shots are possible with ultra-wide-angle lenses.

Some photographers have problems with dust seemingly on a weekly basis. Others go months without any infiltrations. Dirt and dust and digital SLRs might be a very small problem for you or might loom larger, depending on your working habits, cleanliness, and willingness to stomp out a few artifacts from time to time in your image editor.

### *Working without an LCD preview*

Non-SLR digital cameras are able to offer a live preview of the image as seen by the sensor prior to exposure. Almost all dSLRs can't provide such a preview because the mirror used to provide the optical view of the subject is in the way. It flips up just prior to exposure. A few cameras from Fujifilm, Olympus, and Canon (such as the Canon EOS 1D Mark III) use technologies, such as dual sensors or a prism that splits incoming light into two paths (one for the sensor and one for the viewfinder), to provide a "live" preview. People who really need such a feature are delighted with this capability. But in most cases, however, when you use a dSLR, previewing images in an LCD viewer as well as the optical view just isn't needed.

You'll miss this feature in only a few cases. A digital SLR's larger optical viewfinder is usually a better choice for judging composition and depth-of-field and for framing fast-moving action. The following sections cover the key applications that *could* benefit from an LCD preview, if only your dSLR could display one on its back-panel LCD.

### *Live histograms stopped dead in their tracks*

A *histogram* is a graph that displays the tonal range of an image and can be used to judge whether a photograph is or will be under- or overexposed. The trained eye can also see whether an image is likely to have excessive contrast or look particularly flat, based on the distribution of tones in a histogram.

You can make adjustments to lighting and exposure to improve the rendition of a shot. Lacking a live, real-time histogram that can be viewed prior to taking a picture (as found in most point-and-shoot digicams), the digital SLR owner must make these decisions after the fact and adjust for the next picture. You find more about the use of histograms in Chapter 5.

### *Déjà view with extended eye-points*

The *eye-point* is the distance you can move the eye away from the viewfinder and still see the entire image for framing. An extended eye-point is useful for sports and other applications where you want to keep an eye on what's happening outside the camera's viewfinder.

A live LCD preview lets you keep the camera a few inches from your face, or even at arm's length, and still see what will be captured. Point-and-shoot digital cameras sometimes put the LCD on a swiveling mount so you can use it for framing with the camera held at waist level, overhead, or even facing you for a self portrait. Digital SLRs (except for a model from Olympus) don't have this kind of swivel LCD because they don't have the live preview that would make the capability useful.

### *Infrared imagery up to your imagination*

Infrared photos call for a filter that blocks visible light. All you see through the optical viewfinder is a vast expanse of black, which makes framing your photo difficult. A live LCD preview would give you *some* type of image, at least.

Although this problem is annoying, you can work around it. Most people don't shoot infrared photos at all. A few dedicated souls have an extra dSLR converted for full-time infrared use so that a visible-light blocking infrared filter isn't necessary. Those who do shoot infrared with their unmodified cameras find that exposures are so long, a tripod is a must. If you fall into this camp, you have two options:

- ✓ Set up your camera on a tripod, frame your picture, and *then* mount the infrared filter.
- ✓ Frame the photo as best you can, take a shot, and then use the after-shot LCD review to make adjustments, as was done for Figure 1-10.

Neither solution is very satisfactory, but the lack of LCD preview in this case is likely to be annoying only for those who take a great many infrared photos.





**Figure 1-10:** You can't preview infrared shots in a dSLR's optical viewfinder, so the photographer often shoots blind.

### *Carrying that weight*

With the exception of some tiny models, such as Nikon's latest entry-level dSLR, most digital SLRs are much bigger, heavier, and clunkier than pocket-sized point-and-shoot digital cameras. Fortunately, camera manufacturers have recognized the appeal of smaller dSLRs, so you'll find relatively compact models from Nikon, Canon, Sony, Pentax/Samsung, and others.

Of course, the more you spend on a dSLR, the bigger it's likely to be, too because vendors offer magnesium alloy bodies instead of the composite plastic used for entry-level digital SLRs. Tack on extra battery packs and special grips that let you shoot more comfortably in a vertical position, and the camera becomes even larger.

This "problem" is an annoyance only to someone who needs to travel light. For most photographers, the whole point of upgrading to a digital SLR is to gain access to the extra lenses and accessories that these cameras can use. The extra heft is part of the cost of the greater versatility. Many dSLR owners also purchase small point-and-shoot cameras to carry when weight and size are important to them.



In my case, I often use a compact version of my “big” dSLR as a backup when I’m traveling. I fully intend to take all my photos with my hefty main camera, but I would hate to be without any camera at all in case of a mishap. So, the compact dSLR goes in the bag, too, as backup.

### *Budding Spielbergs are out of luck*

Most point-and-shoot digital cameras can capture motion picture clips with monaural sound. Many offer only poor quality clips at, say, a herky-jerky 10 or 15 frames per second (fps) instead of the standard 30 fps, and resolutions are as low as 320 x 240 or 160 x 120 pixels. You might be limited to 30- or 60-second clips, tops. Higher-end, non-SLR digital cameras might give you virtually TV-quality 640 x 480 resolution at 30 fps with decent sound, and recording times as long as the available capacity of your memory card. You can even find in-camera trimming and editing facilities.

Because a dSLR’s mirror can’t flip up and down 30 times a second (the current fastest burst capability tops out at around 10 frames per second), you won’t find motion picture capabilities on any dSLR that I’m aware of. That doesn’t bother me. If I want to shoot digital movies, I take along a digital video (DV) camcorder. If I just want a few clips, I tote an old 5-megapixel digicam that shoots 640 x 480 clips up to 120 seconds long. Few people decide *against* buying a digital SLR because they can’t also shoot movies with it.

# Safari Inside a dSLR

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding megapixels and dSLRs
- ▶ Taking a guided tour through dSLR-land
- ▶ Working out the quirks and kinks of the dSLR

**I**f digital photography is the greatest thing since sliced bread, the digital SLR is the *toaster* — a no-nonsense device that anyone can use to create tasty results. Even so, you can get better results if you know a little about how your favorite gadget works. You don't need to understand Ohm's Law to make breakfast, but it's a good idea to understand a little about a toaster's innards before you poke a fork inside. In the same vein, understanding pixels, lenses, and sensors can help you get better results from your photographic appliance.

This chapter takes you on a safari through the darkest recesses of the digital SLR to give you a little knowledge about how it works before you decide to poke a figurative fork inside.

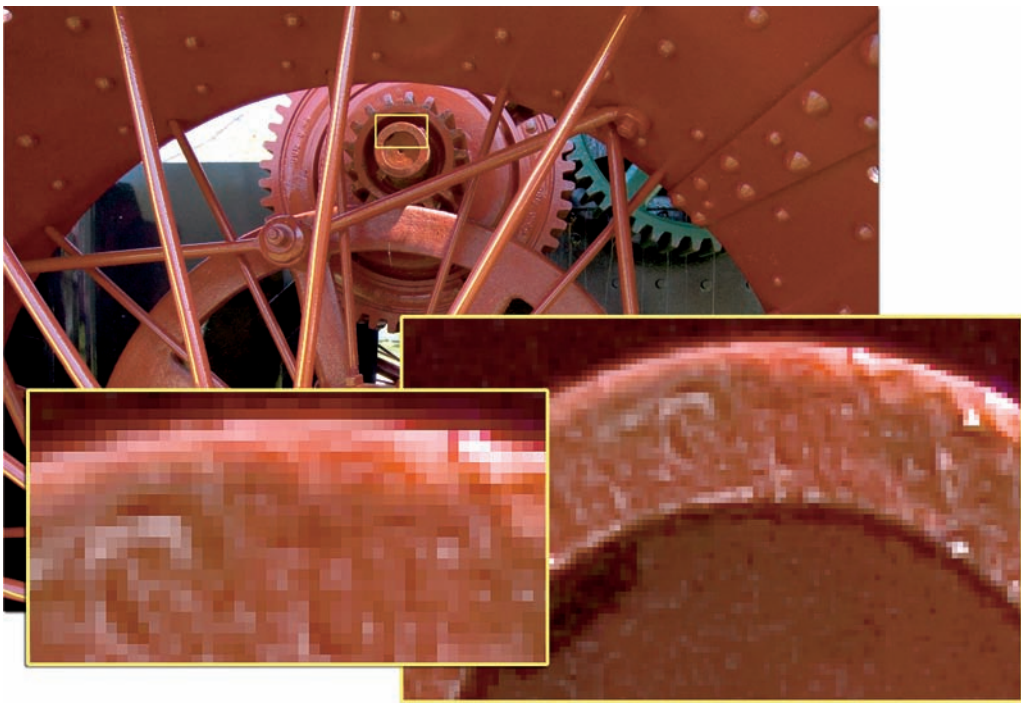
## *Megapixels and Why dSLRs Have More of Them*

If you've been working with digital images for a while, you know that pixels are your pals. They're the basic building blocks that make up an image. The term pixel is a *portmanteau*, which was Lewis Carroll's term for a new word created by combining two old words, such as combining slimy and lithe to create *slithy*. In this case, pixel stands for *picture element* and came into vogue when computer imaging became popular.



However, you've seen pixel-like components outside the digital realm, in pointillist paintings, such as the illustrations Georges Seurat created for the Broadway musical, *Sunday in the Park with George*. You also see pixel-like components in newspaper halftone photos. All these are made up of tiny dots that you can see vividly up close, but those dots blend to create continuous tones and colors when you view them from a distance, as you can see in Figure 2-1. The difference between these picture elements and those used to represent digital photos is that the digital variety is all the same size and shape, varying only in brightness and hue.

In digital images, the *pixels* — tiny squares that can be seen individually only under magnification — are arranged in rows and columns like a checkerboard that happens to measure hundreds of squares on a side. Among current digital SLRs, this array is a minimum of 2,464 pixels wide and 1,632 pixels tall, for a total of 4.3 million pixels in all. The latest digital SLR cameras for consumers actually offer many more pixels than that, from 3,008 x 2,000 (6.1 million pixels) for certain entry-level models to 3,872 x 2,592 (10 million) for the majority of digital SLRs. Of course, “pro” cameras go up to 4,288 x 2,848 (12 million) or 4,992 x 3,328 (16.6 million), and some models with 22 to 24 million pixels are in heavy rumor rotation while I write this book. That's a lot of pixels!



**Figure 2-1:** Every digital picture is made up of thousands (or millions) of pixels.

Those counts represent the number of light-sensitive areas in the digital camera's sensor, and the total is usually expressed in terms of *megapixels* (millions of pixels), and abbreviated MP. The precise dimensions might vary depending on the exact sensor used. For example, the Nikon D40 uses a 3,008-x-2,000-pixel sensor, but the original Canon Digital Rebel had a 3,072-x-2,048-pixel array. Both are considered 6MP dSLRs, even though the arrangement and number of pixels is slightly different.

### *Pixelementary, my dear Watson*

Pixels, represented by individual light-sensitive areas in a sensor called *photosites*, are what capture the detail in your image. In general terms, the more megapixels the better because when you add pixels, the ability of the sensor to capture more detail improves, and the effective *resolution* of the sensor rises.

It's like dividing a foot-long ruler into 1,200 increments rather than 120. In the former case, the ruler could measure things with  $\frac{1}{1000}$  of an inch accuracy; in the latter, the rulings could be used only in  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an inch chunks. In the same vein, a sensor of a particular size with 12MP can show much finer detail than one the same size with only 6MP.



As you can see in Figure 2-2, when the size of the pixels decreases, more of them can fit on a sensor to capture ever smaller details of the original image. However, there's more to image quality than resolution alone. Many 8MP dSLRs produce sharper and more noise-free results than 10MP non-dSLRs simply because the 8MP dSLR's sensors are physically larger, and each individual pixel is better. Some dSLRs even outperform other dSLRs with more resolution because of the quality of the sensors, lenses, or electronic circuitry. The raw number of megapixels is only a guideline even though more pixels are quite often better.



**Figure 2-2:** More pixels mean sharper images.

## Deciding how many pixels your camera needs

People contemplating the purchase of a digital SLR often agonize over how many megapixels they should buy, even though other factors, such as ease of operation and the kind and quality of lenses available for a particular dSLR, can be considerably more important in the long run. To a certain extent, this agony has been (at least temporarily) alleviated. In the past year or two, a surprising number of vendors have settled on 10MP as a basic benchmark number.

Nikon, for example, has three 10MP digital SLR cameras — a subcompact, basic entry-level model; an intermediate amateur camera; and a feature-packed advanced model that's beloved by serious amateurs and professionals alike. Canon, too, has introduced several 10MP models, and other vendors have followed. It's true that, for most applications, more resolution isn't really needed. But, with competitive pressures being what they are, it remains to be seen just how long the 10MP plateau will remain the standard. (As always, I urge those of you reading this in 2009 with your \$499 14MP cameras to refrain from laughing.)



Although more pixels usually equal more resolution and more detail in your pictures, the number of pixels you actually need depends on several factors:

- ✓ **How you'll be using the photo:** An image placed on a Web site or displayed in presentations doesn't need to have the same resolution as one that's used professionally, say, as a product advertisement or a magazine illustration.
- ✓ **How much manipulating and cropping you plan to do:** If you'll be giving your images quite a workout in Photoshop or if you often crop small sections out of images to create new perspectives, you want all the spare pixels you can muster because higher resolution images can withstand more extensive editing without losing quality.
- ✓ **How much you plan to enlarge the image:** Many people view most of their images on a computer display or in 4-x-6-inch to 5-x-7-inch prints. Any dSLR has enough megapixels for those modest applications. If you're looking to make blowups bigger than 8 x 10 inches, say, to make posters or prints displayed on the wall, you need a plethora of pixels.
- ✓ **The resolution of your printer:** Most digital images are printed on inkjet or dye sublimation devices with their own resolution specifications, usually from 300 dpi (dots per inch) to 1,440 dpi and beyond. Printers work best with images that more closely match their own ability to print detail.

If you primarily want to create prints, the following section can help you gauge which capabilities you need in your camera and printer so that you can get the best output possible.

### *Matching pixels to print sizes and printers*

If nice-looking prints are important to you, you need to pay as much attention to your printer as the number of pixels in your digital SLR. In truth, printers with lower resolution don't benefit much from digital shots with high megapixel counts. They might produce *worse* results because they're forced to discard lots of that precious detail to squeeze the picture information into their available output pixels. You need a printer with lots of resolution to do the best job with a high-resolution photo.



Calculating the appropriate resolution for a particular printer/image size combination is easy. Just follow these simple steps:

- 1. Multiply the printer resolution by the desired width of your image to get the number of pixels you need for an image that wide.**

For example, if I have a 300 dpi printer and want an 8-x-10-inch print,  $300 \times 8 = 2,400$  pixels.

- 2. Multiply the printer resolution by the desired height of your image.**

So,  $300 \times 10 = 3,000$  pixels.

- 3. Multiply the width in pixels by the height to get the number of pixels you need.**

Keeping with my example,  $2,400 \times 3,000 = 7,200,000$ .

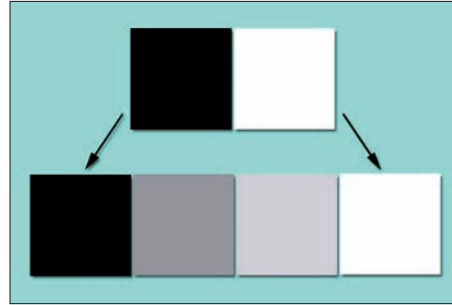
- 4. Divide the total number of pixels by 1 million to get the number of megapixels your camera needs to collect for the print.**

Technically, that's 7.2MP in my case, but a ballpark figure of 6MP will do. (The 6MP camera can hold as many as  $3,000 \times 2,000$  pixels, which gives you a 6.67-x-10-inch print, so you can reasonably assume that a 6MP image is just about ideal for a print in the 8-x-10-inch neighborhood.)

Using an image of this same resolution ( $2,400 \times 3,000$  pixels), you can print in other sizes, of course, but your printer or the software that drives it must drop or add pixels by using a process called *interpolation*, or *resampling*, which applies intricate computer calculations to come up with a reasonably good-looking representation of your original image at a different size.

✓ **Adding pixels (or *upsampling*):** Figure 2-3 shows a highly simplified example of how new pixels are calculated from existing pixels during interpolation. In this case, *upsampling* is taking place; the two original pixels, one black and one white, are used to interpolate intermediate gray pixels. In sophisticated interpolation schemes, pixels in the rows above and below the original pixels and the actual colors of the pixels are also taken into account.

✓ **Dropping pixels (or *downsampling*):** This is basically the same process as upsampling, but in reverse. Based on calculations by the software, some pixels are deleted to create the smaller image size.



**Figure 2-3:** Software sees a black and a white pixel and guesses that gray pixels are needed between them.

Table 2-1 shows the nominal print sizes without the need for interpolation, for various camera resolutions at three different common print resolutions.

<b>Table 2-1</b>		<b>Print Sizes at Various Resolutions</b>		
<i>Resolution</i>	<i>Megapixels</i>	<i>Print Size at 200 dpi (Inches)</i>	<i>Print Size at 300 dpi (Inches)</i>	<i>Print Size at 600 dpi (Inches)</i>
3,008 x 2,000	6MP	15.0 x 10.0	10.0 x 6.7	5.0 x 3.3
3,456 x 2,304	8MP	17.3 x 11.5	11.5 x 7.7	5.8 x 3.8
4,256 x 2,848	12.1MP	21.3 x 14.2	14.2 x 9.5	7.1 x 4.7
4,536 x 3,024	13.7MP	22.7 x 15.1	15.1 x 10.1	7.6 x 5.0
4,992 x 3,328	16.6MP	25.0 x 16.6	16.6 x 11.0	8.3 x 5.5



These native print sizes represent only the dimensions you can get without interpolation. In practice, digital SLR cameras are capable of producing much larger prints with very little noticeable loss of quality. A 6–8MP camera should give you 11-x-14- to 16-x-20-inch prints that look great; a 12–16MP camera should be good for 20-x-30-inch enlargements and beyond.



## *Nothing's super about superfluous pixels*

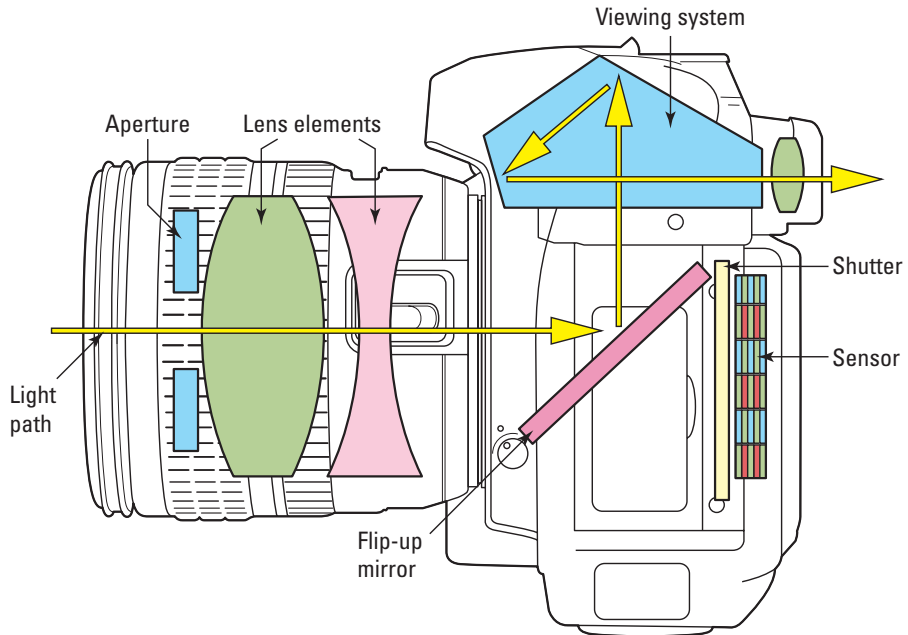
If you think you can never be too rich, too thin, or have too many megapixels, think again. There's a dark side, too, Luke. Unnecessary pixels lead to bigger image files, which are great when you actually need all those pixels, but are a potential nuisance at other times. Few people have the problem of being able to afford a camera with a resolution significantly higher than they really need, but if you're in that elite class, consider these caveats:

- ✔ **Excess megapixels eat up your memory cards.** All dSLRs store images on solid-state memory cards. I own three cards for my 10MP camera, each of which can store about 114 pictures in the best high-resolution shooting mode. Most of the time, that's plenty of digital "film" for any day's shooting, and I can always drop to a lower resolution mode to stretch my memory cards further. However, if I was using another vendor's top-of-the-line dSLR, each of those cards would hold no more than an old-fashioned 36-exposure roll of film. I'd have to own a lot more memory cards to do the same work!
- ✔ **Extra resolution taxes your computer.** Fatter photo files take longer to transfer to your computer and call for faster processing speeds and extra memory to manipulate them in your image editor. That high-end digital camera you're lusting after might call for a high-end computer, too.
- ✔ **More pixels need more storage.** Very high-resolution files can be several times larger than your run-of-the-mill high-resolution image files. If you want to keep lots of them available on your hard drive, you need a large disk, and probably lots of extra CDs and DVDs to archive them to for permanent storage.

## *Touring through a Digital SLR*

Now is the time to explore the innards of your digital SLR as a way to better understand how to use all the nifty features your digital shooter includes. At best, these sections give you a better handle on why, sometimes, the results you get when you press the shutter release aren't exactly what you expected. At worst, you can find more convincing excuses to give when you goof.

In some ways, the basics of a dSLR have a lot in common with the conventional film SLR, or indeed, any film camera. All these picture-grabbers share some fundamental components, which I list in the general order of their arrangement inside your camera, as shown in Figure 2-4:



**Figure 2-4:** Components of a digital SLR.

- ✔ **A lens** — consisting of one or more optical components made of glass, plastic, or ceramic — which captures light and gathers it to a point of focus inside the camera.
- ✔ **A viewing system** that lets you see what the camera sees so you can compose your image and perform other functions, such as evaluating depth-of-field.
- ✔ **An aperture**, or opening, inside the lens that you can (usually) adjust in size so that more or less light is able to sneak through into the camera.
- ✔ **A shutter or other mechanism** to control how long the light passing through the lens can expose the film or sensor.
- ✔ **A light-sensitive component**, either film or — with digital cameras — the sensor, which captures the illumination admitted through the lens by the aperture for the time duration allowed by the shutter.
- ✔ **A medium for storing the captured image** until it's removed from the camera. With a film camera, that medium is the film itself. For a digital camera, the storage is a solid-state film card.

Some of these components for film and digital cameras, especially lenses, are very similar. Indeed, many digital SLRs can use the same lenses built for their film counterparts. So, in this guided tour of the dSLR, I concentrate on the pieces and parts that are different. In the sections that follow, I explain each component listed here.

## Sensorship

After a night on the town, you might find in the morning that you're extra sensitive to light. Well, a digital SLR's sensor is like that all the time. When exposed to an incoming stream of the light-bits (*photons*), a solid-state sensor scoops them up into little buckets, with one bucket for each pixel (except for certain Fujifilm cameras, which I describe in the sidebar, "Four exceptional sensor exceptions").

If each bucket, or *photosite*, collects enough photons to partially fill it to an imaginary line (or *threshold*) seen as a line on the side of the bucket in Figure 2-5, that pixel registers something other than black. As more and more photons accumulate, the pixel's value gets lighter and lighter until, when the bucket is full, the pixel is deemed to be completely white. The intermediate tones are registered as grays or, in color pictures, as darker or lighter shades of a particular color.



**Figure 2-5:** A photosite is like a bucket that collects photons.

If *too many* photons are dumped into the bucket, no further tonal changes happen to that pixel, but the excess light-bits can actually overflow to adjoining pixels, causing an unpleasant effect, *blooming*. After the exposure is completed, the bucket full of sloshing photons is converted to ice cubes. Well, not actually, but it might help to think of the process of analog (water) to digital (ice cubes) conversion that way. Your computer's bits and bytes can handle a discrete number of ice cubes (expressed in 1s and 0s) a lot more easily than it can work with an amorphous quantity of H<sub>2</sub>O.

The bits are processed and then transferred to a memory card, making your camera ready to take another picture. All this can happen in  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a second or less (which explains why digital SLRs can take two to ten or more pictures per second).

### *Two (count 'em), two types of sensors*

Two main types of sensors are used in digital SLRs today: CCD (charge coupled device) and CMOS (complementary metal-oxide semiconductor) imagers. Although each type of sensor uses different technology to capture images, there's no inherent quality difference between them. Some vendors, including Sony, Pentax/Samsung, and Nikon, make great dSLRs based on CCD technology. Fujifilm's latest dSLR uses what it describes as a SuperCCD sensor. But Nikon also offers dSLRs built around CMOS sensors (fabricated by Sony), so it's logical to expect Sony to blossom into the CMOS arena, too. Firmly in the CMOS camp are Canon and Sigma. Note that although the Foveon sensor used in Sigma cameras is, in fact, a CMOS imager, it's of a special type that I describe in the nearby sidebar, "Four exceptional sensor exceptions."

Both CCD and CMOS imagers use metal-oxide semiconductors (although, apparently, the CMOS type is more complementary), and they have about the same degree of sensitivity to light. The main difference is in what each type sensor does with the light after capturing it:

- ✔ **The CCD sensor** is "dumb" to the extent that all it does is capture photons as electrical charges in each photosite/pixel. After exposure, the charges are swept off the chip to an amplifier located in one corner of the sensor. External circuitry converts the analog signal to digital form and handles storing it on your memory card.
- ✔ **A CMOS sensor**, theoretically, is a lot more complicated than its CCD counterpart. It includes solid-state circuitry at each and every photosite and can manipulate the data for each pixel right in the sensor. That's pretty cool because it gives the CMOS sensor the ability to respond to lighting conditions in ways that a CCD can't. However, sweeping all the photon information off a CMOS chip isn't necessary; every photosite can be accessed individually.

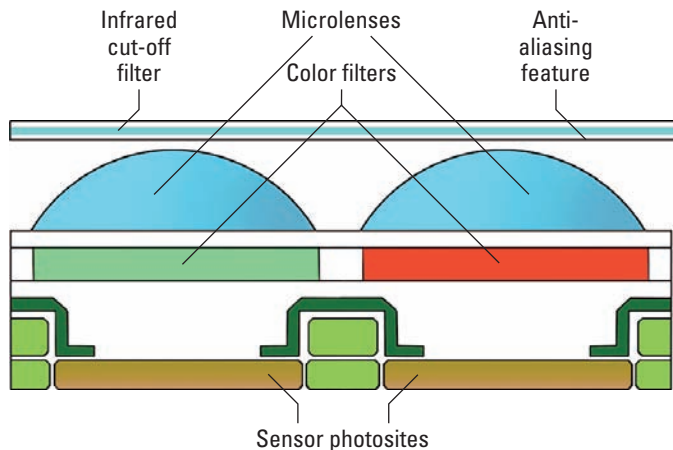
### *Piling on the components*

Some interesting components are piled on top of both sensor types. These components include

- ✔ **Color filters**, which give the color-blind CCD and CMOS chips the ability to respond to various colors of light.
- ✔ **Teensy microlenses** that focus the incoming light onto the photosensitive area in each photo site.
- ✔ **A protective transparent layer** that contains a special filter (an *antialiasing filter*) that smooths out the incoming light signal by eliminating certain frequencies of light before they can clash. This layer also includes an *infrared cutoff filter* that removes most of the IR light component from the illumination reaching the sensor (because so-called “IR contamination” can affect image quality and produce off-color colors).

Only the color filters are likely to be of interest to the average digital photographer because these filters make color photography possible. The sensors in dSLRs do a fairly good job of registering the brightness in a scene. However, these pixel grabbers are totally colorblind on their own.

So, each individual photosite is overlaid with a tiny color filter, as shown in Figure 2-6, that renders it sensitive *only* to a single primary color of light — red, green, or blue. These colors are combined to produce all the intermediate hues, such as yellow (red + green), cyan (green + blue), or magenta (blue + red). All three colors (red, green, and blue) added together produce white. Your TV set and computer display use the same color system to show colors, and any image editor can manipulate them, which is highly convenient from the digital photographer’s standpoint.



**Figure 2-6:** The parts of a sensor.

The (now) color-sensitive pixels are arranged in a matrix of alternate rows of red-blue-red-blue-red-blue photosites and blue-green-blue-green-blue-green photosites. Green gets twice as many pixels as each of the other two colors because of the way our eyes perceive color. (Humans are most sensitive to green light.) This arrangement is a *Bayer pattern*, after the Kodak scientist who developed the process. (See Figure 2-7.)

As you might guess, a green, red, or blue pixel might not be lucky enough to receive light colored its designated hue. So, the camera takes all the information and uses the color of surrounding pixels to calculate (or *interpolate*; there's that word again) the most likely true color of a particular picture element. With more than six million pixels to work with, this interpolation (called *demosaicing*, for any of you terminology nerds) generally provides a pretty good representation of the actual colors in a scene.

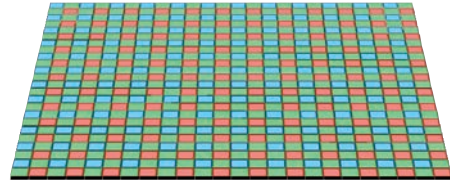


Figure 2-7: Part of a Bayer filter array.

### Understanding noise and sensitivity

You're driving along in your convertible with the top down, wind whistling in your ears, and the satellite radio playing some cool tunes. This is pretty great, but it would be even better if you could *hear* the sounds coming out the radio. So, you crank up the volume, only to find that you really can't hear the music much better. Welcome to the wonderful world of background noise. Unfortunately, digital photography has its own equivalent background noise.

In the digital camera realm, noise is what you get when you crank up the sensitivity of a sensor so it can capture the sparse population of photons that exist under dimmer lighting conditions. This sensitivity is measured in ISO settings, with ISO 800 being twice as sensitive as ISO 400, and ISO 400 having double the sensitivity of ISO 200.

When you amplify the signal created by actual photons striking the sensor, you also multiply the noise produced by random electrical charges generated in the sensor. At lower ISO settings, the sensor simply waits until a certain level of photons has been captured, and that number is enough to overpower the smaller number of random noise pixels.



In a digital camera, noise is worse at higher ISO settings, at longer exposures (because longer exposures provide more time for random pixels to be generated on their own), and in smaller pixels. I rhapsodize in Chapter 1 about how brilliant digital SLRs are at ignoring noise, chiefly because of their larger pixels, but remember that any digital camera is subject to this curse when you raise the ISO enough or take pictures with an exposure that's long enough.



## Four exceptional sensor exceptions

Although the majority of sensors on the market are plain-vanilla CCD or CMOS imagers, a few exceptions totally mess up any attempt to generalize. These emerging technologies, none of them currently in use in what you'd call "mainstream" dSLRs, could fizzle out in the future . . . or blaze a trail for exciting new ways to capture images.

For example, Sony has developed sensors that depart from the RGB (red, green, blue) model to add a fourth color, a shade of blue-green that Sony calls *emerald*. This RGB+E sensor technology supposedly deals with one quirk of human vision that changes the way we see certain red colors. The sensor contains 25 percent each of red, green, blue, and emerald photosites, and, most of the time, the emerald pixels respond more or less like the green ones to give the same overall effect. However, the camera can use the additional information gathered to correct those maverick red colors when they pop up.

Foveon has developed a special kind of CMOS imager that doesn't use the Bayer filter pattern at all. Instead, it has three separate photosensitive layers, one each for blue, green, and red (stacked in that order). During exposure, each pixel absorbs the blue light first (if present), then green, and finally red while the photons work their way through the layers. No interpolation is required, and each color of light can be detected by each and every pixel. Although Foveon technology sounds pretty cool (and it is!), some kinks still need to be worked out, not the least of which is that the highest-resolution Foveon sensors to date, used in Sigma dSLRs, have only about 4.6MP of resolution. You could argue that 4.6MP without interpolation equals

14.1MP with interpolation (and Sigma does!), but that isn't necessarily the case.

Fujifilm stirs up the pot with its SuperCCD SR sensor, which uses two octagon-shaped photosites per pixel to capture images. One is relatively large and highly sensitive to light over a relatively narrow range. If you use buckets as an analogy for sensors, these high-sensitive photosites are containers with a wide mouth but a fairly shallow depth, so they can capture only a few different levels of photons before they fill. However, Fuji mates each high-sensitivity photosite with a smaller one that's lower in sensitivity that can capture copious different levels of light (think narrow mouth, deep container). The information from both photosites, which is arranged in the standard Bayer pattern, can be used to capture images with lots of detail in the inky shadows, bright highlights, and everything in-between.

Finally, Nikon introduced a radically different type of CMOS sensor called LBCAST (short for Lateral Buried Charge Accumulator and Sensing Transistor array) in 2003, but it has been used (to date) only on the pro-level Nikon D2H and D2Hs cameras. When compared with other types of sensors, LBCAST requires reduced power, produces images with less noise (*grain*), has improved processing speed (giving the D2H models the fastest continuous shooting speeds of any Nikon model), and better color reproduction. These cameras are a favorite among sports shooters — even though their resolution tops out at 4.3 megapixels. But don't be fooled. Many pros swear by the image quality of these LBCAST cameras, preferring the output over that of many higher-resolution models.



Digital cameras can remove much of the noise caused by long exposures by taking a second, blank frame after the first picture is exposed and then comparing the two. The camera can see which pixels appear in both versions and remove those that appear to be noise. Figure 2-8 shows a long exposure plagued with noise (left) and another interior photo in which the noise has been silenced with the dSLR's noise reduction feature.



**Figure 2-8:** Too much noise (left) and a much quieter photo (right).

You find more about noise reduction in Chapter 11.

### *The bits that control exposure*

You need to understand the controls that adjust the exposure. What's exposure, you ask? A picture's *exposure* is nothing more than the amount of photons available for capture by the sensor. A good exposure requires exactly the right number of photons captured. Too few, and the image doesn't register at all. Too many photons, and the photo is overexposed.





As you might guess, if a lot of light is bouncing around a scene, a large number of photons can illuminate the sensor in a very brief time. If the light is dimmer, it might take longer for enough photons to reach the sensor. The important detail to remember is that for any given scene, an ideal exposure exists — one that provides just the right number of photons to capture the image.

Your digital SLR's exposure system is designed to improve your chances of getting that ideal exposure, either by adjusting the length of time the sensor is allowed to suck up photons or by modifying the number of photons that reach the sensor in any particular instant. You make these adjustments by using the camera's shutter speed and lens opening/aperture controls, which I describe in the following sections.

### *Your exposure time machine*

Of course, in a digital SLR, the sensor isn't exposed to incoming light all the time. Instead, it sees photons for a brief interval, dubbed the *exposure time*, usually measured in fractions of a second. The exposure time can extend for many seconds in the case of a *time exposure*.

The gatekeeper that controls these time slices, a sort of exposure-time machine, is the *shutter*. The shutter can be a mechanical device (usually a curtain in front of the sensor that opens and closes very quickly) or an electronic mechanism that activates the sensor for a specific instant of time. Digital SLRs might have both, using a mechanical shutter for exposures measured in seconds from about  $\frac{1}{80}$  to  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second and an electronic shutter for exposures in the  $\frac{1}{500}$  to  $\frac{1}{8,000}$  of a second range.



Longer shutter speeds let in more light but can produce blurring if the subject or camera moves during the exposure. Shorter shutter speeds cut down the amount of light admitted, but they also reduce the chance that movement causes blurriness.

### *An aperture is a lens opening is an f-stop*

You can control photons by using the lens aperture (or the *f-stop*). The *aperture* is the size of the opening through which the photons pass. You can think of an f-stop as a pipe: Larger pipes let more light flow in a given period of time, and smaller pipes restrict the amount of light that can pass. The aperture is a clever little adjustable mechanism that uses a sliding set of overlapping metal leaves to create an opening of the desired size, as shown in Figure 2-9.

To get the right amount of light for an exposure, you need to choose the right f-stop. To choose the right f-stop, it helps to understand three confusing facts about f-stops:

- ✓ **F-stops seem to be named wrong.** That is,  $f/2$  is larger than  $f/4$ , which is larger than  $f/8$ . When the numbers get larger, the amount of light an aperture can admit gets *smaller*.
- ✓ **F-stops don't seem to be properly proportioned.** An  $f/2$  opening lets in four times as much light as  $f/4$ , and  $f/4$  admits four times as much as  $f/8$ . You'd think numbers like two, four, and eight would represent double (or half) as much — not four times.
- ✓ **F-stops use all these weird intermediate numbers that *do* represent halving and doubling the amount of light passed by the aperture.** For example, between  $f/2$  and  $f/4$  is  $f/2.8$ , which is exactly twice as large as  $f/4$  and half the size of  $f/2$ . The actual sequence of f-stops, each half the size of the previous aperture, is this:

$f/2, f/2.8, f/4, f/5.6, f/8, f/11,$   
 $f/16, f/22, f/32$

What's going on here?



**Figure 2-9:** Overlapping metal leaves create various sized lens openings.



Everything becomes clear when you realize that f-numbers are actually denominators of fractions that represent the size of the aperture opening, just as  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{8}$ , or  $\frac{1}{16}$  represent ever-smaller quantities. So  $f/11$  allows your camera's sensor to collect more light than  $f/16$  because  $\frac{1}{11}$  is a bigger number than  $\frac{1}{16}$ .

### *Two of one, half a dozen of the other*

As far as the camera is concerned, f-stops and shutter speeds are equivalent. Cutting the shutter speed in half produces the same effect on exposure as using an f-stop that cuts the size of the lens opening in half. An exposure that is twice as long is the same as one exposed for the same length of time but with an f-stop that's twice as large.

So, if your camera's exposure system suggests an exposure of  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at f/8, you could reduce the exposure to  $\frac{1}{1,000}$  of a second (half as long) at f/8, or get the exact same exposure at  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at f/11 (with the aperture half as wide).

Similarly, various combinations of f-stops and shutter speeds can produce the same exposure value. An exposure of  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at f/8 is the same as  $\frac{1}{1,000}$  of a second at f/5.6 (halving the shutter speed, but doubling the size of the lens opening), whereas  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at f/11 (twice the shutter speed, but half the size of the lens opening) is the same, too. Although these reciprocal relationships might be confusing at first, they always seem natural after a few weeks using a camera.

### *Taking time out for viewing*

Strictly speaking, your camera's viewfinder isn't part of the exposure process. It does have an important role, however, because the dSLR's viewing system is, with lens interchangeability, one of the reasons why people lust after these cameras in the first place.

Non-SLR digital cameras generally use an LCD on the back panel to provide a real-time image of what the sensor is seeing. This LCD view is often coupled with an optical viewfinder window that you can also use to frame the image, which is particularly handy under bright lighting conditions when the back-panel LCD is washed out. Some cameras, called EVF (electronic viewfinder) models (which might physically resemble dSLRs even though their lenses can't be changed), have a second LCD inside, which you can view through a window. This EVF is easier to see in bright light.

At present, the most popular digital SLRs don't offer LCD previews in any form (except for a handful of specialized cameras). Instead, light admitted by the lens is bounced by a system of mirrors or prisms to a viewfinder window, making it possible to see exactly what the sensor sees. When it's time to take the picture, the mirror in a typical dSLR swings out of the way, blanking the viewfinder for a fraction of a second while the light is directed to the sensor to make the exposure.

Compared to the tiny LCD or optical view offered by non-SLRs, the big, bright optical display of a dSLR is easier to use to compose, evaluate focus, and judge how much of the image is actually sharp, as shown in Figure 2-10.



**Figure 2-10:** Digital SLR viewfinders show lots of information along with the big, bright view of your subject.

### *Through the looking glass*

All cameras form their images by grabbing light through a lens, a series of precision-made elements of glass, plastic, or ceramic. The components are arranged to gather the light and focus it onto the film or sensor at a certain distance, called the *focal length*. Fixed-focal-length lenses, or *prime* lenses, always produce the same magnification. Other lenses have elements that can shift around in particular ways to change the magnification over a certain range. These are called *zoom* lenses. One of the coolest things about dSLRs is that you can remove a particular lens and replace it with one that provides a different zoom range or has other useful capabilities, such as the ability to focus extra close.

Inside the lens is a diaphragm that can dilate or contract, much like the iris of the eye, to change the size of the aperture. These f-stops not only control the amount of light reaching the sensor, but affect the amount of an image that's in focus. Smaller f-stops provide larger areas of focus (called *depth-of-field*), and larger f-stops offer a smaller sharp focus range.

The distance of the lens elements from the sensor also controls the overall focus of the picture. You can adjust focus manually by twisting a ring on the barrel of the lens itself or automatically by using tiny motors inside the lens. Some lenses have additional motors that move the elements in response to camera shake or movement, producing a useful vibration reduction or image stabilization effect. I explain more special lens features in Chapter 3.

## Storage

The very first electronic cameras of 30 years ago stored images on tape recorders! Fifteen years later, the \$30,000 digital cameras that a few daring professional photographers used stored their photos on a bulky hard drive that had to be tethered to the camera by a cable. Today, you're much better off because you can use tiny solid-state devices called *flash memory* to store your photos until you can transfer them to a computer for permanent archiving. A dSLR's storage has two components you want to be aware of:

✓ **The buffer:** Your digital SLR takes the bits siphoned out of the sensor and conducts them to a special high-speed type of internal memory called a *buffer*. Thanks to the buffer, you can continue taking photos while the camera deals with transferring the most recent pictures to the film card.

The size and speed of the buffer determines how many pictures you can take in a row. Digital cameras generally let you take 5 to 30 shots consecutively, and have continuous shot (*burst*) modes good for 2.5 to 10 frames per second for as long as the buffer holds out. A faster, larger buffer is better.

✓ **Memory card:** Memory cards have their own writing speed, which determines how quickly the card can accept images from the buffer. There's no standard measurement for this speed, so you can find memory cards labeled 40X, 80X, 120X, 133X, Ultra, or Extreme.

Most of the time, however, card speed limits your shooting only if you're photographing sports and want to take many pictures in a row. The rest of the time your dSLR is probably a lot faster than your trigger finger.

Digital SLRs today generally use either CompactFlash (CF) or Secure Digital (SD) memory cards, as shown in Figure 2-11. They're mostly equivalent in speed, cost, and capacity, although SD cards are smaller than their CF counterparts. You'll also find miniature hard disk drives with the CompactFlash form factor. A few cameras use xD cards or, with an adapter, Sony Memory Stick Pro Duo cards.



**Figure 2-11:** Memory cards come in a variety of capacities.

In recent months, the cost of flash memory has plummeted, which is great for users of digital cameras because the reduction in cost came at the same time that the basic resolution specifications for digital SLRs increased from 6MP to 10MP and beyond. More megapixels bring a need for larger capacity memory cards. Today, you can purchase an 8GB CompactFlash card for about *half* what a 4GB card cost a year or more ago, even if you purchase one of the upscale “speedy” models with faster write speeds. It’s painful to realize that I paid \$150 for a 1GB card for my first dSLR, and now can buy several cards with 4 to 8 times as much capacity for half that price!



If your dSLR uses Secure Digital (SD) memory, check out any cards with capacities of 2GB or larger to make sure they’re compatible with your camera and your memory card readers. Some older cameras and other devices don’t accept 2GB or larger cards at all. To alleviate the problem, a new format, SDHC (Secure Digital High Capacity) has been developed for capacities of 4GB to 32GB, but it works only with products that are explicitly SDHC compatible. Most recent dSLRs that use SD-type memory, such as the Nikon D40, D40x, D80, and Pentax K10D, include support for the newer type of memory.

## Overcoming Quirks of the dSLR

If you’re entering the digital SLR world from the realms of film cameras or non-SLR digital photography, you’ll note some significant differences that can only be called quirks. They’re idiosyncrasies of the dSLR that you must compensate for or grudgingly put up with. Some might even drive you crazy. The following sections offer some advice for contending with these quirks.

## *Out, out damned spot: Cleaning the sensor*

Every time you remove your dSLR's lens to replace it with another, you could be admitting tiny specks of dust that might, if you're unlucky, find their way past the shutter when it opens for an exposure, and thence onto the sensor. It might take a few weeks or a few months, but eventually, you'll end up with artifacts on your sensor.

You might not even notice this dust because it's most apparent when using the small f-stops that produce the largest range of sharp focus. (I explain why in the section, "The bits that control exposure," earlier in this chapter.) If you take most of your pictures at f/8, f/5.6, or larger, any dust on your sensor might be blurry and almost invisible. In addition, if the dark dust spots happen to fall into dark areas of your image, they're masked.



So, if you own a digital SLR, you can plan on the need to clean your sensor from time to time. It's not particularly difficult, and cleaning kits are available at camera stores and online. Some tips to remember include

- ✓ Point your camera downward when changing lenses to reduce the amount of dust that infiltrates.
- ✓ If possible, change lenses only in relatively clean environments.



Do not attempt to clean your sensor with canned air, compressed air blowers, lens cleaning liquids, or other methods that seem to make sense but which can damage your sensor. Use only bulb blowers and swabs intended expressly for sensor cleaning.

- ✓ If you have any doubts about your ability to clean your sensor yourself, let your local camera shop or the manufacturer to it.

## *Multiplication fables: Working around the crop factor*

As I mention earlier, many digital SLR cameras use a sensor that's smaller than the 35mm film frame even though they typically use lenses that were originally designed for full-frame cameras. The smaller sensor, in effect, crops out part of the image, so you're using only, say, 75 percent of the area produced, as shown in Figure 2-12. When you use a 100mm lens, say, only the center area is imaged by a smaller sensor, capturing an image with the same field of view as a 150mm lens.



**Figure 2-12:** A wide-angle shot (upper left) loses its wide perspective due to the 1.5X crop factor (lower right).

This effect is sometimes called, inaccurately, a *multiplication factor* or lens *multiplier* because you can represent the equivalent field of view by multiplying the focal length of the lens by the factor. In truth, no multiplication is involved. A 100mm f/2.8 lens used on a camera with a 1.5 multiplier is still a 100mm f/2.8 lens and provides the exact same image. It's just being cropped to a smaller rectangle by the camera. The correct terminology is *crop factor*. Common crop factors with today's dSLRs are 1.3X, 1.5X, 1.6X, and 2X. A camera that provides a full-frame image, with no cropping at all, is sometimes said to have a 1X crop factor.



The crop factor affects your picture-taking in two ways:

- ✔ **Your telephoto lenses seem to be magically converted to much longer focal lengths.** A 200mm telephoto lens becomes a 300mm telephoto lens; a 400mm-long lens is transformed into a 600mm super telephoto lens. Of course, your results would be identical to those you'd get taking the same picture with a full-frame camera and cropping the image, but it's a convenient fable even so.
- ✔ **The view of wide-angle lenses is cropped so that they no longer take in as much of your surroundings as they would on a full-frame camera.** A nice, super-wide 20mm lens on a camera with a 1.6X crop factor has the same field of view as an ordinary 32mm wide-angle lens. A useful 35mm wide-angle lens view, like the one shown in the upper left in Figure 2-12, becomes the mundane 56mm normal lens perspective, as shown at lower right. The crop factor means that, to get a true wide-angle view, you have to purchase expensive, ridiculously wide lenses, such as the popular 12mm–24mm lenses offered by Nikon, Sigma, and Tokina.



# Tracking the Ideal dSLR

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Factoring in future features and your future needs
- ▶ Looking at camera types and your photography requirements
- ▶ Choosing among key features

When you upgrade from your first digital camera to a digital SLR, the stakes increase dramatically. A dSLR generally costs quite a bit more than the average point-and-shoot digital camera, so you want to make the right purchase the first time. You also want to buy into a camera product line that has all the accessories you'll want to buy in the future. Owning a very cool digital single lens reflex is little comfort if you can't find that special external electronic flash you need or an underwater housing you absolutely must have.

The high stakes extend into the future, too. The dSLR you buy now will grow when you add lenses and other accessories, and you'll want to use those same add-ons with whatever camera eventually replaces your current pride and joy. SLR camera buyers have known for years that it's easy to get locked into a particular camera system, so selecting the right camera today is a little like choosing a spouse. If the photographic marriage doesn't last forever, starting over with a new mate can be expensive and full of heartache.

This chapter helps you choose your ideal dSLR now and ensures your future happiness.



## *Features for Now and the Future*

Some have said that once, in the 1950s, a world-famous photographer was preparing to shoot a portrait of an important business executive. The captain of industry watched him set up and made conversation by observing proudly, "I see you use a Leica. So do I." Cracking a faint smile, the famed lensman replied, "I see your secretary uses a Royal typewriter. So does Hemingway."

The best camera in the world can produce mediocre pictures in the hands of a clumsy photographer. Conversely, a creative mind can produce stunning images when armed with the simplest of cameras. Figure 3-1 is far from a stunning photograph, but I took it with a \$200 point-and-shoot camera and a pair of \$10 high-intensity desk lamps for illumination. I didn't use any fancy close-up or macro lenses. You don't need an expensive camera to take good pictures.



Of course, you don't have to tie one hand behind your back to make sure you concentrate on composition and capture the decisive moment. So, consider the full range of available features when choosing your camera, recognizing that you might not be able to justify them all right now. Divide the features you're considering into these three categories:

- ✓ **Features you need:** These are the capabilities you really must have for the kind of photography you do. Perhaps you shoot in low light levels and require a fast lens that lets you grab images without flash. Or, you specialize in sports photography and must have a dSLR with a 3–4 fps shooting rate or better. If you plan to shoot a lot of time-lapse photography, you probably want a camera that can take pictures while powered by AC current and tethered to a laptop computer. Make a list of your must-have features and keep them in mind when searching for your ideal camera.
- ✓ **Features you want:** These are the features that aren't absolutely essential for the majority of your photography, but which could come in handy, or which might expand your picture-taking opportunities. Odds are you'll consider how much extra you have to pay to get these features. You might want to take wildlife photos without a tripod, so the availability of long lenses with built-in image stabilization features could be nice. Still, if you can't afford such a lens, you could probably get by almost as well with a good tripod (despite the extra weight to lug around). Your nice-to-have features aren't deal-breakers, but they can tilt your preferences from one camera line to another.
- ✓ **Features you wish you could get but can't (yet):** A few capabilities are totally out of your reach either because they're too expensive or not available for the camera models you're considering. Deposit these features in the What If's category: These features just might filter down to you someday — perhaps more quickly than you think. Perhaps you want image stabilization built into the camera itself so that just about every lens you own gains anti-shake capabilities. If that's what you want, you'll find it in an increasing number of cameras, including Sony Alpha and Pentax models.



**Figure 3-1:** A \$200 camera took this photo. An expensive camera isn't a prerequisite for creative photography.

## *Breadcrumbs on the Upgrade Path*

The ability to upgrade your dSLR in the future can be tempting, like alluring breadcrumbs sprinkled on the path through the dark woods of the future. You can plan now to make sure these crumbs haven't been gobbled up by the time you choose to add to your own dSLR system.



The following tips can help you choose a camera with great upgrade potential:

- **Look at how particular vendors have handled the evolution of their lens systems when they've added features.** The Pentax line of dSLRs is capable of using KA and K mount lenses, older Pentax screw-mount lenses dating back decades, and even some lenses intended for medium format cameras if you have the proper adapter. The latest Nikon dSLRs

(except for the entry-level Nikon D40 and D40x) can use virtually any Nikkor lens dating back to 1959, although some require slight modifications. (The D40 and D40x can autofocus only with lenses having built-in focusing motors.) Of course, automatic metering and focusing aren't possible in all cases for very old lenses built before these features were invented! Although all Canon EF-series lenses work fine with any EOS camera (film or digital), the company's EF-S-series lenses must be used only on the latest consumer-oriented dSLR Canon models, such as the EOS 20D/30D/40D or later, and the Digital Rebel/Rebel XT/Rebel XTi.

- ✔ **Explore how well a vendor supports its older model cameras and flash units.** Vendors are continually improving their dedicated electronic flash units. As a result, the latest speedlights might not be compatible with newer or future cameras. Some might not function with full through-the-lens metering, but can be operating in semi-automatic modes with exposure-measuring cells built into the flash itself. Others might not be usable in wireless mode without special adapters. For details on using electronic flash, see Chapter 9.
- ✔ **Figure out which filter size fits the most lenses.** This is especially true before making an investment in polarizers, infrared filters, and close-up lenses that can be fairly expensive. A film SLR I worked with for many years used the same size filter on nearly all its lenses, so I could safely buy as many of these screw-on accessories as I wanted. I knew they wouldn't become obsolete when I added a new lens. Today, vendors might offer lenses that use a bunch of different size filters. You might own one lens that takes 62mm filters, another that calls for 67mm add-ons, and a third that takes 72mm accessories. You might find that the clearest upgrade path is to buy the largest filters and then adapt them to other lenses by using step-down rings, as shown in Figure 3-2.



**Figure 3-2:** You might be able to use one set of filters on several different lenses with adapter rings.

## *Cameras of Today and Tomorrow*

Only a few years ago, dSLR cameras came in only one category — expensive. You could expect to spend at least \$5,000 for a digital SLR from Canon, Nikon, or Kodak, and be thankful the camera was that affordable. After all, it wasn't long ago that digital SLRs cost upwards of \$30,000, used a tethered 200MB hard drive, and gave you 1.3-megapixel photos!

Of course, dSLRs of the late 20th century were built on rugged professional camera bodies, and they housed very expensive sensors. The Kodak DCS 460 of a decade ago was basically a common Nikon body with a very, very costly 6MP imager built in. Although some digital SLRs that cost as little as \$2,000 (for the body alone) made an appearance, it wasn't until the original Canon Digital Rebel was introduced in 2003 at less than \$1,000 (with lens) that the new category of basic consumer dSLR was born.

Although the distinct camera categories that I cover in the following sections have some overlap, these categories are still aimed at particular classes of buyers.

### *Basic dSLR cameras*

The basic dSLR is the newest type of digital camera with interchangeable lenses. These cameras are stripped-down versions of more advanced digital SLRs, aimed specifically at photographers who are looking to step up from point-and-shoot models, but who don't necessarily want full-fledged systems with all the bells and whistles. Typical cameras in this class include the Nikon D40, Nikon D40x, the Pentax/Samsung models, and the original Canon Digital Rebel, which remained in the line even after the Rebel XT/XTi were introduced. A typical compact basic dSLR is shown in Figure 3-3.

Priced at around \$600 with lens, basic dSLRs compete directly with the more expensive point-and-shoot, non-dSLR cameras in the same price and megapixel range. The point-and-shoot cameras might have noninterchangeable zoom lenses with a longer range (12:1 or more) while offering a smaller and lighter package that's more portable.

I tend to avoid calling basic dSLRs “entry-level” models because that implies a tendency to move up and beyond the original dSLR to more advanced cameras, lenses, and accessories. In practice, a surprising number of buyers of these cameras are perfectly happy with the capabilities they have and may stick with their new dSLRs for years. Many of them never buy another lens. They get great results with their basic dSLR and its kit lens and have no interest in upgrading. I think it's terrific that vendors have recognized this important type of snapshotter and have provided affordable cameras with the features casual photographers need.



**Figure 3-3:** Basic dSLR models boast very low price tags but lots of useful features.



The advantage of a \$600 dSLR over a comparably priced point-and-shoot camera is usually faster operation and better image quality (even when matched in the megapixel department), plus the ability to exchange lenses. Those who never plan to buy additional lenses find the quality of the non-SLR adequate, and people who don't shoot demanding subjects, like sports, are happy with the point-and-shoot models, especially the models that offer a bit of manual control. Both groups prize the pocket size of point-and-shoot cameras and will actually pay *more* for an extra-tiny shooter. But, more serious photographers will take a basic dSLR at the same price every time.

Of course, these basic dSLR models do lack a few features that their more advanced brethren have — but, boy, are they affordable! You might be happy with one of these as your main camera or as a second camera body, particularly if your budget is tight.

What do you give up? Most of the basic dSLRs sacrifice a few features that you might never or rarely use. These include depth-of-field preview, shutter speeds faster than  $\frac{1}{4,000}$  second, or the speediest continuous shooting bursts. Some of the cost-saving measures add some inconvenience: Your basic dSLR might have only one command dial, so you'd need to press a button to switch between setting the shutter speed and aperture. Many skip the traditional top-panel monochrome LCD (liquid crystal display) status display and show all shooting information on the color LCD on the back of the camera. Or, the budget model might use only SD (Secure Digital) memory cards, rather than the CompactFlash cards found in most upscale dSLRs.



Still, what you give up to save several hundred dollars might be insignificant if it means you can get behind the wheel of an honest-to-gosh dSLR today.

### *Entry-level enthusiast dSLRs*

What I think of as *entry-level enthusiast* dSLRs are a step up from the most basic models and provide a true launching point for avid photographers who need to get into digital SLR shooting at minimal cost, but insist on plenty of opportunities for enhancing their capabilities later with new lenses, flash units, and accessories.

These dSLRs start at about \$800 (often including a basic zoom lens) and range to about \$1,200. These models include the Nikon D80, Canon Digital Rebel XTi, Pentax K10, and Sony Alpha DSLR-A100 (as shown in Figure 3-4).

These cameras don't sacrifice many features; the corners are cut in ways that probably don't affect the typical photo enthusiast. For example, cameras in this class often are built around rugged polycarbonate bodies rather than the almost-indestructible magnesium camera bodies found in upscale cameras. The viewfinder systems might use pentamirrors that are a little dimmer than the pentaprisms found in pro cameras, and magnification through the viewing system might be lower. It's common for these dSLRs to have much less sprightly continuous shooting modes, too.



**Figure 3-4:** True entry-level enthusiast dSLRs start at less than \$1,000 and have a full set of features.

For anyone who could never justify spending \$1,800 or more on a dSLR, these models offer just about every needed feature with enough megapixels to produce very high-quality pictures, indeed. They form an excellent foundation for building an arsenal of lenses and other accessories that remain useful even when the photo enthusiast upgrades to a newer model in the future.

### Prosumer dSLRs

The next step up is the *prosumer* models, which are cameras intended for more-experienced, advanced consumers/amateur photographers, but outfitted with enough features to make them attractive to professionals as a second camera body. Indeed, some pros who have light-duty shooting requirements (perhaps because their work is more contemplative and they don't fire off thousands of shots a day) use them as primary cameras.

Prosumer dSLRs start at about \$1,200 (for body only) and range to about \$2,500. These models include the Nikon D200, Fujifilm FinePix S5 Pro, and Canon EOS 30D/40D.



Like entry-level enthusiast cameras, these cameras trim a few features to achieve their affordable cost and may use plastic bodies rather than the almost-indestructible magnesium camera bodies found in the pro cameras. They might lack built-in vertical camera grips and easy plug-in remote controls that professionals require. They'll typically fire off fewer shots in burst mode, typically from 3–5 fps, whereas pro models usually have 8–10 fps capabilities.

### Professional dSLR models

Although some models are priced in the \$3,000 range, most professional dSLRs set you back 5 to 8 grand. If you're selling your work, the camera is well worth the cost. Cameras in this class include the Nikon D2xs, Canon EOS-1D Mark III, Canon EOS 5D, and Canon EOS-1Ds Mark II. These models take you all the way from 12MP up to a lofty 16MP (or beyond) and can, arguably, meet or exceed the image quality of the best film cameras.

What do you get for thousands and thousands of extra dollars? Here's a quick checklist of what your extra cash buys:

- ✓ **Tank-like reliability:** Okay, I really have no experience with how reliable tanks are, but they must be pretty good if being “built like a tank” is a positive. Pro dSLRs have metal bodies, excellent sealing against the elements, and rugged controls and components like shutters that can be operated thousands of times without failing. A typical professional might shoot more pictures in a day than an amateur photographer takes in a year. I know one canine photographer (he's not a dog; he photographs them) who recently passed the 500,000 exposure mark with his pro camera and its original shutter. Professionals can't afford to have a

camera wimp out at the worst possible moment. So, many of these cameras are purchased for their ruggedness alone, and *even then* true pros commonly buy multiple bodies in order to have a backup or two or three.

- ✓ **Faster operation:** Pro cameras generally have the most advanced autofocus systems available from a vendor, so they can take pictures *right now* without delay or shutter lag. They have large internal memory buffers to suck up exposures as fast as you can take them, and the speedy digital image chips process the bits and bytes and then write them to your memory card. Exposure systems, too, are top-notch, both in accuracy and speed. Professional dSLRs are veritable speed demons.
- ✓ **Faster burst modes:** Whereas prosumer dSLRs are considered speedy if they can capture continuous-mode pictures at 3 fps, pro cameras typically can grab 4 to 10 fps without sweating. Those big memory buffers (to store images until they can be written to the memory card) and digital signal processing chips make this speed possible.
- ✓ **More options:** Pro cameras let you set up multiple sets of shooting parameters and recall them at the press of a button, so you can tailor your camera's operation to particular environments. You might find other choices not available to lesser cameras, such as the ability to save images in compressed or uncompressed RAW format, TIFF, and multiple levels of JPEG quality. (You find out more about file formats in Chapter 8.)
- ✓ **Bigger sensors:** Some pro cameras offer larger sensors, which can be an advantage to pro shooters. These sizeable sensors are available from Canon; several models are offered by Kodak (before they were discontinued); and there are a few so-called medium-format dSLRs, such as those from Mamiya and Hasselblad. In the case of the Canon and late, lamented Kodak models, the cameras used traditional 35mm-camera-style lenses but imaged on a sensor that was the same size as a full 35mm frame. A chief advantage of this was the ability to use any existing 35mm camera lens with no lens crop factor applied. (Chapter 2 explains lens crop in detail.)

### *dSLR-like cameras — a fading star?*

A strange thing happened after the first low-cost digital SLR cameras emerged onto the market. The cameras positioned at the former high end of the amateur/photo enthusiast market were suddenly described as “SLR-like.” These cameras happened to be priced about the same as the new dSLRs but didn't have interchangeable lenses. They did have a form of through-the-lens viewing that lesser point-and-shoot cameras lacked, so they became “SLR-like.” What's the story here?

In their time, cameras sporting *internal electronic viewfinders* (a miniature LCD inside the camera) were the next best thing and were all that serious photographers with limited bank accounts could afford. Their viewing systems were far superior to the optical viewfinder windows that supplemented rear-panel LCDs in point-and-shoot cameras. You could use these electronic viewfinders (EVFs) to compose your shots accurately even in bright sunlight

and, with luck, monitor depth-of-field. Many of them were designed with real controls, including zoom rings, rather than the motorized gadgets and buttons the point-and-shoot cameras used.

Justifying EVF cameras' existence in these days of \$500-neighborhood dSLRs is tough. Some manage to live on by providing features you can't get in cameras with interchangeable lenses, such as a fixed 18X zoom (the equivalent of 28mm to 504mm) or ISO settings up to ISO 10,000. But most EVF cameras are more "SLR-ish" than "SLR-like." Table 3-1 lists some of their advantages and disadvantages.

**Table 3-1**                      **The Pros and Cons of EVF Cameras**

<i>Pro</i>	<i>Con</i>
EVF cameras are smaller. If ultra-compact size is important to you, a non-SLR might have the size you need.	The smaller sensors of EVF cameras produce more noise even at the reduced ISO range these models offer.
The typical EVF model offers excellent zoom range right out of the box, so you don't have to lug lenses around.	They don't have interchangeable lenses.
An EVF camera might have features that cost extra to add to your dSLR, such as built-in image shake technology.	It doesn't have SLR-fast response; shutter lag is still very much a problem with most EVF models.
You can shoot movies with a non-SLR, and you can preview an image on the LCD before you take it.	The LCD might offer a grainy, ghost-ridden view that's neither especially bright nor particularly useful for gauging depth-of-field.

If you're reading this book, you're probably irreconcilably biased toward a digital SLR. However, an EVF camera you already own or can pick up at a reasonable price can make a good spare camera or a fall-back camera for when taking your dSLR is undesirable or impractical.

## Checking Out Key Features

When you approach your final purchase decision, look at the individual features of the cameras you're considering and how they affect you. I cover most of the main topics in the following sections in more detail in Chapter 2, and Chapter 7 has information on special features. The following sections summarize what you need to know.



If you make a list of features and divide it into three categories, as I explain in the section, "Features for Now and the Future," earlier in this chapter, this list can help you decide which camera best suits your needs.

## Lenses

The ability to swap optics is the reason why the word *lens* is so important in the abbreviation SLR. Some factors to consider when choosing a camera include

- ✓ **Lens quality:** Are the lenses of a particular vendor known for their quality, both optically and mechanically (which is known as *build quality*)? Does this vendor offer multiple lens lines with economy lenses that might be a little less rugged but affordably priced, as well as pro-style lenses with the ultimate in sharpness and ruggedness? Depending on the type of photography you do, trading off a little weight and replacing a few metal parts with tough plastic might be important. Or, you might require lenses that can take punishment and still deliver sparkling results.
- ✓ **Focal length ranges:** Some vendors are stronger in the telephoto lens department and weaker when it comes to providing wide-angle lenses. Canon, for example, sells an amazing array of long lenses, many with built-in image stabilization, and offers them at amazing prices. Nikon has some exquisite wide-angle lenses. Some vendors do a better job with certain kinds of zooms than others. Make sure that the vendor of the camera you're contemplating offers lenses in the focal lengths and maximum apertures you require. If not, see whether you can fill in the lenses you require from third-party vendors, such as Tokina, Tamron, and Sigma. These manufacturers' optical offerings might be completely satisfactory — or they might not. It's best to see whether the lenses you need are readily available at a price you can afford. Figure 3-5 shows a typical lens that's often used as basic optics for Canon dSLRs.
- ✓ **Special features:** Focal lengths, zoom ranges, and maximum aperture aren't the only features you want in a lens. You might need close focusing, fast autofocus (which is partially dependent on the design of the lens), or the ability to control the out-of-focus areas of an image. (Nikon, for example, has a line of DC lenses that are great for portraiture because you can control how the defocused areas look.)



**Figure 3-5:** This lens covers a useful 17–85mm zoom range but also has built-in anti-shake image stabilization features.



## Sensors and image processors

The sensor and digital signal processor has as much effect on your final image as the lens does, so be sure to check out the qualities of your dream camera's imager very carefully. In particular, look into the following:

- ✓ **The amount of noise it generates at low ISO settings (ISO 100 or ISO 200) and at higher ISO settings (ISO 800 and above):** Some photographers like the lower noise produced by the prosumer Canon digital cameras compared to that of competing Nikon dSLRs. Others find the Canon images so smooth they look plasticky and prefer the extra sharpness and texture of the Nikon sensor. Chapter 11 tells you more about noise.
- ✓ **The sensor's dynamic range:** Is there detail in both shadows and highlights? Are colors accurate? Do the images look sharp? If you answered "no" to any of these questions, you probably need to keep looking for the right camera.

CMOS (complementary metal-oxide semiconductor) and CCD (charge coupled devices) sensors show little difference in quality these days, but significant differences exist among sensors from different vendors. Do some comparisons now so you'll be happy with your camera later.

## Exposure systems

Exposure systems range from simple spot metering, to center weighted, to complex evaluative systems that examine a huge matrix of points to arrive at the correct settings. Often, all three systems dwell in harmony together in one camera. To better understand exposure systems and how they can affect your work, check out Chapter 5 before you select your camera.

## Focusing systems

The focusing system of a dSLR is partially dependent on two factors:

- ✓ The **mechanisms** built into the lens, which move the lens elements to the proper position at the camera's direction.
- ✓ The **electronics** in the camera that evaluate the contrast of the image to decide exactly where the correct focus point is.

That's complicated stuff! Yet, if your image is out of focus, odds are that your picture is totally ruined. You can often partially or fully correct for improper exposure. Color-correction tools in an image editor can fix bad white balance. You can crop your photos to remove extraneous subject matter. But if your image is badly out of focus, you should end its suffering by pressing Delete.



You definitely want a camera with an efficient autofocus system, one that focuses accurately. You sometimes need to specify what point the camera should use as the point of focus, especially when your main subject is *not* in the center of the viewfinder. It's a good idea to be able to specify that the camera locks focus when you press the shutter release halfway down, or that it can continue to seek a focus point for moving subjects right until the instant of exposure.

You might appreciate a camera that can *predict* where the focus point *will* be when a moving object is racing towards or away from the camera.

You might want the ability to switch quickly to manual focus by using a switch — either on the lens or on the camera body — as shown in Figure 3-6. Some kinds of photography, particularly macro photography, work best when the photographer has complete control over focus.



**Figure 3-6:** A convenient switch on the camera or lens enables you to quickly change from automatic focus to manual focus.

## Special features

Digital SLRs are rife with special features. There are enough of them, in fact, that I devote all of Chapter 7 to describing things like extra-fast burst modes, anti-dust features (which literally shake the debris off your sensor before it can appear in your images), image stabilization, time-lapse photography, and so forth.

If you have specialized needs, you might have special requirements. For instance, if you like to photograph the progress of blossoming flowers or construction, you might require the ability to connect to a computer, as shown in Figure 3-7. Or, perhaps you've discovered that the vibration of the flip-up mirror in an SLR spoils your critical close-up or telephoto shots, and you want a camera with preshot mirror lock-up. Maybe you want to be able to instantly transmit your photos to a laptop computer for immediate review by an assistant. If infrared photography is your most important application, you need a camera that's especially sensitive to infrared illumination.



**Figure 3-7:** A USB port (bottom socket) allows you to connect your camera directly to a laptop, which can be essential for time-lapse photography.

If you do have special needs, pay particular attention to how well your potential new digital camera fills them. Nothing is more frustrating than having a hard-to-fulfill requirement while owning a camera that's just a little less than what you require in that department.



# Accessorizing Your dSLR

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Adding memory storage
- ▶ Considering your backup storage options
- ▶ Sifting through filtration considerations
- ▶ Gaining support from tripods
- ▶ Understanding electronic flash
- ▶ Adding additional add-ons

**R**emember how cool it was to pick out your school supplies every August before classes began? You got to choose the exact notebook and paper you wanted. You likely selected your pencils and book covers with the greatest of care. If you're younger than I am, you probably spent a lot of time deliberating over which Trapper Keeper to get. If you're my age, the big decision was which quill pen to buy. If you own a digital SLR, you can experience the same joy of buying school supplies — but all year 'round!

That's because one of the best things about dSLR cameras is that they're almost infinitely expandable. Hundreds of different lenses are available, of course, but that's another whole level of accessorization. I'm talking about add-ons that let you focus closer, operate your camera more efficiently, hold your camera steady for long exposures, or do things that you otherwise couldn't do at all.

I'm sure you already know about some of the accessories in this chapter. Some are a bit more obscure, though. Only a few of them, such as memory cards, are absolutely essential for taking photos. However, you might take comfort in knowing that so many tools are available if you want them. This chapter shows you some of the basic items to consider.



## Memory Cards in a Flash

Most digital SLRs are furnished without any memory card at all, so you need to buy one as soon as you get your camera. Of course, even entry-level point-and-shoot digicams frequently come without a card, too, or are furnished with a useless small-capacity card, so this omission comes as no surprise.

Whereas low-end cameras come with no card to save costs, more sophisticated cameras (like a dSLR) lack a memory card because it's highly unlikely that the vendor knows exactly what kind of card you prefer. By not including any memory card at all, your camera vendor is upholding your right to choose the card that exactly suits your needs. So, when choosing a memory card for your digital SLR, here are the key factors to consider:

- ✔ **Type:** It behooves you to buy the type of card that fits your camera. For most cameras, you choose either flash or miniature hard disk, and because mini-hard disks are on their way out, you should choose flash.
- ✔ **Write speed:** Perhaps you shoot a lot of sports and want to use only high-speed memory cards that can suck up bursts of shots as quickly as you can take them.
- ✔ **Capacity:** With most dSLRs, a 512MB card is almost useless because of its low capacity. Who needs a card that holds as few as 40 RAW shots? You might not want to bother carrying around any card smaller than 1GB or 4GB (as shown in Figure 4-1) in capacity.
- ✔ **Form factor:** This is one fact or you usually *don't* need to consider — unless you have a camera that accepts more than one type of media. Maybe your digital SLR accepts both CompactFlash (CF) and Secure Digital (SD) memory cards. A few do, and at least one camera accepts both SD cards and xD Picture Cards, and Sony dSLRs have traditionally accommodated both CompactFlash and Sony Memory Stick Pro Duo cards (using an adapter for the latter).



**Figure 4-1:** A memory card with at least 4GB of capacity is suitable for most digital SLRs.

In the following sections, I explain the three main considerations (type, write speed, and capacity) in more detail.

## Choosing between flash memory and hard disks

Most memory cards use solid-state flash memory to store information. Also, a limited number of cards are actually miniature hard drives, descended from the original microdrives developed by IBM and eventually taken over by Hitachi (and now also offered by Seagate).

In the old days, microdrives were relatively cheap, compared to flash memory, often providing 4 to 8GB of storage for about half what solid-state CompactFlash cards cost. Today, flash memory may even be less expensive than mini hard drives, and although some users swear by them, the microdrives sometimes don't quite stack up against flash memory:

- ✓ Drives are generally slower and require more power than flash memory cards.
- ✓ Some dSLRs can't use microdrives at all.
- ✓ You can't find any solid data on the reliability of these drives, but like any hard drive, they're likely to be less rugged than a solid-state card.



From reading photographer forums and newsgroups, I'd guess that reliability is lower; I've seen many reports from users of hard drives failing right out of the box or after a short period of time. Dead-on-arrival flash memory cards, on the other hand, seem to be comparatively rare. Keep in mind that only the folks with problems are likely to complain publicly, so there might be millions of happy microdrive users.

Unless some amazing technological breakthroughs happen, I fully expect mini hard drives, like EVF (electronic viewfinder) cameras, to become a niche product or fade away entirely.

## The right write speed

Memory cards operate a little bit like hard drives in the sense that some of them can write data faster than others. Although cards don't have the rotating platters that hard drives have, they do have electrical properties that limit the speed with which they can accept and store information.

Real-world write speeds typically range from about 0.75MB/second to about 8MB/second, and they depend greatly on the speed of your digital camera. That is, a particular card might be usable at 3MB/second in one camera and at 8MB/second in another that does a better job of writing information quickly. However, the speeds are proportional: A card rated as a better performer works faster in all the dSLRs it is used with, regardless of the actual speed, and regardless of the type and size of the file being written.



Fast memory cards can help if your digital SLR has a small buffer that can hold only a few shots. The faster your card can accept images, the more quickly you can resume shooting. Some digital single lens reflex cameras can't shoot and write at the same time, so this can be critical. For more info about memory cards, check out Rob Galbraith's Web site ([www.robgalbraith.com](http://www.robgalbraith.com)).

## Finding the key to the (capa)city

You must weigh technical, cost, and practical considerations when choosing memory card capacity:

- ✓ **Technical:** Some older dSLRs can't use memory cards (neither solid-state nor microdrive) with capacities of more than 2GB because they aren't compatible with the file system used for larger cards. (Check with your vendor in case a firmware update fixes this.) You might find some 4GB cards with a switch that transforms them into a pair of 2GB cards-in-one, but this is a poor solution. If your camera is limited to 2GB storage, that's the largest you should buy.
- ✓ **Cost:** If a 4GB card costs more than twice as much as a 2GB card, it isn't an economical buy — unless you really need a 4GB memory card rather than several modules of other sizes, like those shown in Figure 4-2. If you must have the higher capacity to keep from switching cards often, or if you plan to upgrade to a higher resolution dSLR in the future and want to use the same cards, you might be willing to spend more per gigabyte for the components you buy now. As I write this, 4GB cards cost almost exactly double the 2GB versions; 8GB cards cost twice as much as 4GB modules, but 16GB cards are roughly three to four times the cost of their 8GB counterparts.
- ✓ **Practical:** Some photographers are nervous about putting all their photo eggs in one basket. They fear having a card failure or, more commonly, losing the card altogether. Using a smaller number of higher-capacity media does put you at risk of losing a chunk — or even all — of your vacation to Paris if something bad happens. Only you can weigh the risks. However, as you see in the following section, you can take steps to minimize picture loss.



**Figure 4-2:** A selection of memory cards lets you keep your photo eggs in multiple baskets.

## The eggs/basket myth

Memory card capacity doubles, and prices drop by half with amazing regularity. Any time digital photographers start to make the transition from one common size to the next larger size, doom-sayers come out of the woodwork warning against putting all your photo eggs in one basket. The same folks who are saying it's foolish to use a single 8GB memory card instead of two 4GB cards (or even four 2GB cards) were panicking over the thought of storing their images on one of those new-fangled 1GB memory cards instead of the 256MB versions only a few years ago.

The fact is, unless you're using a camera that accepts more than one memory card at once and you write each picture to both cards, you're *always* storing your pictures in a single "basket" until you choose to back it up. The chief variable is how many pictures you're putting at risk, and the nature of the peril. Using more memory cards increases your chances of accidentally formatting one or damaging another. With CompactFlash cards, it's actually more common to damage the camera through over-frequent insertions/removals than to lose images to a

faulty card. Nor do memory cards work perfectly until they're full and then mysteriously fail. It's just as likely that a 4GB card becomes corrupt after, say, 2GB of photos as it is for an 8GB card to flake out after 2GB of images have been stored. Your risk is identical in either case.

Would you insist that your family drive in two cars to each destination? How many people are riding in each car? How likely is a traffic accident in your location? Obviously, the risks are impossible to assess. Each photographer should realize that malfunctioning memory cards are also exceedingly rare, and each must decide for himself or herself how many images can be comfortably exposed to such a minuscule risk.

In my day-to-day shooting, I use the largest memory cards I have to avoid needless swaps (which would cause me to "lose" pictures I couldn't take during the switch-over). When I travel or shoot any kind of once-in-a-lifetime event (such as a wedding), I back up my photos on the spot — to *two* backup devices. I don't care how many baskets I must use, as long as I take good care of those baskets.

## Storing Your Images

You don't keep your images stored on your flash memory cards for very long. The first chance you get, copy them to your computer's hard drive for reviewing, editing, and printing. The second chance you get, copy them to more permanent storage for archiving. So, backup media is high on your list of accessories for your dSLR.

### *Exploring options for backup media*

The most common way to store images is on CDs or DVDs. All commercial computers built today, even laptops, have some sort of CD or DVD burning capability.



You can also purchase standalone battery-operated burners and hard drives (dubbed *personal storage devices*, or *PSDs*) with 20–40GB of storage to offload your images while you’re traveling. Some prefer the portable DVD burners over the PSDs because the hard drive solutions are subject to the same potential problems that any hard drive can suffer. Non-rewriteable optical media that’s verified when originally written should remain readable for at least long enough to copy it to additional backup discs when you return. I like the PSDs (see Figure 4-3) because they’re much more compact than DVD burners and have proven reliable enough for my needs. (When I’m being especially careful, I take along two PSDs, or a laptop and a PSD, and then back up to both.)



**Figure 4-3:** Personal storage devices (PSDs) are standalone hard drive backup units.

If you own an Apple iPod, consider buying one of the card-reader adapters available from several vendors. You can use these to copy your images to your iPod. Then you can transfer them to your computer later. The only problem with the iPod solution is that transfer is very, very slow, and uses up a lot of your MP3 player’s power in a very short time.

### Creating image archives that last

According to the National Institute of Standards Technology (NIST), current DVD/CD technology is suitable for archiving images for “tens of years” at a minimum.

Of course, not just any media will last that long. Nor should it need to. Within 10 to 20 years, a newer, better storage medium likely will come along, and you’ll be able to transfer all your image files to that medium just as you copied your floppy-disk files to CD when floppies faded from use.



To improve your chances of retaining your priceless images for the ages, you need to use media that resists the rigors of aging and protects your discs from rough handling, heat, humidity, and direct light. Although rewritable CDs and DVDs are fine for temporary storage, for archiving images you’re better off with write-once CD-R and DVD-R/DVD+R media rather than the RW/+RW variety. And, because dual-layer DVDs are still a new technology, you’re probably best to avoid them, too. Although they have double the capacity, they currently cost more than twice as much, and so aren’t quite as economical for backup, either.

Of course, CD-Rs and DVD-R/DVD+Rs aren’t necessarily permanent, either. The organic dyes, like the dyes in color film and papers, change over long periods of time as part of a natural process that can be accelerated when they’re exposed to high temperature and humidity. These dyes are also sensitive to UV (ultraviolet) illumination and fade on exposure to direct sunlight.



## Maximizing the life of your CDs and DVDs

By taking a few precautions, you can avoid losing your archived images unnecessarily through age. Here's the regimen to follow so you get the most from your CD or DVD archives:

- ✓ Don't flex or bend your discs, and store them vertically in a cool, dry area as much as possible.
- ✓ Never use a solvent-based marking pen in the data area. The safest place to jot information about your disc is in the clear center area around the hub.
- ✓ If you use labels, make sure they adhere perfectly. Irregularities, such as bubbles, can imbalance the disc and cause tracking areas.
- ✓ If you must remove dirt or fingerprints from the read side of the disc, use a CD or lens cloth and wipe in straight lines out from the center. Never use a circular motion or wood-based products, such as facial tissue. You can use isopropyl alcohol, clear water, or soapy water to clean a grimy disc, but never use acetone or antistatic agents.
- ✓ Make multiple copies of your photo discs and store at least one copy offsite.

In the case of CDs, the technology is fairly stable, so after you locate a name brand that purports to have the permanence you're looking for, you can generally stick with it. The technology for recordable DVDs is a little more fluid because vendors regularly increase the recording speed of the media with more sensitive dyes, and they switch to double-layer systems to boost capacity.



Even the worst optical media lasts a year or two if treated gently. After a period of time, a few bits here and there are lost while the disc degrades. You might not even notice, at first, because error correction routines can usually reconstruct limited amounts of unreadable data. When a disc starts developing uncorrectable errors, the end is near. For tips on keeping your discs in good shape, see the nearby sidebar, "Maximizing the life of your CDs and DVDs."

## Filtering Factors

*Filters* are those glass or gelatin disks or squares that are affixed to the front of your camera's lens, changing the light that passes through the lens in some way. Filters were *really* popular before the advent of digital photography because some of the effects you could get with them weren't possible (or easy) to achieve in the darkroom. I own dozens of them, including a complete set of decamired color-correction filters, which many of today's photographers have never heard of.

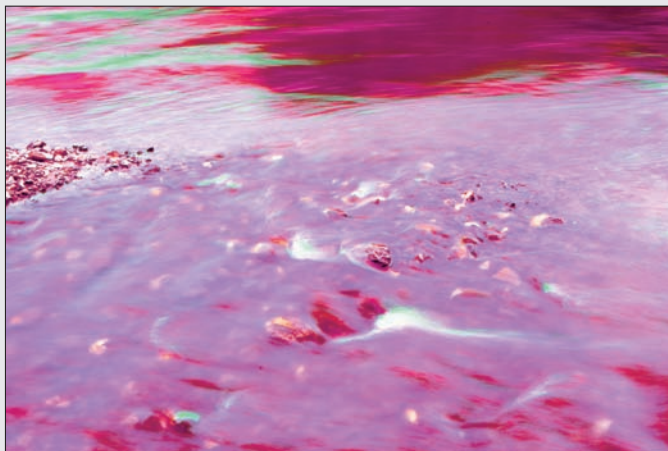
## Things to do with ND filters

You can do a lot of amazing things with a neutral density (ND) filter, including rendering objects invisible! All ND filters decrease the amount of light reaching the sensor, so you need to use a longer exposure than you would without the filter (or let your camera adjust the exposure for you automatically). Here are the key applications you'll want to take advantage of:

- ✔ **Use the large f-stop you prefer.** Sometimes, there's too much light to use the large f-stop you want to work with (in order to reduce depth-of-field). Some dSLRs have ISO settings no lower than ISO 200, so in bright sunlight, even a  $\frac{1}{4,000}$  of a second shutter speed means that the largest f-stop that you can use is about f/4. Add an ND2 or ND4 filter, and f/2.8 or f/2 is available to you.
- ✔ **Use the slow shutter speed you want.** Perhaps you want to get the classic blurry-water effect possible when photographing a flowing stream at a slow shutter speed while the camera's mounted on a tripod. At ISO 200, using f/22 gives you a shutter speed of  $\frac{1}{100}$  of a second under bright sunlight. If, as is likely, your mountain stream isn't in bright sunlight, it's still unlikely you can use a shutter speed

any longer than about  $\frac{1}{30}$  to  $\frac{1}{5}$  of a second. An ND filter can give you the half-second to several-second exposures you need for truly cool-looking water effects, like the one shown in the following figure, which I further enhanced in Photoshop.

- ✔ **Make moving objects vanish.** The moving cars and people in your scene distract from the image of the building you're trying to capture. No problem. Use an ND8 or heftier neutral density filter (stack several filters if you need to), mount the camera on a tripod, and shoot an exposure of 30 seconds or even longer. Unless a traffic light halts traffic, it's unlikely that any individual person or vehicle will be in the image long enough to register. If you have enough ND filter power at your disposal, this trick works in full daylight, so you can create your own ghost town.
- ✔ **Balance the sky and foreground.** In most scenes, the sky is much brighter than the foreground. A split ND filter, with the dark portion rotated so it's on top, can even out the exposure for the two halves, making those washed-out clouds visible again.







Glass and gelatin filters are less used today among casual photographers because you can achieve many of the effects they provide within Photoshop. Yet, not all filtration effects are possible in the digital darkroom.

Here's a description of the most essential filter add-ons:

- ✓ **Infrared:** Many digital SLRs are capable of taking photographs by using only infrared illumination, which produces a spectacular effect outdoors. You can get dark skies, vivid clouds, and ghostly white trees in your landscape shots and strange, pale complexions with your photographs of humans.

However, you must buy an infrared filter that blocks visible light and be prepared to shoot at slow shutter speeds (because very little light is left for the exposure). Also, you can't preview your shot (because an SLR viewfinder turns black when an infrared filter is mounted). For more on infrared photography, see Chapters 7 and 15.

- ✓ **Polarizers:** Polarizing filters, like the one shown in Figure 4-4, can reduce the glare bouncing off shiny surfaces in your photos. Simply attach the filter and rotate it until the glare disappears. These filters can also help deepen the contrast of the sky from certain angles.

Be certain to buy a *circular* polarizer rather than a *linear* polarizer for your dSLR. (All polarizers are round; *circular* refers to the way in which the filter handles light.) Circular polarizers don't interfere with the auto-exposure mechanism of your camera as linear polarizers can.

- ✓ **Neutral density:** The third kind of filter that every digital SLR photographer should own is a neutral density (ND) filter, so called because it blocks light but is neutral in color. ND filters come with various assigned filter factors, such as ND2 (reduces the light by one f-stop), ND4 (reduces light two f-stops) and ND8 (cuts down three f-stops).

As with most filters, they can be stacked to combine the effects of more than one, as long as the additional filters in the pack aren't so thick that they become visible in the image, thereby cutting off corners. (This is called *vignetting*.) Neutral density filters also come in a split variety — the top half (or bottom half or one side, if you rotate it) has neutral density, and the other half is clear.

- ✓ **Special Effects:** Lots of different filters produce special effects, including star-like points on highlights, prisms, special colors, and so forth. All the leading filter vendors offer these, but the 140 spectacular filters offered by Cokin ([www.cokin.com](http://www.cokin.com)) are in a class by themselves. Check them out. If you're interested in making your own filters, flip to Chapter 15.





**Figure 4-4:** Polarizing filters can reduce glare in many situations.

## *The Tripod: Your Visible Means of Support*

One way to tell the casual photographer from the serious photographer is the size of the tripod he uses. (Snapshooters don't have any tripod at all and are probably none the worse for it.) Casual photographers rarely shoot the longer exposures that need help from a tripod, and the lenses of their digi-cams aren't long enough to require a tripod's steadying influence. That's all for the better because photographers who aren't serious photo enthusiasts are likely to purchase flimsy tripods that don't do what they're supposed to in any case.

When a shooter evolves into a photo enthusiast, the real value of a tripod becomes evident. The first step is to spend \$100 on a "really good" tripod, which will turn out to be not so really good after all. However, the money isn't totally wasted because experience with inadequate tripods provides a valuable education that comes in handy when it's time to buy the real thing.

You know you've met a serious photographer when she unfolds a beautiful work of art made of carbon-fiber or magnesium alloy, topped with a quick-release grip-ball head that allows her to pivot the camera in any direction in seconds. Such a tripod is likely to be larger and steadier than the amateur jobs (which frequently have tell-tale leg braces because they *need* them) but still weigh a lot less thanks to the exotic materials used in its construction. Although a really good tripod can cost \$500 (don't gasp; I wanted to say \$800, but didn't think you'd believe me), it can be a once-in-a-lifetime investment.

I bought my own tripod when I was in college, and it's served me ably ever since. If enough people buy this book, I'm planning to replace it with a new one, but only because current tripods have a few features my original one doesn't have, and, built of carbon fiber or basalt materials, weigh about 75 percent less.

### *Putting a tripod to good use*

A tripod is much more than a three-legged camera stand. They can do a lot for you and let you take pictures you couldn't get otherwise. Their key uses are

- ✔ **Holding the camera steady:** If you need a long shutter speed for a picture in dim light, a tripod reduces the loss in sharpness from camera shake. Notice I said *reduces*. You might still have camera shake when using a tripod if the tripod itself is unsteady or is jiggled during the exposure. A steady camera is essential when shooting longer exposures in dim light or when using a telephoto lens, which magnifies vibrations along with your image. Few people can hand-hold a camera for  $\frac{1}{30}$  of a second or slower with a normal or wide-angle lens. Fewer can get good shots at a shutter speed slower than the reciprocal of the effective lens focal length — for example,  $\frac{1}{300}$  of a second with the equivalent of a 300mm lens (which might actually be a 200mm lens before a 1.5X crop factor).
- ✔ **Serving as a camera stand:** Perhaps you want to get in the picture, too, or do something else besides stand behind the camera while the photo's taken. Even if the shutter speed will be high enough that you won't need the tripod's steadying influence, the tripod fixes the camera in one place long enough for you to take the picture with the self-timer, a cable release, or a remote control device.
- ✔ **Providing precise, stable positioning:** A tripod lets you frame a shot exactly and then take several pictures with the same framing. This capability can be useful for landscapes, portraits, or any other shot that you want to be repeatable. Stability is almost essential for close-up pictures when precise depth-of-field or focus considerations come into play.
- ✔ **Keeping the camera level for multiple shots in a panorama series:** Some tripods can be fitted with a panorama head that can help you provide the precise positioning and proper overlap for these photos.

The chief disadvantage of tripods is that you have to carry them along when you need them, and sturdy-but-lightweight tripods can be expensive. An alternative is to use a tripod substitute, which can vary from a simple clamp-like device, to beanbags, to monopods.

I always, without fail, carry my tripod clamp in my bag (see Figure 4-5). And most of the time, I carry along a monopod, too. I have a 170mm–500mm zoom lens that I like very much, but I find that it's virtually impossible to use without, at the very least, a monopod. At 500mm (750mm after applying the crop factor), I've detected visible camera shake in my photos even when using a  $\frac{1}{2,000}$  of a second shutter speed. Who wants to jump up to ISO 1,600 to be able to get a decent aperture while freezing camera motion, when a tripod or monopod lets you do the same thing at ISO 400 or ISO 800?

### Choosing a tripod

The thing that all tripods have in common is that they have three legs (if they have only one leg, they're *monopods*). Some tripods can also have only two legs, but that's because their third leg is removable and can be used as a monopod. Ordinarily, they're one or the other because a bipod has very little practical use. Here are some considerations for you to think about:

- ✔ **What you see and what you get:** Tripods always look nice in the catalog, but what's shown might include several optional components that you don't get unless you order them with your tripod. For example, higher-end tripods tend to come as a set of legs only, with a center column that cranks up or down to extend the height of the tripod beyond what you get from extracting the legs. If you want a tripod head to attach your camera to, it might be \$100 extra (don't wince; I wanted to say \$200–\$300, but I held back for your sake). Other necessary parts, including quick-release plates that help you mount and dismount your camera speedily, it might be shown but cost more.



**Figure 4-5:** A tripod clamp allows you to use any handy stationary object as a support.

- ✔ **Leg style:** The legs might be cylindrical, cylindrical but flat on one side, open-channel, or some other shape. They might open from three to five different sections. The more sections, the more compact the tripod is when folded up, but the smaller the inner sections have to be to fit inside the others. The important thing is that the legs are as sturdy as possible when extended. They shouldn't bend or flex, and the extended tripod shouldn't sway in the breeze.
- ✔ **Leg height:** Your tripod should extend to at least eye-level without the need to crank up the center column (which is best used only for minor height adjustments, when you require the absolute maximum height, or if the column swivels and can be used to vary the shooting angle). My own tripod goes up much higher than that, so I need to stand on a ladder or stool to use it at its maximum height. That's great for shooting photos from a higher vantage point. At the other end of the scale, you want some way of shooting from low angles too, which can be accomplished by retracting the legs of a tripod with multiple sections or by swiveling or reversing the center post.

- ✔ **Leg lock and positioning:** Check out the method used for locking and unlocking the legs and note the range of movement available. The best designs let you lock or unlock all the sections of a particular leg simultaneously rather than one at a time, as shown in Figure 4-6, and they allow you to position the legs at independent angles so you can use your tripod on uneven ground.



**Figure 4-6:** Well-designed legs let you grip all the locks at once and operate them simultaneously.

- ✔ **Use your head:** The *head* is the part you attach your camera to. The most common type is the pan/tilt head that allows you to pan the camera on one axis and tilt it on another. Fluid heads have a long handle that you can twist to release the head so you can pan and tilt simultaneously. Increasingly popular are joystick and ball heads, which let you tilt the camera at any angle.
- ✔ **Fast release:** Some heads come with quick-release plates or can be fitted with them. One part of the plate fastens to the tripod socket of your camera. The other part attaches to the tripod. Instead of screwing and unscrewing the camera from the tripod each time, you press a control and slide it off.

## Electronic Flash in the Pan

Digital SLRs that cost \$2,000 or less — for the body only — generally have a built-in electronic flash, or *speedlight*. (The exception to this rule as I write this book is the inexpensive Foveon-based dSLRs from Sigma.) Digital SLRs that cost \$2,000 or more usually *don't* have a built-in flash (except the Fuji pro-quality S series dSLRs).

Professional photographers probably wouldn't use a built-in speedlight on their high-end cameras, usually because such units aren't powerful enough for anything other than fill flash and provide the kind of direct lighting that pros abhor. I've been paid for my photos and seen them used on covers and inside magazines, but not every picture I take is destined for the cover of *National Geographic Magazine* (okay, *none* of them are). Like you, I find it quite handy to be able to pop up my dSLR's internal flash when I want to take a quick shot and/or don't have my fully laden shoulder bag handy. I *like* having a flash built-in and always available.

However, like you, I'm serious about photography, and I'm glad I have my more powerful and flexible external flash units available to provide additional and supplemental lighting. In the following sections, I offer tips on the types of flashes you'll likely find useful. I also explain different ways external flash units work with your camera, and I cover any pros and cons you'll want to be aware of. In Chapter 9, I explain using a flash for various effects.

### Perusing different types of flash units

Flash units come in several types. I have a whole bunch of them, and you can probably use any of these types of flash units with your dSLR:

- ✓ **A fancy sort of flash:** My \$350 super-sophisticated unit can communicate with my camera and do fancy tricks, such as zooming its coverage to match the camera lens's zoom setting. It also reports to the camera the exact color temperature it uses, which results in more accurate hues and adjusts its exposure by reading the light that actually goes through the lens. In wireless mode, I can use it off-camera with no connecting cable.
- ✓ **Do the mashed potato:** I have a big monster of a "potato masher" flash with massive output for sports photography. I use this beast when I want to, say, illuminate a fullback on the opposite sideline. It attaches to an external battery powerpack, so it lasts forever, and I never ask it to do anything fancy. Although it has an automatic mode, I don't use that all the time because I often want to get the maximum output. The only zoom coverage available is through built-in wide-angle and tele-filters that modify the light.

- ✔ **Studio flash dance:** I probably get the most use out of my studio flash, though, which consists of a pair of large *monolights* (AC powered flash units with power built into the flash head) and two smaller electronic flash units used as background and hair lights.

## Tools for triggering the flash

To use an external flash, your camera needs to have some way of triggering the supplemental flash unit. You can do this in four ways:

- ✔ **Slave operation:** Perhaps the external flash can be set to function as a slave unit, which means it has a photocell that detects the firing of the camera's main flash, and the external flash triggers in response. In this mode, you can use any slave-compatible external flashes, including those with an add-on trigger. The problem with using slave flash is that you might not want both the built-in flash and the external to illuminate your scene. If you can cut the power of the internal flash, you might be able to reduce its impact on the photo, relegating it to a fill-flash effect.
- ✔ **Wireless mode:** Some dSLRs can communicate with the same vendor's electronic flash units in wireless mode. You might expect something called *wireless* to involve radio waves or, at the very least, some sort of infrared signal, but it can be much simpler than that. For example, Nikon's flash units "talk" to compatible Nikon dSLRs by using almost imperceptible preflashes that take place an instant before the flash fires. The camera's own flash tells the external flash details, such as the zoom setting of the lens, the correct exposure to use, and most importantly, when to fire. The external flash, in turn, responds with information, such as the color temperature of the illumination it provides. This data exchange can take place when the two flashes aren't connected, or even without the built-in flash providing part of the main exposure.
- ✔ **Hardwired PC connection:** You can find some dSLRs with a standard PC connection for attaching standard electronic flash units. (PC stands for *Prontor-Compur*, pioneering shutter manufacturers, rather than personal computer.) That means you can plug in studio flash and speedlights made by other vendors, assuming that the triggering voltage of the flash units isn't high enough to fry the circuits of your dSLR. (A Wein Sage-Sync add-on device isolates your camera from the flash's voltage. I use one to connect my studio flash to my digital cameras.) A PC connection, if you have one, works only with non-dedicated flash units that can't communicate with the camera. The only signal that's exchanged between the camera and the flash is the trigger that fires the external unit.

✓ **Hot shoe connection:** Modern cameras, including dSLRs, tend to use more sophisticated dedicated flash units that require full communication between the camera and speedlight. These require special connectors, usually in the form of a flash accessory *hot shoe* on top of the camera, like the one shown in Figure 4-7. The shoe has multiple contacts. You can plug in a flash unit designed to work with these contacts or use a hot shoe adapter that allows connecting a flash with a cable instead.



**Figure 4-7:** Dedicated electronic flash units use flash accessory hot shoe connections.

## Other Must-Have (Or Maybe-Have) Gear

After you've collected the most essential accessories your digital SLR needs, if you have any money left over, you might want to consider some of the additions I discuss in the following sections.

### *A second camera*

I've gone to Europe on vacation and taken along only a single camera and lens (I was planning on shooting movies most of the time). But now that I think about it, that wasn't a smart thing to do. When people are paying me money to take pictures, I *always* have one or two spare camera bodies, extra lenses, multiple flash units — duplicates of any essential piece of equipment. I discovered early in my career that "Sorry, my camera broke!" is *not* an



excuse that clients find acceptable. So why was I so dumb to go overseas and risk arriving with no way to take photos? Umm . . . I wanted to travel light?

Sooner or later, you'll discover that a second camera body makes sense for you, too. Even if you aren't 3,000 miles from home, can you really stop taking photos for a few weeks while your dSLR is off in the shop? Haven't you been in situations where you wanted to alternate between taking photos with a wide-angle or wide-angle zoom and a long telephoto or telephoto zoom lens? Having an extra body, one for each lens, can be just what you need.



You don't have to break the bank to buy your second camera body. Your existing lenses fit just fine if you buy another model from the same vendor, but you don't need an identical camera. You can purchase a Nikon D40 or Canon Digital Rebel XTi to supplement more expensive bodies from the same manufacturer. Or, you might find yourself with an extra camera body when your favorite vendor comes out with a new model and you decide to buy it and keep your old camera as a spare/second camera.

### *Sensor cleaning kit*

Like it or not, if you remove the lens from your dSLR, sooner or later you're going to have to clean dust and grime off the sensor. Available gear to do this includes brushes, swabs, and special liquids. But all you may need for most cleanings is a blower bulb, like those shown in Figure 4-8. Taking that first swipe at your sensor can be terrifying, but cleaning is actually simple and relatively safe.

### *Close-up equipment*

Lots of available add-ons can help you focus closer, including filter-like close-up attachments that screw onto the front of the lens, as well as bellows accessories that fit between the camera and lens.

Extension tubes, like those shown in Figure 4-9, are an inexpensive and versatile solution. These tubes are installed between the camera and lens, and they provide the additional distance needed to focus closer. Single tubes are available for as little as \$50, but you can pay \$150 or more for a complete set of fully automatic tubes in multiple lengths.



**Figure 4-8:** Keep your sensor clean with an air blower.



The extension tubes that couple with the camera's automatic focus and exposure mechanisms are your best bet from an ease-of-use standpoint.



**Figure 4-9:** Extension tubes let you focus closely.

# Part II

## Oh, Shoot!

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

Mona suffered from a rare disorder known as Bluritis, which mostly just affected her appearance in photographs.

©RICH TENNANT

shoot - shutter  
speed still seems  
too fast.





## *In this part . . .*

**A**ll those controls! What to do with them? It's true that digital SLRs give you great control over every camera feature and function. In this part, you find out how to work with those controls, master the use of interchangeable lenses, and work with special features, such as image stabilization.

In Chapter 5, I explain shutter priority and aperture priority modes, various programmed exposure features, how to adjust your exposures with histograms, and the mysteries of autofocus. Chapter 6 tells you everything you need to know about choosing and using lenses, including special-purpose optics, such as macro lenses. Chapter 7 explores special features that some — but not all — digital SLRs have.



# Taking Control of Your dSLR

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Unveiling the secrets of foolproof exposure
- ▶ Metering for fun and profit
- ▶ Finding the advantages of self-exposure
- ▶ Getting focused

**I**n terms of buttons, dials, and controls, comparing a typical point-and-shoot camera with a digital SLR is like comparing a hang glider to a Boeing 787 cockpit. Certainly, the more sophisticated option has more controls, but most people find it easier to flip a switch and shift a control than to yank on a lever, lean to the right, and pray.

Because you can do so many different things with a dSLR, the learning curve is a bit steep. Fortunately, your digital 787 has an autopilot — programmed modes — that flies your photographic aircraft for you until you can ease into navigating solo. But all those controls may be daunting at first. You might have four or five exposure modes to choose from, a half-dozen different ways to focus, and the ability to fine-tune details, such as white balance, sharpness, contrast, and color. Because you're a more serious photographer, those options are probably the reason you bought a digital SLR in the first place.

Okay, champ. You have this incredibly versatile gadget in your hands. How will you make it work? This chapter helps get you started with the toughest of the tough: exposure and focus.



## Discovering the Secrets of Exposure

If you're lazy or not up to using your brain on any given day, you can set up your digital SLR to operate much like a glorified point-and-shoot camera. Turn on autofocus, set the exposure control to Auto, and fire away. When you depress the shutter release, your camera tries to guess which subject in the frame is most important, and it focuses on that. The camera attempts to ascertain what kind of picture you're shooting (landscape, portrait, close-up, for example), and it chooses an exposure that's probably fairly close.

Clever little algorithms choose a shutter speed that eliminates subject- or camera-related blur (most of the time) and an f-stop that provides a decent compromise between depth-of-field and proper exposure. It's almost a given that your \$800 dSLR then produces pictures just as good as a \$200 snapshot camera.

But that isn't what you bought your digital SLR for. Auto is the mode you use when you hand your camera to your fumble-fingered brother-in-law and ask him to take a picture of you and your kids. You'd rather maintain control over your exposures so you can apply f-stops and shutter speeds creatively.

### Understanding why exposure is tricky

In a perfect world, your dSLR's sensor could capture all the photons that reach it from your subjects. Dark areas would be represented by *photosites* (the individual picture elements) that received few photons, and light areas would be registered by photosites that captured lots and lots of photons. All the intermediate tones would fall somewhere in between.

But it doesn't work quite that way. Some dark areas might produce too few photons to produce an image at all; some very light areas might be represented by so many photons that excess light overflows from one pixel into adjacent pixels, causing a light smear known as *blooming*. (I introduce this in Chapter 2, where I explain how sensors work in more detail.)

Proper exposure helps ensure that the sensor receives enough light to capture detail in the dark areas of an image, but not so much that light areas are washed out. Figure 5-1 shows some of the choices you might have to make. Exposing for the shadows provides lots of detail in the top version (the original version of this image), but the highlights are completely washed out. The bottom version uses improved exposure to trade off some of the brightness in the shadows for more highlight detail. (Actually, I played with the exposure

by using an image editor on the RAW version of the file, but this represents real-life choices nonetheless. You can find more information on using RAW files in Chapter 8.)



It's generally a good idea to try to preserve highlight details; they're impossible to retrieve if washed out. Brightening dark shadows is a lot easier than retrieving lost highlights.

Achieving such an ideal exposure can be tricky because sensors have a fixed *dynamic range*, which is the range over which detail in both light and dark areas can be captured. No sensor's dynamic range covers the full gamut of illumination levels that you're likely to encounter in everyday photography, so the "right" exposure is likely to be a series of compromises.

The first compromise comes when the continuous range of brightness and darkness in an image is converted from that analog form into digital bits and bytes. During the conversion, an infinite gradation of tones is sliced into a limited number of different shades — 256 different shades per color in the case of the 24-bit "full" color you probably work with in your image editor. Your digital SLR might capture more different tones than that — as many as 4,096 variations if your camera captures 12 bits per color channel — but you still end up with a measly 256 tones for each color in Photoshop (except if you're working with an *HDR*, *high dynamic range*, image with more than 8 bits per channel).

Your mission, if you choose to accept it, is to make sure that the available tones are the *right* tones to represent your image. You don't have many to spare. Perhaps you're shooting a night scene and have lots of detail in the



**Figure 5-1:** Expose an image so highlights don't wash out; they're impossible to retrieve.

shadows that you want to preserve, but there are also some details in highlights illuminated by a street lamp. How can you even guess how the camera captures each of these details? Let the histogram be your guide.

### *Getting exposure right with the histogram*

Digital SLRs include a *histogram*, which is a chart shown on your LCD (liquid crystal display) that displays the number of tones being captured at any brightness level. The number of pixels at each brightness level is shown on the histogram as a vertical bar, and there are 256 of these bars. The far-left position represents the darkest tones in your image, and the far-right slot shows the tones in the very lightest parts of your image.

Typically, a histogram looks something like a mountain, as shown in Figure 5-2. Most of the tones are clustered in the middle of the image because the average image has most of its detail in those middle tones. The bars are shorter at the dark or light ends of the scale because most images have less detail in the shadows and highlights. However, images that have a great deal of detail in the dark or light portions can have histograms that look very different, reflecting that particular distribution of tones.



**Figure 5-2:** With a well-exposed image, the histogram looks like this.





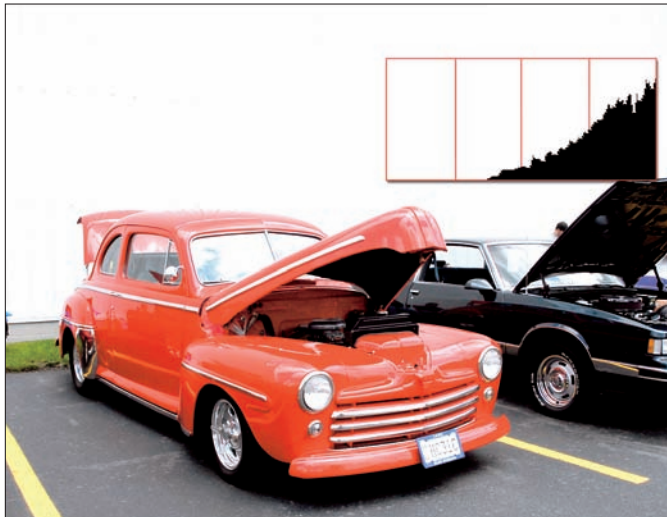
It isn't really possible to do much to manipulate the *shape* of the histogram in your camera, other than increasing or decreasing your dSLR's contrast setting. To make significant changes to the tonal value relationships, you need to use an image editor. What dSLR owners *can* do with a histogram display is use it to judge whether the current exposure is correct for the image. That's fairly easy to do:

### 1. Take your picture.

You have to take the picture first because, unfortunately, most dSLRs can't display a histogram "live" (in real-time). The sensor doesn't see the image until the exposure is actually made. (Point-and-shoot digital cameras might show a live histogram.)

### 2. Examine the histogram with your picture review function.

- If an image is *overexposed*, the graph is shifted toward the right side of the histogram, with some of the pixels representing lighter tones clipped off entirely, as shown in Figure 5-3.
- An *underexposed* image has the opposite look: The tones are crowded at the left side, and some of the shadow detail is clipped off, as in Figure 5-4.



**Figure 5-3:** An overexposed image clusters all the information at the right side of the graph.



**Figure 5-4:** An underexposed image moves all the picture information to the left side of the histogram.

**3. If you see either condition, compensate by changing the f-stop, shutter speed, or exposure value (EV) to correct the exposure error.**

Most of the time, experienced photographers try to keep the important details from running off the right side of the graph, where thanks to overexposure, they're lost forever.

If you're shooting RAW (see Chapter 8 for more about that), you might be able to adjust exposure and contrast when importing the image into your image editor. However, most of the time you'll want to get the exposure correct in the camera.

I spend the rest of this chapter showing how you can change the f-stop, shutter speed and EV to control the exposure.

## *Fine-Tuning Exposure with the Metering System*

Your camera's exposure metering system is a tireless friend that keeps plugging away, calculating its reckoning of the correct exposure (based on parameters you set) regardless of whether you choose to pay attention. It's available whether you're setting exposure manually or using one of the programmed or priority modes. You can't really turn off the exposure meter completely when the camera is on — although it might go to sleep after a few seconds of inactivity. Even then, as soon as you tap the shutter release button, a sleeping meter wakes up, looks at the current view through the lens, and reports its findings.

Like any true friend, your metering system is on its best behavior when you're around. It responds with the metering mode you prefer and calculates exposure based on your particular guidelines. What more could you ask for?

In the following sections, you find out how metering works, and you get a tour of all the main metering options on your dSLR to help you choose the optimum setting for the type of picture you want to take.

### *Metering works how?*

The reason why dSLR exposure meters are so accurate is that they interpret the actual light passing through the lens, which is flipped upward by the mirror toward the viewfinder (or sideways in the case of some cameras in the Olympus E series). A portion of the light is used for viewing, and some is used to measure the exposure. If you zoom the lens (which often changes the amount of light passing through) or place a gadget, like a filter, in front of the lens to modify the light, the meter sees the results and takes them into account. The metering system is also linked to the shutter speed and aperture controls, so it understands the effects of both on the recommended exposure.

### *Choosing a metering scheme*

Metering schemes on your dSLR enable you to configure the photosensitive elements of the exposure system (which can number from a dozen or so to thousands of individual light sensors) so that the exposure system interprets the incoming light in a specific way. Table 5-1 explains how photographers typically use the most popular schemes.

**Table 5-1** Metering Schemes

<i>Scheme</i>	<i>What It Does</i>	<i>Best Used For . . .</i>
Center weighting	This system looks at the entire frame but tends to emphasize the portion of the image in the center, assigning a center weighting determined by the vendor, but which usually amounts to about 80 percent for the center and 20 percent for the rest of the image.	Scenes in which — d'oh — the most important subjects are in the center of the frame. Perhaps you're shooting portraits or close-ups of flowers and, naturally, want to center your subject. Center weighting zeroes in on those subjects and isn't influenced by very bright or very dark areas outside the center.

(continued)

**Table 5-1 (continued)**

<i>Scheme</i>	<i>What It Does</i>	<i>Best Used For . . .</i>
Spot metering	This method makes its exposure recommendations based only on a center spot shown in the viewfinder that might measure 6mm to 12mm. Illumination outside the spot is ignored. Your dSLR might allow you to choose the size of the center spot.	Subjects that don't dominate the frame, and which are surrounded by areas of misleading brightness or darkness. If you were at a Bruce Springsteen concert and wanted to capture him during a spot-lit acoustic set, you could use spot metering to collect exposure information from the Boss alone. Figure 5-5 shows the relative areas used by typical spot and center weighted metering schemes. (Sorry, I don't have any photos of Bruce Springsteen.)
Multipoint metering	This mode is the default metering mode for most dSLRs. It collects exposure data from many points on the screen (usually <i>not</i> shown in the viewfinder) and uses sophisticated algorithms to decide which points to use in calculating the correct exposure.	Any scenes that don't require the special treatment provided by the other two methods. In other words, you'll use multipoint metering almost all the time.

### *More versatility with metering options*

Your digital SLR has several options that can increase your exposure versatility:

- ✓ **Lock in settings with exposure lock control.** When you press the button, the current exposure (or focus, or both) is locked until you press the button again or take a photo. This lock gives you the freedom to set exposure and then reframe the photo any way you like without worrying that the preferred settings change. This option is different from

the normal system of locking exposure and/or focus when you press the shutter release, partially because you don't have to keep your finger on the release button. Exposure lock control is sometimes combined with a focus lock adjustment.

- ✓ **Shoot a series of photos at different exposures by setting your dSLR's bracketing system.** The camera takes the first picture at the metered exposure, and then it takes the second and third at, say, one-third stop less exposure and one-third stop more exposure. You can set the exact increment, choosing to bracket by half or full stops if you want. You can also bracket parameters other than exposure, such as white balance and flash. Your camera might allow you to bracket more than one of these settings in the order you choose.
- ✓ **Adjust the shutter speed and/or aperture combination in use without changing the exposure at all.** If the camera chooses  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at  $f/8$ , spinning the command dial to the right might switch to  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at  $f/5.6$ , or to the left to change to  $\frac{1}{125}$  of a second at  $f/11$ . All these exposures are the same, but they provide different useful combinations of shutter speeds and f-stop sizes.



**Figure 5-5:** A spot metering area (center of the image) and a center-weighted zone (the larger oval area).

## The Many Ways to Choose Exposure

If you want to get the best results, you must use the available exposure options — automated, manual, and semiautomatic — in an intelligent way. Whether you're choosing Auto, Programmed, Aperture Priority, Shutter Priority, Manual, or one of the programmed Scene modes, give some thought to what you want to accomplish and choose the mode that's best suited for your planned picture-taking session.

The following sections offer tips for selecting the right mode.

### *Adjusting exposure the easy way*

Digital SLRs include a simple way of bumping exposure up or down through EV (exposure value). You can use EV as a way of referring to equivalent shutter speed and aperture settings that produce the same exposure. For example, if the correct exposure for a scene is  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at f/11 exactly, equivalent exposures would include  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at f/8 (a shutter speed half as long, but an aperture twice as large) and  $\frac{1}{125}$  of a second at f/16 (a shutter speed twice as long, but an aperture half as large). All three exposures would have the same EV.

Increasing or decreasing the EV setting adds to or subtracts from the basic exposure. If you bumped up exposure by one EV, you could change the shutter speed to  $\frac{1}{125}$  of a second while keeping the f-stop at f/11, or you could use the equivalent exposure of  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at f/8. Reducing exposure by one EV works in the opposite direction: You can shorten the shutter speed or make the aperture smaller. It doesn't matter. EV is a quick way to add or subtract exposure without fiddling with the shutter speed or aperture controls directly.

Your digital SLR has an EV button somewhere. Press it and use the corresponding EV control (usually a command dial or cursor pad button) to adjust the EV up or down one increment. This adjustment overrides your camera's autoexposure setting. In effect, you're giving your image more or less exposure than the exposure meter indicates when you change the EV.

Whether the camera adjusts the aperture or shutter speed is determined by your current shooting mode:

- ✓ **If your camera is set in a Programmed exposure mode**, the camera might adjust either value. It's that simple.
- ✓ **If you're using Aperture Priority mode** (you set the f-stop and let the camera determine the shutter speed), making an EV change bumps the shutter speed up or down.

- ✓ **If you're using Shutter Priority mode** (you set the shutter speed and the meter sets the f-stop), an EV adjustment makes the aperture larger or smaller.
- ✓ **If you're using Auto mode**, the camera sets both shutter speed and aperture with no input from you.

In the following sections, I discuss these modes (Program, Aperture Priority, and Shutter Priority) in more detail.

### *Giving up control (in Program mode)*

If you don't want absolute control over your exposure, you have an alternative to the dreaded Auto setting. It should suit you to a P — as in, programmed exposure — and that's where this option is usually found on the mode dial. It's an automated exposure system but, unlike Auto, the Program setting lets you fine-tune the exposure settings it selects. Auto generally locks you out of most useful adjustments completely.



Program mode is smarter than Auto. Most dSLR cameras have a built-in database of tens of thousands of photos that have been analyzed and reduced to numbers that characterize their optimum exposures. In Program mode, your camera can look at the image in your viewfinder, compare it with this database, and come up with an image that probably is a pretty good match. It can then apply the exposure parameters to your picture.

For example, the camera decides it has a landscape picture on its hands and attempts to maximize depth-of-field. Or, the camera determines that it's working with a portrait and, therefore, *less* depth-of-field might be in order. The algorithms might dictate that high shutter speeds are used to counter camera shake or subject motion, and the program switches to lower shutter speeds only when the aperture is deemed too small for the correct exposure at the current speed.



Carried to the extreme, programmed exposures can include settings that are optimized *only* for a specific type of picture, such as portraits, night photography, beach or snow photos, sports, or macro photography. These *Scene* modes are useful when you want to take a particular kind of picture and want to inform the camera of what you're doing, but don't have the time to set up the camera yourself. Scene modes can include more than exposure settings, too. They might adjust saturation to give you more vivid landscapes or decrease contrast to cope with bright snow scenes.

Figure 5-6 shows an image that would've benefited from using the Sports Scene mode. The default shutter speed selected by the camera produced a good exposure, but it wasn't fast enough to stop the moving softball and bat. Although a little blur can be useful in action photography (as you see in Chapter 9), in this case, it was too much. (Shutter priority, which I discuss later in this chapter, would've helped, too.)



**Figure 5-6:** The Sports Scene Mode could have improved this action photo by freezing the ball and bat, limiting the amount of blur.

Both Program and Scene modes are useful shortcuts for photographers in a hurry. However, most of the serious photographers I know use the options in the next section — Aperture Priority, Shutter Priority, and Manual Exposure modes — almost exclusively.

## *Taking control*

One of the joys of gaining expertise with your dSLR is knowing what's best for a particular type of photo and making the necessary choices even if you let the camera's electronics do most of the work. That's why Aperture Priority, Shutter Priority, and even Manual Exposure modes are so popular among digital SLR owners.

Here's how to choose among them.

### *Getting your aperture and shutter priorities straight*

Your camera doesn't know you're taking photographs of a soccer game, but you do. You know that you sometimes want to use  $\frac{1}{4,000}$  of a second to freeze the action, but other times you'd prefer to use  $\frac{1}{25}$  of a second to introduce a little blur into the mix.

With *Shutter Priority mode*, usually represented by an S or Tv (for *Time Value*) on the mode dial, the shutter speed is your choice. After you select the shutter speed, the camera locks it in. The autoexposure system varies *only* the aperture.



You also see the selected aperture in the viewfinder so that you, the all-knowing photographer, can decide when, say, the f-stop is getting a little too large for comfort and you want to accept a slower shutter speed to gain a smaller aperture. Should light conditions change enough that your selected shutter speed doesn't produce a correct exposure with the available f-stops, you're alerted with a LO or HI indicator in the viewfinder or, perhaps, a flashing light emitting diode (LED).

*Aperture Priority mode*, represented by an A or Av (for *Aperture Value*) on the mode dial, is the flip-side of Shutter Priority mode. (Don't confuse A with Auto, which is another setting entirely.) Perhaps you want a small aperture to maximize depth-of-field or a large f-stop to minimize it. It's your choice. You set the aperture you want, and the metering system sets the matching shutter speed. Again, if you notice that the shutter speed is too slow, you can opt to adjust the f-stop you've dialed in to one that's larger or smaller.

With some cameras, there's an ISO Auto option that also can change the sensitivity (to a higher ISO setting) if the camera's programming determines that the aperture you've selected doesn't allow using a shutter speed fast enough to counter camera shake.



Shutter and aperture priority let you use your photo smarts to set a basic parameter suitable for the photo you have in mind, and then the camera takes over to intelligently make the other adjustments.

### *Doing exposure yourself*

Sometimes if you want something done right, you have to do it yourself. Manual Exposure mode allows you to set both the shutter speed and aperture by using the camera's built-in meter for guidance. After you switch to Manual mode, the dSLR doesn't touch either setting, but it continues to evaluate the scene for the correct exposure and provide information in the viewfinder showing that you're over, under, or right on its recommendation.



I'm no technological Luddite, but I did resist exposure automation for an interminable period. Why did I resist? Well, Manual Exposure mode has some distinct advantages:

- ✓ **Special effects:** Suppose you want to create a silhouette effect, as in Figure 5-7, or underexpose a sunset to cloak your image in deep shadows. Maybe you want to overexpose a bit to wash out unwanted detail. Any automatic exposure mode stubbornly tries to correct for the lighting, effectively blocking you from applying your special effect. Simply switching to Manual Exposure mode and making the settings yourself is usually a lot faster than trying to override your camera's autoexposure mechanism.



**Figure 5-7:** Manual settings let you use creative exposure for special effects, such as silhouettes.

- ✓ **Balancing lighting:** You have a subject that's illuminated by several different light sources, say, two or more studio lights, or outdoors, by sunshine and fill light from your flash or a reflector. Manual Exposure mode lets you control exactly how exposure is set for these multiple light sources.
- ✓ **Older optics:** You might have an older lens that doesn't couple with your dSLR's autoexposure system. In that case, setting the exposure manually might be your only option.
- ✓ **Noncompatible flash:** I use Manual Exposure mode quite frequently when I connect my dSLR to some studio flash units. The camera can't control the flash, and it has no way of adjusting exposure automatically. So, I use a flash meter and set the f-stop manually. If you're using a flash that isn't built specifically for your dSLR or you want to use the flash in Manual mode (say, to make sure it always uses its full power), manual exposure setting can work for you. Chapter 9 covers working with flash in more detail.

## Focus Pocus

Focusing your image correctly is arguably the most important technical aspect of taking pictures because even a small focus error might ruin an image beyond redemption. You can often correct exposure problems or fix bad color balance in an image editor. You might be able to fix clumsy framing with some judicious cropping. You can even retouch images to remove particularly ugly subject matter. But if an image is badly focused, you can sharpen it a little, but most likely not enough to bring a blurry shot back from the dead.

Oddly enough, focus is something that is both a benefit and bane of the dSLR. Focus isn't usually much of a worry for point-and-shoot photographers except when taking close-up pictures. Nor is *selective focus* (placing parts of an image out of focus to emphasize other portions) much of a creative tool. That's because the very short focal lengths required by the tiny sensors in those cameras put virtually everything in sharp focus, regardless of zoom position, f-stop, or distances (other than close-ups). Even a telephoto shot taken with a point-and-shoot camera's lens wide open is likely to be sharp from a few feet to infinity.

That isn't so with dSLRs and their lenses. You can throw parts of your scene, such as the background in a portrait shot, out of focus to emphasize your subject. Unfortunately, you can also accidentally throw your subject out of focus if you aren't careful, producing unintended results.

Digital SLRs offer two different ways of achieving focus: manual and automatic. Each method has its advantages and disadvantages. Read on for details.

### Focusing manually

Manual focusing sounds easy, but it's more difficult than it sounds. All you need to do is twist a ring on the front of the lens, and the image pops into sharp focus, right? If only it were that simple! Manual focus is, unfortunately, rather slow when compared to the automatic focus features of digital SLRs. It works well when you're doing thoughtful work, such as *macro* (close-up) photography, where your subject sits there patiently while you fiddle with the camera (often locked down on a tripod) and focus until you get everything exactly right.

Manual focus isn't so good when you're photographing fast-moving sports or if you're shooting in a rush for any reason. The big problem is that our brains have a very poor memory for sharpness. You don't really know for sure that sharp focus has been achieved until you've passed it and your image starts to blur again. Then you have to jog back and forth until you're convinced the image is sharply focused. This jostling takes time, and you might not have that much time to waste.

Focusing an image becomes more difficult when your scene is darker or lower in contrast. That's true for both you and the camera's autofocus mechanism, but at least when the camera's doing the job, you don't have to fret in frustration.



Still, manual focus might work for you in several situations:

- ✔ **Zeroing in on one subject:** When you want to focus on a particular object that the autofocus system doesn't readily lock in on, focus manually. Perhaps you have three eggs set up in a diagonal row and you want to focus on the center one, as in Figure 5-8. Most autofocus systems can be aimed, but it might simply be faster to do the focusing yourself.
- ✔ **Shooting action pictures:** In some action situations, autofocus systems can be fast, but they might focus at lightning speed on the wrong subject. Sports photographers can sometimes use Manual mode to focus ahead of time where they know the action will be, dispensing with the uncertainty.
- ✔ **Avoiding total confusion:** Autofocus systems are totally confused by some kinds of situations, such as subjects posed against plain backgrounds. For example, I find that when photographing seagulls in flight, I often have to focus manually unless I'm lucky enough to have a bird blunder into one of my camera's autofocus zones.
- ✔ **Photographing through glass:** Sometimes an autofocus system fixates on the glass itself rather than the subject behind it, so you might be better off focusing manually.



**Figure 5-8:** It might be easier to focus on the center egg manually.

## Oughta' autofocus

Digital SLRs focus automatically by selecting the focus point at which the highest image contrast is achieved. When a subject's out of focus, it looks blurry and lower in contrast. When the subject's in focus, the lack of blur translates into higher contrast that the focus system can see.

Of course, that means that a low-contrast subject or one that's poorly illuminated can give an autofocus system fits. (I recommend manual focus in such cases.) Sometimes a *focus assist lamp* built into the camera or a dedicated flash unit can put a little light on the focus problem.

One nagging problem with autofocus is how the system decides what to focus on. Most digital cameras have five to nine (or more) focus sensors grouped around the viewfinder screen, and the cameras evaluate the contrast of the image in each of them to select the zone on which to base focus. To gain a little more control over the focal point of a shot, you might have the following options:

- ✓ **Switching zones manually:** You might be able to switch from one zone to another manually by using your camera's cursor pad or other control. That's useful if your subject isn't smack in the center of the frame but still lies within one of the other focus zones. The zone you select is highlighted in the viewfinder and remains in that position until you move to another zone.
- ✓ **Switching zones under camera control:** If you don't choose a focus zone yourself, your camera does it for you by using a scheme, such as *dynamic focus area* (the zone switches around when the camera detects subject motion) or *nearest subject* (the zone is locked into what the system determines is the closest object to the camera). You might be able to allow the autofocus system to set the focus point for you, yet still override its decision without resorting to full manual focus.
- ✓ **Locking out focus ranges:** Another option is the ability to lock out certain focus ranges, such as extreme close-up or distant focus, so your autofocus system doesn't hunt over the full range when seeking correct focus.



Most of the time, you can let your camera focus for you, choosing between the three common primary focus modes:

- ✓ **Continuous autofocus:** After you press the shutter release halfway, the camera sets the focus but continues to look for movement within the frame. If the camera detects motion, the lens refocuses on the new position. Use this option for action photography or other subjects that are likely to be in motion. Remember that if your subject moves faster than

the autofocus system can keep up, you might take an out-of-focus picture. That isn't as bad as it sounds, though: Sometimes you'd rather capture a picture — any picture — even if it's slightly out of focus than miss the shot entirely.

- ✔ **Single autofocus:** Press the shutter release halfway, and focus is set. It remains at that setting until you take the photo or release the button. This mode is best suited for subject matter that isn't likely to move after it's been brought into sharp focus. However, you can't take a photo at all until focus is locked in, so you end up either with a sharp photo or none at all.
- ✔ **Automatic autofocus:** Press the shutter release halfway, and focus is set, as in single autofocus. But if the subject starts to move, the camera switches to continuous autofocus and refocuses as required. This mode is great when you're not certain that your subject will remain stationary.

# Mastering the Multi-Lens Reflex

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Deciding on add-on lenses
- ▶ Choosing prime lenses or zooms
- ▶ Understanding key lens concepts
- ▶ Using wide angles and telephotos creatively

**I**n one sense, the term *single lens reflex* is a misnomer. Even in these days of 18–250mm lenses that cover the range from wide-angle to medium telephoto (or 50–500 superzooms that extend from short telephoto to really, really long telephoto), few dSLR owners try to operate with only a single lens. In fact, buying extra optics for one of these cameras is more than a reflex — it's a passion! Additional lenses are probably the most popular accessory for digital SLRs. They are the single component that can provide the biggest boost to your photographic repertoire.

Of course, you probably know that the term SLR actually refers to a camera design; one that uses the same lens to take the picture as for reflex viewing (that is, by reflection using mirrors or a prism) — as opposed to a *twin-lens reflex* that pairs two lenses of the same focal length for separate viewing and snapshotting. These days, however, dSLR owners are more likely to be single-minded about acquiring accessory lenses.

This chapter helps you choose which lenses to add to your collection, based on your needs — both real and imagined — and shows you how to use them effectively.



## Optical Delusions

Unless you happened to purchase a compact 12mm–400mm f/1.4 zoom lens with your dSLR (they don't exist), you're deluding yourself if you think you couldn't use an accessory lens to improve your photography. Lenses don't make you a better photographer, of course, but they do increase your opportunities and let you take pictures you simply couldn't grab with the lens that came with your camera.

This next section lists some of the things that an accessory lens can do for you.

### Shooting in lower light

The “do-everything” zoom lenses furnished with dSLRs often have maximum apertures of f/3.5 to f/4.5. The Canon Digital Rebel XTi, Nikon D40 and D40x, and Pentax K10D models are all furnished in kit form with 18mm–55mm f/3.5-5.6 zooms (I'm sensing a trend here).

You can't compare the focal length ranges directly, of course, because these popularly priced dSLRs have different crop factors, ranging from 1.5X (for Nikon, Sony, and Pentax) to 2X (for the Olympus line). But you can compare maximum apertures, and you'll see that f/3.5 or slower is common among every vendor's “starter” lenses.



That's where your add-on lenses come in. Although zooms with large maximum apertures are expensive (and for a zoom lens, f/2.8 is a large maximum aperture), fixed focal length (*prime*) lenses that are fast can cost very little. For example, a 50mm f/1.8 lens from a major camera manufacturer may cost less than \$100 even though it's two f-stops faster than an f/3.5 lens and three stops better than an f/4.5 optic.

If you're willing to spend a little more, you can buy 28mm, 35mm, 50mm, or 85mm f/1.4 lenses from the larger lens companies and speedy third-party lenses, like the Sigma 30mm f/1.4 and Sigma 20mm f/1.8. Those extra notches on the aperture ring let you take pictures in darker environments hand-held, as shown in Figure 6-1, without resorting to detail-robbing higher ISO ratings. An indoor concert that calls for a  $\frac{1}{5}$  second exposure at f/4 and ISO 100 may work just fine at  $\frac{1}{25}$  second at f/1.4.

The fastest lenses are generally designed to produce good results wide open, too, so you needn't fear using f/1.4 with a prime lens even though you've gotten poor results with your zoom at f/4.5.





**Figure 6-1:** Wider apertures allow shooting in dim light without mounting the camera on a tripod.

### *Improving your shutter speed*

That wider aperture also pays dividends in the shutter speed department. The difference between  $f/1.4$  at  $\frac{1}{25}$  of a second and  $\frac{1}{5}$  of a second at  $f/4$  can be quite dramatic from a sharpness perspective, as you discover in Chapter 5. You find out more about making the most of slow shutter speeds using image stabilization technology in Chapter 7.

### *Producing sharper images*

You may be able to get sharper images by switching lenses, too. That's not to say that the lens you purchased with your camera is unsharp. However, your "do-all" lens is built on a foundation of compromises that don't necessarily produce the best results at all zoom positions and all apertures. Other lenses you add to your collection may provide better results at specific focal lengths or f-stops. For example, that 50mm  $f/1.8$  lens you pick up for less than a single Benjamin just might be the sharpest lens you own. Or, you might buy a close-up lens that's optimized for macrophotography and produces especially sharp images at distances of a few inches or so.



Your current lens is probably very good, but that doesn't mean you can't get sharper pictures with another set of optics, particularly when you're swapping a general purpose zoom lens for a fixed focal length prime lens designed for exactly the kind of photo project you're working on at the moment.

## Taking a step back

Wide-angle lenses let you take in a wider field of view, in effect, stepping back from your subject even in situations where there really isn't room to move farther away. It's likely that the lens you bought with your camera provides a field of view no wider than that of a 28mm lens on a full-frame film SLR. That's not really very wide. Some very interesting perspectives can be had with ultra-wide lenses, including the 10.5mm fish-eye view provided by one Nikkor lens particularly, because Nikon offers a utility that can *defish* the curved image to produce a more rectilinear (*straight line*) version. Your particular dSLR may have wide-angles available with the equivalent of a superwide 18mm lens, or better. Third-party vendors also offer some interesting wide-angle choices, such as the Sigma 10-20mm f/4-5.6 optic that offers the equivalent of a 15mm to 30mm zoom on a dSLR with a 1.5X crop factor. I've had a great deal of fun with a Tokina fish-eye zoom lens (used for Figure 6-2) that allows you to choose your degree of distortion over a 10–17mm range.



It's understandable if you've been lusting after longer and longer lenses, particularly if you shoot wildlife or sports, but if you haven't worked extensively with wide-angle lenses, I urge you to give them a try. It's a whole new world.



**Figure 6-2:** Extreme wide-angle lenses, like the fish-eye used for this shot in a baseball park, provide a new perspective.

### *Getting closer*

The inverse of a wide-angle lens is the telephoto lens, and these longer focal lengths let you bring distant objects that much closer to your camera. The lens that came with your camera probably provides only a moderate telephoto effect, perhaps around 70mm, which, with a 1.5 crop factor, is the equivalent of a 105mm short tele-lens on a full-frame 35mm film camera.

Longer lenses are easy to find and can be very inexpensive, simply because telephoto prime lenses and telephoto zooms are generally simpler to design than their tricky wide-angle counterparts. You'll find 70mm–300mm zooms for many dSLRs for only a few hundred dollars. Prime lenses can be even cheaper. I picked up an ancient non-automatic (focus, exposure, and aperture) 400mm lens for about \$79 that's great for shooting the moon, as shown in Figure 6-3, or for wildlife, especially if you can mount the camera or lens on a tripod.



**Figure 6-3:** Shoot for the moon — if you have a long enough telephoto lens.



### *Focusing closer*

Your optional lens may be able to focus much more closely than the lens that came with your camera, making it a macro lens. If you're new to close-up photography, you'll soon find that the *magnification* of the image is more important than the close focusing distance.

You can get the same size image with a 200mm lens at eight inches as you get with a 50mm lens at two inches, and you may even be better off. The closer you get, the harder it may be to get good lighting on your subject. There simply isn't a lot of room to apply effective lighting when there's only a gap of a couple inches between the front of the lens and that tree frog you're snapping. Worse, the tree frog may get skittish at the proximity of you and your camera, making that 200mm lens and the extra distance it provides an even better idea.

## *Choosing Your Prime Lens — or Zoom*

In the olden days, fixed focal length prime lenses were all photographers used most of the time. Zoom lenses were slow, often expensive, and had limited zoom ranges. In the 1960s and 1970s, photographers used zoom lenses only when they absolutely couldn't swap lenses to get the focal lengths they needed, and even then were more likely to tote around three or four camera bodies, each mounted with a prime lens of a different focal length. Zooms were also good for special tricks, such as the infamous zoom-during-exposure effect. In 1966, Nikon introduced one of the first decent zooms with a practical zoom range and acceptable sharpness, a 50mm–300mm f/4.5 that seems fairly tame today, but which was revolutionary and horrendously expensive at the time.

Today, zooms are sharper, smaller, faster, and less expensive. The 28mm–200mm zoom I have mounted on my dSLR right now costs around \$300, measures about 2.7 x 2.8 inches, weighs 13 ounces, and focuses down to 1.3 feet at 200mm. It's truly an all-purpose lens. You can find other zooms that meet your needs, or, perhaps, fill out your arsenal with a few prime lenses.

### *Prime time*

As I note in the section before this one, prime lenses can be faster (both in aperture and autofocus speed), sharper, and much lighter in weight than zoom lenses. If you're looking for the ultimate in image quality, a good prime lens or two may be exactly what you want. Here's a list of some common applications and the prime lenses that might be especially suitable for them. In all cases, when referring to recommended focal lengths, I use the actual

focal length, but assume that your camera has about a 1.5X crop factor. That's a good number that works for the majority of consumer-priced dSLRs on the market, and isn't too far off for those with 1.3 to 1.6X crop factors.

✔ **Architecture:** Wide-angle lenses in the 18mm to 30mm range (depending on how much of the wide view your system's crop factor clips off). Most of the time, you're shooting stopped down to a relatively small aperture to gain depth-of-field, so an  $f/2$  or  $f/1.4$  maximum aperture isn't as important even when shooting indoors under low light levels. A tripod serves you better. If you shoot a great deal of architecture, you can purchase a *perspective control* lens that compensates for the falling back effect that results when you tilt the camera back to capture the upper reaches of a tall structure. You can find out more about perspective problems in Chapter 10.

✔ **Indoor sports:** You want a moderately wide angle of roughly 30mm focal length for indoor sports, like basketball or volleyball, with longer lenses for shooting from up in the stands. Large apertures can be useful for available light sports, but only if you can focus or pre-focus carefully on a single subject or two because depth-of-field is limited, as you can see in Figure 6-4. Autofocus may not accurately focus exactly where you need to when using a very large aperture.



**Figure 6-4:** When shooting indoor sports, focus carefully because depth-of-field is sparse at wide apertures.

✔ **Outdoor sports:** Longer lenses are useful, and primes in telephoto focal lengths often offer an excellent combination of reach and speed. You'll find 100mm to 200mm lenses, or longer, great for capturing football, baseball, soccer, and other outdoor sports. Apertures of  $f/2.8$  to  $f/4$  let you use faster shutter speeds to freeze the action (again, assuming that you or your camera's autofocus system make the most of the available depth-of-field).

✔ **Portraits:** If you're taking head-and-shoulders shots, a 50mm to 70mm prime lens offers the same flattering perspective as the traditional 75mm to 105mm portrait lenses used with 35mm full-frame cameras (with a

1.5X crop factor on the dSLR). Such prime lenses usually come with f/1.8 or faster maximum apertures, which are useful for limiting depth-of-field when you want to concentrate on your portrait subject's face. Longer focal lengths can produce a flattening effect on the features, and shorter focal lengths can make ears look too small while enlarging noses if used up close.

- ✓ **Macro photography:** Prime lenses, such as the ever-popular 50mm f/1.8, although not intended for close-up work, can still do a great job. You may have to purchase extension tubes or other accessories to focus close enough to fill the frame with very small subjects.
- ✓ **Landscapes:** Wide-angle primes (18mm to 24mm) can give you landscape photos that are sharp enough to blow up to 16 x 20 inches or larger as framed pictures to grace your walls.



Of course, the only problem with using prime lenses is that you must be willing to swap lenses whenever you decide to shoot something else or need a different perspective you can't get by stepping closer or farther away. Digital SLRs have one additional consideration: If you're working in a dusty environment, you may not *want* to change lenses a lot because each time you take off a lens, you're letting some dirt invade the camera body and, possibly, end up on the sensor. You can read more about sensors and dust in Chapter 2.

## Zoom, zoom, zoom

Zooms are good, too. Honest. I may be a little biased because most of my lenses have always been primes, with only a lone zoom that wasn't used much. Today, most of my work is with 12–24mm, 18–70mm, 28–200mm, and 170–500mm zooms, so you can see I'm no optical Luddite. But I still get a lot of use from my new 60mm and 105mm macro lenses, as well as older prime lenses I own, including a 16mm fish-eye that functions as a quirky 24mm lens with a heck of a lot of barrel distortion (even after the crop factor has trimmed the image). I also regularly use my prime 50mm f/1.4, 85mm f/1.8, 105mm f/2.5, and 200mm f/4 lenses when I want a little extra sharpness or aperture speed.

But those applications are in the distinct minority. Like you, I rely on zooms most of the time. Consider these different broad categories of zooms:

- ✓ **Wide angle:** These are strictly designed for wide-angle perspectives, and, if designed for digital SLRs, may include ranges, like 10–20mm or 12–24mm. You'll find wide angles originally created for full-frame 35mm cameras, too, with ranges like 17–35mm. On a camera with a crop factor, such lenses are actually closer to wide-to-normal in range but are likely to be very sharp (and sometimes very expensive). Before purchasing a wide zoom for your dSLR, you might want to check it out carefully because the widest of the wide often have serious distortion and aberrations.

- ✔ **Mid-range:** The lens furnished with your camera is likely to be a mid-range zoom, with a focal length at the wide end of about 17–18mm, extending out to 55 to 70mm at the telephoto end. Such lenses are inexpensive, not very fast, but reasonable in cost. You can also find some upscale versions in the same focal lengths, with greater sharpness and larger maximum apertures. These were usually designed for finicky full-frame 35mm film camera users. They're often worth the extra expenditure because they often have a fixed maximum aperture throughout the zoom range. That is, a 17–55mm f/2.8 lens has a constant f/2.8 aperture and doesn't vary between, say, f/2.8 at the wide-angle position and f/4 at the telephoto position, which is common with less expensive models (like the one that came with your camera).
- ✔ **Short tele to telephoto:** These lenses may start out at 50 to 70mm and extend out to 200 to 300mm or more. One vendor's 50–500mm zoom is especially popular because it provides such a huge range of focal lengths in one lens. Of course, it's also possibly the largest and heaviest 50mm lens on the planet, so you want to own such a beast only if you plan on actually needing its 10X zoom reach.
- ✔ **Telephoto:** These lenses start long, and go longer. My 170–500mm zoom falls into this category and can *really* reach out and touch someone, as shown in Figure 6-5. You'll also find 200–400mm zooms or even longer lenses from various vendors. As with any lens of more than about 200mm, seriously consider using these optics with either the camera mounted on a tripod or, better yet, with the lens attached to the tripod using a special collar with a tripod socket. Many long lenses are sold with such removable collars.



**Figure 6-5:** Subjects that you can't get close to can be captured easily with a long lens, like the 170-500mm zoom used to capture this shot.

- ✔ **Macro:** Several vendors offer lenses with zoom ranges in the medium telephoto range (out to about 200mm) that also offer macro focusing. They're especially useful for wildlife photographers who photograph big beasts and small.

## Special (lens) delivery

I touch on special purpose lenses in this chapter and describe them in more detail in other sections of this book. Just to make things neat and tidy, I list the special kinds of lenses you may encounter (or wish to acquire). They include

- ✔ **Optical image stabilization:** I discuss this in Chapter 7; these are the lenses that counter camera or photographer shake by shifting lens elements around just before exposure. They give you the power to shoot at shutter speeds about 4X as long without producing camera-induced blur. Sony and Pentax build the anti-shake feature into the camera itself, so, with only a couple exceptions, *all* your lenses can be used with image stabilization.
- ✔ **Perspective control:** These are the optics that shift to provide improved perspective when photographing buildings or other subjects that converge in the distance.
- ✔ **Macro:** These are prime or zoom lenses designed especially for close-up photography, offering extended focusing, better sharpness, and, often, extra-small apertures (such as f/32 or f/45) to maximize depth-of-field.
- ✔ **Focus control portrait:** Nikon offers a series of DC lenses with *defocus control*, which lets you adjust how the out-of-focus background appears in portraits or similar kinds of single-subject pictures.
- ✔ **UV:** If you're a scientist photographing subjects using ultraviolet (UV) light, you'll probably want to scrounge around for one of these rare, expensive optics that don't filter out UV in the same way as lenses built of conventional glass elements.

## Lens Concepts

Ideally, lenses used on dSLRs should be designed to meet the special needs of digital cameras. That's not always possible. Most digital SLRs use lenses that were originally designed for film cameras, which might not work as well on a digital camera. Some vendors, such as Pentax, Nikon, and Olympus, offer lenses that work exclusively with their digital cameras. That's a better solution, in my book.





That's because sensors aren't what engineers might describe as *plug compatible* with film. You can't rip out the film transport mechanism and substitute a digital sensor and expect the same results (even though that's exactly how some of the original DSLRs were designed).

### *Different strokes*

Sensors are smaller than film frames, introducing the infamous crop factor I'm forced to drag into about half the shooting discussions in this book. Only part of the image formed by a lens designed for a full frame sensor is captured by a sensor that, like most DSLR sensors today, is smaller than 24mm x 36mm. The crop factor may be 1.3, 1.5, 1.6, or even 2.0 times. This can be (seemingly) good for telephoto pictures, but not such a great effect if what you really wanted was a wide-angle view. A 100mm lens may have the field of view of a 150mm lens, but a 20mm super-wide-angle ends up with the viewpoint of a mundane 30mm lens.

Because a smaller portion of the lens coverage area is used, the smaller sensor crops the edges and corners of the image, where aberrations and other defects traditionally hide. You just might be using the best part of your lens if it was originally designed for a film camera.

Of course, vendors are producing lenses designed expressly for smaller sensors, which means that their reduced coverage area must be extraordinary even in terms of sharpness and light distribution.

But wait, there's more! Sensors don't respond to light the same way film does. Film grains absorb light in roughly the same manner regardless of its angle of approach to the film surface. A sensor's *photosites*, on the other hand, are little pixel-nabbing wells that collect photons best when they drop directly into the bucket rather than coming in from a steep angle. With lenses designed for film, some of the light can hit the side of the well or spill over into adjacent pixels. Unwanted patterns and light fall-off can also result, along with flare that results when photons bounce off the shiny sensor surface, hit the equally shiny rear lens elements, and then reflect back onto the sensor. Ugh!

Although camera and lens designers have found ways to counter these problems with equipment designed expressly for digital photography, optics created for film cameras might not produce the same uniformly good results. Image quality can vary from lens to lens based on how well the design meets the needs of digital imaging.

## Going for bokeh

Obsessing over the quality of the out-of-focus areas of an image that a lens produces (its so-called *bokeh*) has become a subspecialty fixation of its own in recent years. Some lenses are prized for their wonderful bokeh, whereas others are reviled because their bokeh stinks. You'll find endless discussion of this topic in the photographic forums online. So what does it all mean?

The word *boke* means “blur” in Japanese, I'm told. English speakers insisted on rhyming it with “broke,” so the silent “h” was added to the Western spelling of the term to help ensure that the language-challenged among us would properly pronounce it as if it rhymes with “polka.”



Bokeh describes the points of light in the background that become fuzzy disks when rendered out-of-focus by inadequate depth-of-field. Various lenses render these disks in different ways. Some create uniformly illuminated disks. Others generate disks that are dark in the center and lighter at the edges, which make them stand out like a sore thumb or, actually, a frosted doughnut. The reverse effect, a nicely illuminated center that fades to a darker edge, is ideal because the disks tend to blend into each other. Lenses with the very best bokeh characteristics display almost no disk shapes at all.

If you shoot close-ups, portraits, or long telephoto shots that have out-of-focus backgrounds, examine the bokeh characteristics of any lens you're considering very carefully. You might not even be aware of the deleterious effects of bad bokeh (except when using a so-called *mirror* or *catadioptric* telephoto lens, which generates the mother of all doughnuts around each point of light). But you'll eventually notice that some out-of-focus backgrounds are more harmonious than others or, in the worst case, your bokeh-aware photographer friends will make fun of you. Figure 6-6 shows examples of both good and bad bokeh.



**Figure 6-6:** When bokeh goes bad, as at left, out of focus points of light produce obvious disks that are darker in the center than at the edges. With good bokeh, the points blend together to produce a smooth out-of-focus background (right).

## Using Lenses Creatively

There's more to working with a lens than simply adjusting to its greater or lesser field of view. That's to say, a wide-angle lens is much more than just a wider perspective, just as a telephoto lens has a lot more going for it than the ability to pull objects closer to your camera. This section shows you some of the things you need to know to work with wide-angle and telephoto lenses creatively.

### Creative use of wide angles

Wide-angle lenses have some special characteristics you should be aware of because those characteristics can hold some special pitfalls that you want to avoid, while offering some creative advantages if you use them properly.



You can use those qualities in your photography in these ways.

- ✓ **Increase depth-of-field:** Sometimes you want what cinematographers call *deep focus*. Akira Kurosawa was a master of the technique of having both subjects very close to the camera as well as those that are more distant all in sharp focus. You can do it, too. At any given aperture, wide-angle lenses provide more depth-of-field than a telephoto lens, allowing you to picture a larger range of subject matter without the distracting blurriness of objects in the foreground, background, or both.
- ✓ **Emphasize the foreground:** If you want to put extra emphasis on subjects in the foreground, such as a lake or meadow, while de-emphasizing the mountains in the background, use a wide-angle lens.
- ✓ **Distort the foreground:** Although wide-angle lenses tend to exaggerate the size of objects closest to the lens, you can effectively use this form of perspective distortion to create an interesting viewpoint in your picture.
- ✓ **Add a unique angle:** When you get down low and shoot up with a wide angle, the combination of perspective distortion and the unusual angle can be used creatively, as shown in Figure 6-7. The same is true when shooting down from high angles.
- ✓ **Use slower shutter speeds:** Just as telephotos magnify camera shake, wide-angle lenses tend to minimize it. If you can hand-hold your camera with a normal lens (or zoom setting) at  $\frac{1}{60}$  second, you just might be able to pull off  $\frac{1}{30}$  second exposures, or longer, with a wide-angle lens.



**Figure 6-7:** A low angle with a wide-angle lens is a dual-edged sword. The perspective is interesting, but you run the danger of having tall structures appear to be falling backward.

✓ **Show more stuff:** Indoors or outdoors in tight quarters, you can show more of your scene with a wide-angle lens. That's great when you want to picture most of a building or all of a room indoors, but you can also use this expansive view when photographing people in their environment.



Don't be lulled by the creative opportunities wide angles offer. Here are some pitfalls to avoid:

- ✓ **Avoid skewed horizontal and vertical lines:** Watch those horizons and the vertical lines of buildings so they don't look skewed in your photos. Keep the camera level as much as possible.
- ✓ **Watch proportions:** Because wide angles exaggerate the relative size of objects that are close to the camera, you can end up with weird proportions in your photos. You don't want your spouse's nose to appear twice its normal size (even button noses don't benefit from optical plastic surgery), so keep the possibilities of distortion in mind when framing your photos.
- ✓ **Don't let lens defects ruin your photos:** Wide-angle lenses may be subject to distortions that change the shape of vertical and horizontal lines at the edges of the photo. Or, such lenses may have chromatic aberrations that add purple or cyan glows around backlit subjects.
- ✓ **Avoid vignetting:** Filters, lens hoods, and other add-ons may actually intrude into the picture area with wide-angle lenses. Use thin filters, avoid stacking too many of them together, and use only lens hoods designed for a particular lens.
- ✓ **Watch that flash:** Your digital SLR's built-in electronic flash might not spread wide enough to cover the full frame of a wide-angle lens. Use a diffuser or wide-angle adapter over your flash. Some dedicated flash units actually zoom their coverage to match your lens' zoom position. Also make sure that your lens or lens hood doesn't cast a shadow when shooting close-up subjects with flash.

### *Creative use of telephotos*

Telephoto lenses have their own set of creative strengths and dangerous pitfalls. You'll want to keep these tempting applications in mind when working with your longer lenses and tele-zooms:

- ✓ **Compression:** Telephoto lenses compress the apparent distance between objects, making that row of fenceposts appear as if each post is only a foot or two distant from the next. Movie-makers use this effect all the time to make it look like the hero is bravely racing between speeding cars while crossing the street, when actually none of the vehicles come closer than five or ten feet.

- ✓ **Isolation:** The reduced depth of field of tele-lenses let you apply selective focus when you want to isolate your subjects from the foreground or background.
- ✓ **Sports action:** A telephoto lens brings you into the middle of the huddle, right in the center of the action around the goal, and a lot closer than you ever wanted to get to the periphery of a scrum.
- ✓ **Nature's bounty:** A telephoto can take you closer to your photographic prey, including animals of all shapes and sizes, while letting you stay far enough away that you don't become prey yourself, as shown in Figure 6-8.
- ✓ **Macro photos:** You might not need a macro lens to shoot macro photos. A telephoto lens with enough reach that focuses reasonably close may be all you need.



**Figure 6-8:** Don't get too close! Use a telephoto and live to shoot another day.



Telephoto lenses don't have an unusual number of pitfalls, but you should be aware of them nevertheless. Here are the crucial things to watch out for:

- ✔ **Flash coverage:** Like wide-angle lenses, telephotos have some potential problems with electronic flash coverage, except that the problem is *depth* rather than *width*. The electronic flash built into most dSLRs isn't powerful enough to reach more than 10–20 feet, so if you're photographing a running back who's 50 feet away, you'll end up with a very underexposed photo. If you do a lot of sports photography, you might want to consider buying a powerful external flash to provide the extra light you need.
- ✔ **Too-slow shutter speeds:** Because longer lenses magnify the shakiness of lightweight cameras or lightweight photographers, use a shutter speed that's high enough to counter the vibration. If you can't use a higher shutter speed, use a tripod or monopod.
- ✔ **Reduced depth-of-field:** Telephotos have less depth-of-field at a given aperture. If you need the maximum amount of depth-of-field, use a smaller f-stop.
- ✔ **Atmospheric conditions:** Even when smog doesn't fill the sky, the air is full of enough haze or fog to reduce the contrast of your long telephoto shots and affect your pictures. Sometimes a skylight or haze filter helps, or you can boost the contrast and color saturation in your camera or image editor.
- ✔ **Flare:** Telephoto lenses have a narrow field of view, making it easy for bright light outside your image area to affect your image with flare, which reduces contrast. Use your lens hood without fail.





# Special Features of dSLRs

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Reducing noise
- ▶ Canceling camera shake
- ▶ Understanding time-lapse photography
- ▶ Shooting infrared photos

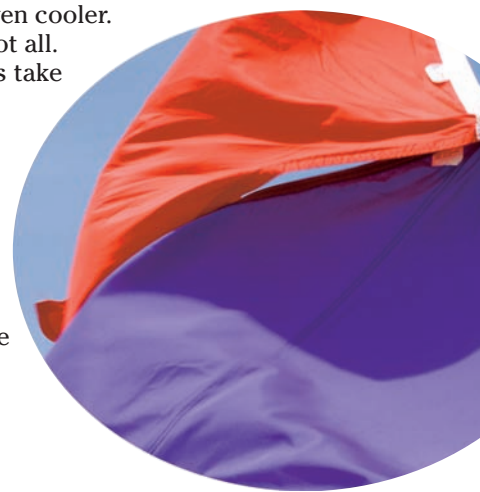
Everyone loves watching movies on DVD more than on videotape, premium cable, or maybe even in a theater. Why? Because of those special features! It's a kick to press a button and hear the director's commentary, watch hilarious outtakes, or listen to Ben Stiller and Owen Wilson banter in French or Japanese. Okay, maybe a minority likes the image quality that DVD provides, but for me, special features are the attraction.

The special features built into your digital SLR are even cooler. These are the functions built into some dSLRs, but not all. They let you do some very interesting things, such as take pictures in virtual darkness or shoot the unfolding of flowers through time-lapse photography.

This chapter describes what you can do with some of these special features. No movie stars are chattering in a foreign language, but if you have your heart set on gibberish, your dSLR probably has a setting for switching your menus to any language you like. While you're at it, I'll keep busy exploring some of the more useful features of digital cameras.

## *Feel the Noize at Night*

All digital SLRs can take fine pictures at night, but some do a better job than others, thanks to special features built into them to handle long exposures and noise (or, as Quiet Riot and Slade fans call it, *noize*). This section describes the key components you need to work with so that your night shots are sparkingly clear.



## A fast lens . . . or not?

As you discover in Chapter 6, a lens with a large maximum aperture (generally, anything faster than  $f/2.8$ ) is a must only if you're hand-holding (that is, shooting without a tripod) your night photos or, perhaps, if you want to shoot with flash and need your speedlight's illumination to reach as far as possible. An  $f/2$  or  $f/1.4$  lens might let you take some night pictures at  $\frac{1}{30}$  of a second hand-held or, with image stabilization (which I discuss in the following section), at slightly slower shutter speeds.



The more sane shooters take night photographs with the camera securely mounted on a tripod, so that you can use virtually any lens at any desired f-stop and still get a clear photo. Correct exposure in such cases is simply a matter of using a sufficiently long shutter speed. That said, using a long shutter speed isn't always an option, as I discuss in the following section.

## Taking night shots at short shutter speeds

You might want to avoid very long shutter speeds and prefer the shorter shutter intervals a higher sensitivity (higher ISO setting) affords, for any number of valid reasons:

- ✓ Perhaps you don't want to spend 30 seconds or more making a single exposure because of time constraints or physical conditions (rain, muggers, an episode of *Desperate Housewives* you don't want to miss, and so forth).
- ✓ You might want to take as many photos as possible in available darkness.
- ✓ You'd rather avoid the light streaks from moving cars or other illuminated objects that a long exposure is likely to produce.

Bumping up the ISO can let you take your night photos with a reasonably short exposure. Some DSLRs have ISO settings no higher than ISO 800, but others go up to ISO 1,600, ISO 3,200, or higher. A few cameras top out at a specific ISO notch but include "push" settings with names like H1 or H2, which elevate the effective sensitivity a notch or two more that you can use in a pinch. You can also adjust your camera's exposure value (EV) compensation controls to underexpose an image (effectively providing a higher ISO setting) and then try to salvage the photo in your image editor.



Of course, high ISO settings tend to amplify non-image signals in an image, producing extra noise. That's where your camera's noise reduction feature comes in, reducing the annoying speckles produced. See the next section for more about using noise reduction.

## Noise Reduction Made Easy

You'll want to consider using noise reduction anytime you take photos at night using long exposures or high sensitivity settings because the objectionable texture overlays unprocessed images.

Noise comes from several sources. One might be the amplification of the weak signal that the sensor produces under low light conditions. The sensor itself also produces noise while it inevitably heats up during a long exposure, and some of that heat is mistaken for incoming photons. Some digital cameras exhibit an *amp glow* or *amp noise* phenomenon, which is a reddish or purple glow in the corners and edges of very long exposure images (usually several minutes or more) caused not by heat, but by electroluminescence of electrons in the readout amplifier of the camera's sensor. You don't need to be a rocket scientist to understand that; the actual specialty is astronomer (they experience amp glow when taking astrophotographs).

The bottom line is that noise can be generated at high ISOs with exposures of any length and at relatively low ISO settings with long exposures.

To cancel some of those noisy speckles, digital SLRs include internal noise reduction circuitry. It works by making *two* exposures: an actual picture of your subject and a blank or dark exposure for the same length of time. This second picture contains only noise of the same type that appears in the real picture. The camera's noise reduction circuitry compares the two and zaps the pixels that are common to both (the *noise*). This solution is along the order of the sculptor who starts with a block of marble and removes everything that doesn't look like a statue.

Figure 7-1 shows two versions of an image taken in the early evening at a hotel that's been converted to an art museum, using a relatively short exposure ( $\frac{1}{4}$  of a second), but with the ISO setting cranked up all the way to ISO 1,600. A lot of noise is visible in the upper version. (The upper version is actually a little exaggerated to make it visible on the printed page.) The lower version is the same shot with noise reduction applied. The difference is quite dramatic.

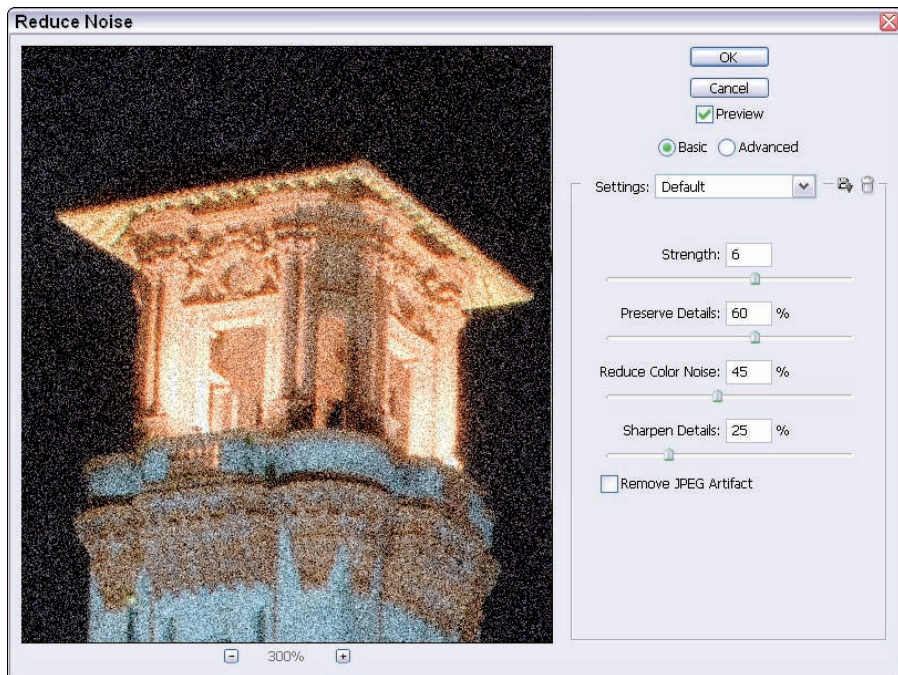


**Figure 7-1:** The upper version badly needs noise reduction. You can see the results in the lower version.



Because the noise reduction feature works by taking two shots, any photos taken with the noise reduction feature turned on take twice as long. You'll scarcely notice the delay with shutter speeds of about one second or shorter, but when you're snapping off 30-second exposures, you'll definitely notice the extra half-minute pause during this "dark frame subtraction" process. If you're in a hurry or forget to switch on the noise reduction, you can also perform some post-shot noise reduction with an image editor, such as Photoshop (as shown in Figure 7-2), or with a third-party application, such as Neat Image ([www.neatimage.com](http://www.neatimage.com)) or Noise Ninja ([www.picturecode.com](http://www.picturecode.com)).

The Reduce Noise filter in Photoshop and Elements lets you control the strength of the noise reduction, how much detail to preserve, whether to eliminate color noise, and how much sharpening of the remaining detail should be applied. The Adobe Camera Raw plug-in supplied with both programs also includes noise reduction features you can apply to RAW files. For an introduction to image editors and image editing, see Chapters 11 and 12.



**Figure 7-2:** Photoshop CS3 and Photoshop Elements 5.0 have a noise reduction filter built in.

## Shake, Shake, Shake

Whenever photographers get together, one of the inevitable topics of conversation is each shooter's prowess at hand-holding a camera for incredibly long exposures. Oddly enough, these are the same photographers who might swear by an emerging camera-steadying technology known as *image stabilization*.

"I get razor-sharp images at  $\frac{1}{50}$  of a second, even with telephoto lenses!" one boasts. "I can squeeze off shots at  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a second with no problem!" another counters. "I have a special technique for bracing my arms that lets me take time exposures of up to two seconds without a tripod!" a third asserts, leaving the others to wonder whether he's joking or just filled with braggadocio.

No matter how experienced a photographer you are, and whether you apply arcane breath-control and body-steadying practices to your techniques, you only *think* you're steady enough to shoot long exposures with short lenses, and reasonably long exposures with telephotos.

In the sections that follow, you find out some of the common myths about camera shake, identify the point where you *really* need to switch from hand-held shots to a tripod, diagnose shake-related problems in your photos, and discover ways to fix those problems.

### Leaving camera shake myths behind

In camera shake lore, you might have come across two misleading assumptions:

- ✓ **If you don't see the shake, it isn't there.** The slowest shutter speed at which you *think* you can reliably shoot sharp images is probably the speed at which you can't detect the blurriness that appears at normal levels of enlargement. Crop a small section out of the center or make a huge enlargement, and you can probably see the difference. A surprising number of your shots very likely would be sharper if you used a tripod.
- ✓ **Use a shutter speed that's the reciprocal of the lens's focal length (for example,  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second with a 250mm lens).** This is more of a rough guideline than a rule because it doesn't take into account the crop factor some dSLRs produce. That is, your 250mm lens is effectively a 400mm lens (if your camera has a 1.6X crop factor). No, you're *not* multiplying the focal length of the lens (as I emphasize over and over), but you *are* filling the frame with less subject area, magnifying any camera shake just as if you'd made an 8-x-10-inch print instead of a 4-x-6-inch print.

Some people are shakier than others, so a  $\frac{1}{400}$  of a second shutter speed that one photographer can use successfully might be woefully inadequate for another photographer. To figure out the point where you personally need to switch from hand-held shots to using a tripod, see the next section, "Testing for tremors."



It goes without saying, of course, that this discussion is concerned *only* with blurriness caused by camera/photographer shake. Blurs derived from moving objects are another issue entirely, although they, too, can be fixed by using higher shutter speeds.



### Testing for tremors

Before looking at the latest technological cure for shaky hands, try this exercise to see just how bad you have the “affliction.” (If you’ve inherited, as I have, a mild case of *essential tremor* condition, you can remove the quotation marks.)

1. **Find a scene that contains sharp pinpoints of light, preferably at night so you’ll have a dark background, such as a scene with streetlights.**
2. **Switch your camera to Manual mode so you can vary both the shutter speed and f-stop independently.**
3. **Take several pictures at a fixed f-stop but vary the shutter speed for each picture.**

Use various shutter speeds you think are test-worthy. For example,  $\frac{1}{60}$ ,  $\frac{1}{30}$ ,  $\frac{1}{15}$ , or  $\frac{1}{8}$  of a second.

4. **Calculate your exposure with your digital camera’s metering system.**

Exposure needn’t be precise as long as you vary only the shutter speed during the tests. If you change f-stop or focus, you can change the size of the points of light, although the greatest effect is on any out-of-focus points.



If you’re shooting over a great range, change the ISO setting of your camera so you can maintain the same aperture while varying the shutter speed.

5. **After you finish, open your shots in your image editor and examine the camera shake by enlarging the light points enough that you can study their shape.**

The appearance of the round disks of light in your images let you judge fairly accurately how steady you could hold the camera during the tests:

- *If the disks are perfectly round*, like those shown at lower right and upper left in Figure 7-3, you used a shutter speed that’s fast enough to stop action at that focal length.

Keep in mind that if you zoom in to a longer focal length, you need a higher shutter speed. Telephotos *magnify* the effects of camera shake.

- *If the disks are elongated vertically*, the camera’s been shaken up or down (or both).





**Figure 7-3:** The spots of light in the lower-right and upper-left corners are round; the shutter speed was fast enough to stop camera shake.

- *If the disks are elongated in a diagonal direction (usually a diagonal pointing from upper left to lower right), you've jerked the camera, probably by punching the shutter release button too aggressively. Why that particular direction, because you tend to press down and to the right, not the other way around? Remember that an image is recorded on your sensor upside-down, so the direction of any camera movement is reversed.*
- *If the disks are elongated from side to side, your camera shake formed some panning-style blur. Again, the direction of the blur is reversed, so if you jerked the camera slightly to the left, the blur appears to the right in your final image.*
- *If you're really shaking, you might find the blurs create a streaky pattern, like the one shown in Figure 7-4. That shutter speed is way too low for hand-held exposures.*



**Figure 7-4:** Really streaky photos mean that you need a *much* faster shutter speed if you want to hand-hold your camera.



### *Everyday solutions for shakiness*

After you determine what your minimum practical shutter speed is for hand-holding (keeping in mind that this speed can vary because of lens focal length and other factors), you can attempt to sharpen your photos. To cease the shakes, try using

- ✓ Higher shutter speeds
- ✓ Better shooting ergonomics (that is, bracing yourself)
- ✓ Aids, like tripods, monopods, or beanbags (see Chapter 4)
- ✓ Image stabilization

### *Image stabilization: The ready-steady-shoot technology*

Anti-vibration technology has gained a lot of attention because several of the most popular low-priced cameras from Sony and Pentax include the feature right in the camera body, so it's now available in modestly priced entry-level cameras.

Leave it to the techno-wonks to come up with stunning new technologies just because they can. Camera-steadying technology has been around since 1976



in the motion picture industry when the Steadicam was introduced. This device produces gyroscope-like stability through an exquisite application of gimbaling and balance. By 1995, Canon had introduced an electronic form of image stabilization (IS), which is now offered by Nikon, Sony, Pentax, and others under names like Vibration Reduction or Anti-Shake.

Nikon and Canon build IS into individual lenses; Sony, Pentax, and Olympus (the only other vendors offering the technology for digital SLRs) incorporate image stabilization into the cameras. They all operate by using similar principles: The device (lens or camera) senses motion and then shifts components in the opposite direction(s) to compensate — those components being elements of either the lens or the sensor. You can turn off the vibration-reduction feature when you don't need it. An anti-shake on/off switch is shown in the lower-right corner of Figure 7-5.



Anti-shake switch

**Figure 7-5:** Turn off anti-shake technology when you don't need it.



The mechanics of image stabilization work very quickly, although not quickly enough to avoid slowing down camera operation a tad. That's why IS is best suited for countering camera shake when taking pictures of relatively slow-moving subjects, when using longer exposures, or for shooting with telephoto lenses without a tripod. Although many photographers use IS for sports photography, the small delays it introduces can be annoying — the dSLR equivalent of shutter lag.

IS allows you to hand-hold your camera at shutter speeds roughly four times longer than you could manage without image stabilization. If you can hold your camera steady at  $\frac{1}{60}$  of a second, you can get the same results with IS at  $\frac{1}{15}$  of a second. Those extra two stops of exposure might mean the difference between not being able to take the picture at all and getting a well-exposed shot at a decent aperture.

The following scenarios offer a close-up look at how image stabilization works in different circumstances:

- **You're shooting a poorly lit subject and you need an exposure of  $\frac{1}{60}$  of a second at f/2.** Oops! Your zoom lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6. With image stabilization cranked up, you can go ahead and shoot at the equivalent exposure of  $\frac{1}{15}$  of a second at f/5.6 and expect the same amount of sharpness from a camera steadiness perspective.

Of course, if your *subject* is moving too much for capture at a slow shutter speed, that's another story. I took photos of my son's high school

stage performance last fall by using the  $\frac{1}{5}$  of a second and  $f/5.6$  combination. I ended up capturing razor-sharp scenery, but the expressive hands, arms, and mouths of the actors were often lost in blur!

- ✔ **You're using long lenses and shutter speeds that are high, but not quite high enough, such as if you're shooting wildlife (or even sports, if you can put up with the slight delay).** In this case, IS can offer extra steadiness to compensate for the shake that long lenses can introduce. For example, you might find that shooting at  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second at  $f/16$  and ISO 400 with a 500mm lens is correct from an exposure standpoint, but your front-heavy lens causes enough wobble to blur photos even at that shutter speed. With IS, you can retain the  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second shutter speed and the depth-of-field provided by the  $f/16$  aperture, but with enough steadiness to make your image tack sharp. Figure 7-6 shows a pair of images shot with a 400mm lens at  $\frac{1}{200}$  of a second, both with and without image stabilization. Tracking this bird in flight made holding the camera steady difficult at  $\frac{1}{200}$  of a second (top), but I got a sharp image of the same bird a few minutes later at the same speed with image stabilization turned on (bottom).



**Figure 7-6:** Image stabilization made it possible to shoot this bird hand-held with a long lens.

## Time Waits for Someone: Creating Time-Lapse Sequences

Walt Disney didn't invent time-lapse photography, but some of the most memorable nature sequences ever filmed were early Disney films of flowers blossoming or the sun marching across the sky in the Painted Desert. Today, time-lapse imaging is so easy that people use it for transitions and segues in television shows. Just set up a motion picture or video camera, pop off a frame every minute or hour or day, project the sequence at the normal 24 or 30 frames per second (fps), and you have a time-lapse movie.

Your digital SLR can easily produce the same kind of sequences. You can snap off pictures at preset intervals to document a flower opening, a butterfly emerging from its chrysalis, or the construction project across the street. All you need is a willingness to tie up your camera for the necessary period of time and some means of tripping the shutter at the proper times. Of course, you can trip the shutter manually if you have the patience.



Some non-SLR digital cameras have built-in timers that trip the shutter for you. With digital SLRs, however, it's more common to tether the camera to a computer with a USB cable and allow computer software to take the exposures. This method makes sense for several reasons:

- ✓ **Time-lapse photography uses a lot of juice.** Consequently, it's a good idea to keep the camera close to a computer and an AC power source. If your sequence takes more than an hour or two, your camera's battery probably can't supply the power needed to take the photos. So, you'll want to connect your camera to an AC adapter plugged into the same power that keeps the attached computer running.
- ✓ **Long sequences tax your camera's internal storage.** If you want to use the maximum resolution your dSLR offers, you might find that a single memory card fills up before your sequence is done. Systems that tether the camera to a computer save the images directly onto the computer's hard drive.
- ✓ **Computer-driven time-lapse photography can be more sophisticated.** Most of the software programs used for this kind of work can automatically assemble your finished shots into a movie.

Experiment with time-lapse photos to see your world from an entirely different perspective. It's fun!

## Better Infrared than Dead

Feel like your creativity is on its last legs? Looking for a real challenge? Do a little research and see whether your particular dSLR can handle one of the

unexplored frontiers of digital photography — infrared imaging. It's dark territory (quite literally — you'll be shooting blind), but it's worth a long look.

Infrared (IR) photos have a particular, otherworldly look. Skies are dark, clouds stand out in sharp relief, and foliage appears ghostly white, as you can see in Figure 7-7. Human faces are pale and lack texture. The pictures are grainy and sometimes seem to glow with an inner light. You'll either love or hate these effects after you take the time to explore them for yourself.

Some digital SLRs are better suited to IR photography than others. That's because most models include an IR-blocking filter called a *hot mirror* to filter out most of the longer wavelengths of light that encompass the infrared band. As luck would have it, digital sensors are quite sensitive to infrared, but that sensitivity leads to poorer photographs in visible light. Thus, you need an IR-blocking filter.

Luckily for photographers interested in infrared imaging, some of these filters do a worse job than others in blocking the IR illumination. Your own dSLR might be one of those capable of taking infrared pictures. A quick way to tell is to point a remote control at your lens and snap off a picture with a button on the remote depressed. If you can see the glow of the remote control's IR burst in the image, you're in business.



In addition to the hot mirror, watch for infrared blockers on your lens, too. A few lenses from Canon and other vendors have an anti-IR coating that can produce a bright spot in the center of your image. If you have this problem, switch to a different lens or try to correct the spot in your image editor.

To start taking infrared photos, all you need is a special filter and some patience:

- ✓ **The filter blocks visible light but lets infrared light though.** Don't confuse this infrared filter with the hot mirror I just mentioned.



**Figure 7-7:** Infrared images are otherworldly in appearance.



- ✓ **Patience is essential because even with the most IR-worthy dSLRs, most of the infrared light is still filtered out.** Enough infrared light remains to take a picture, but you'll have to use long exposures for best results. I've taken IR photos at  $\frac{1}{50}$  of a second with my lens wide open and ISO set to 1,600, but they've been fuzzy and lacked depth-of-field.
- ✓ **For better results, use normal ISO settings and mount your camera on a tripod.** The tripod helps because you're shooting blind. Any IR filter you use removes virtually all visible light, so the view through your viewfinder is totally black. Digital SLRs generally don't provide an LCD preview, so you can't frame your photograph that way.

In Chapter 15, you find details on choosing a filter and steps that walk you through taking infrared photos.



When the Fujifilm FinePix S3 Pro UVIR D-SLR was introduced, infrared fanatics (as well as the scientists and law enforcement technicians for whom the camera was intended) were well pleased. The camera is a version of the company's S3 Pro series digital SLR (first introduced in 2004), with some tweaking to allow it to capture light in both the ultraviolet and infrared ranges as well as visible illumination. It's an interchangeable-lens camera based on Nikon components, can use Nikon lenses (with the same 1.5X crop factor), and costs several thousand dollars.

The S3 Pro UVIR isn't really practical for photographers who don't have scientific or forensic applications for it, unless you're really, really interested in IR work. It's expensive, and it doesn't really represent visible light subjects (shot without any filtration) very well. Its conventional photos have a bit of a red tint for many subjects and quite a rich red or orange cast in plants and other IR friendly subjects. IR pictures require a Wratten #89B filter, which, of course, removes the visible light with this camera the same as it does with any other digital camera. Fujifilm's solution is to provide a 30-second grayscale preview image on the LCD, which can be used for framing and evaluation.

## Dust Off

Another new feature found in some dSLRs is a built-in automatic dust removal system (as opposed to the non-built-in *manual* dust removal procedures I outline in Chapter 4). These usually work like the system found in the Sony Alpha models: The same sensor-shifting technology used to provide anti-shake features is employed to produce a little vibration (usually when the camera is turned off) that bounces any dust or other particles that have found their way onto the sensor off the filter covering the sensor and onto a flypaper-like sticky strip at the bottom of the chamber.

At this time, such dust-removal systems are found only in cameras with internal image stabilization. You can expect them to become more popular as additional vendors add anti-shake features to their designs.

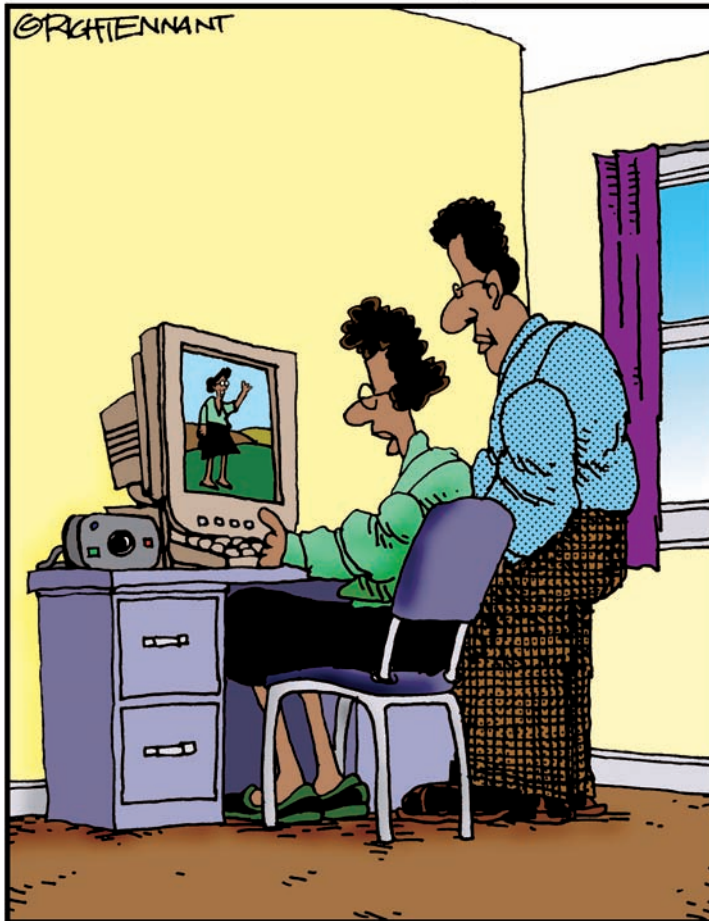


# Part III

## Beyond the Basics

### The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant



"If I'm not gaining weight, then why does this digital image take up 3 MB more memory than a comparable one taken six months ago?"

## *In this part . . .*

**M**oving on up . . . taking your digital imagery to the next level by putting your digital SLR's advanced features to work. In this part, you find out how to work with the RAW format and marshal your dSLR's action, sequence shooting, and flash features. I show you how important composition is, too.

Chapter 8 explains the fuss over formats and shows you how shooting RAW can give you extra flexibility when it's time to manipulate your images. Chapter 9 offers a solid grounding in action and flash photography — because the two often work hand-in-hand. In Chapter 10, you discover how to arrange all the elements in your photo in pleasing ways by using compositional rules that were meant to be broken (after you understand exactly how they work).





# Working with RAW and Other Formats

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Discovering all those formats
  - ▶ Understanding dSLR format options
  - ▶ Choosing the right file format
  - ▶ Using RAW as a digital negative
- 

You can find many bones of contention in the digital SLR world, but the choice of file format is one of the boniest. Some photographers swear by RAW, a misnamed “unprocessed” format (RAW isn’t really unprocessed) that supposedly retains all the information the sensor captures (it doesn’t). Others scoff at RAW, feeling that the JPEG format is the key to taking pictures most efficiently, with a minimum of after-shot processing required. Old-school photographers might insist that the TIFF format is the only way to go, despite the fact that few digital SLRs even support that format these days.

This chapter removes the mystery surrounding RAW and other formats, and helps you choose which one is right for you in any particular situation. Should you shoot RAW, JPEG, or *both* at the same time? In the following sections, I explain what you need to know to make that call.



## So Many Formats, So Little Time

The proliferation of file formats started with image-editing software. Dozens of different schemes exist for saving image files, and most of the leading image editors are forced to support just about all of them.

Unfortunately, digital cameras brought back the revenge of the format proliferators, and it helps to get the lay of the land before you venture out to do what should be so simple: Choose a format for saving an image.

Digital SLRs today (except for a couple quirky cameras from Sigma) all support JPEG because that format lets you squeeze more images onto memory cards that have limited amounts of space. Even Sigma, which supported only RAW with its original SD9 and SD10 models, has climbed on the JPEG bandwagon with its latest SD14 model that provides three levels of JPEG compression.

A few (chiefly higher-end) dSLRs also let you capture images in TIFF format, which is great at retaining detail but not so great at compressing photos to a reasonable size. All dSLRs have the option of saving images in a *proprietary* RAW format that supposedly preserves all the image detail and parameters captured by the sensor.

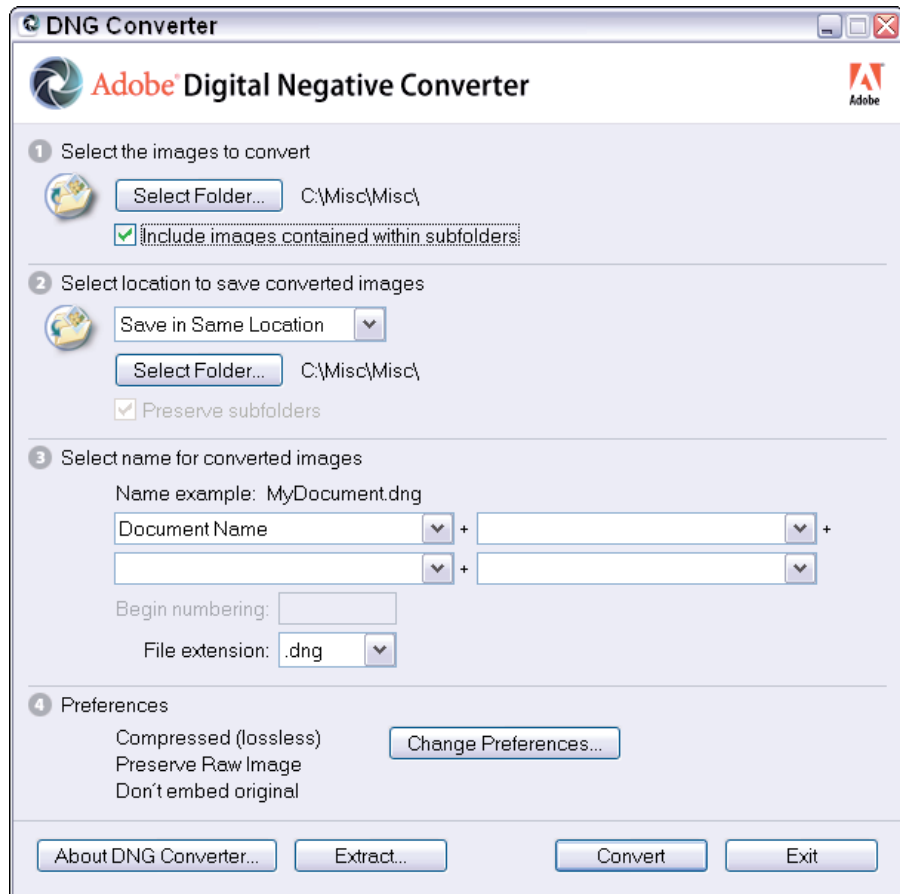
In truth, that claim is not precisely true. The sensor data is processed quite thoroughly by algorithms that convert the image from analog to digital form. However, the resulting RAW data doesn't have all the settings you dialed into your camera (white balance, sharpening, color, and so forth) set in concrete. When a RAW file is imported into your image editor, you can go ahead and use those settings if you like, or — using the RAW converter software that does the conversion — specify new parameters instead. That's where the “unprocessed” label gets hung on RAW files.

What!? Am I telling you that *each* digital camera vendor uses a different RAW format? If only it were that simple! As it turns out, some camera makers have created several different versions of their RAW format, each incompatible in some way with earlier versions, so that instead of a dozen RAW variations, you have to deal with *several* dozen. Here are a few examples:

- ✓ The different RAW formats for Canon dSLRs include CRW and CR2.
- ✓ Nikon has some slightly different variations of its format, including a trick it unveiled a few years ago of *encrypting* the white balance information of its newest cameras so that third-party RAW tools can't interpret it. (After much consternation and reverse engineering by other vendors, Nikon ended up demystifying its encryption scheme.)
- ✓ Other vendors might use one RAW format for their dSLRs and another for their high-end point-and-shoot models.

This mess was Adobe's cue to get into the act, producing yet another format, DNG (digital negative), which purports to support all the features of all the other RAW versions, as a sort of standard. Adobe even provides a free Digital Negative Converter, shown in Figure 8-1, should you want to change all your current RAW files to the new format.

Things get even more interesting when you realize that there is no standard for naming the formats used within digital SLR cameras. Instead, the cameras use names like Fine, Basic, Superfine, Good, Supergood, and so forth, providing no real clue to which format you're actually choosing. The Superfine option might represent TIFF on one camera and JPEG with minimal image loss on another. Choosing the right format is difficult, but the following sections help clear things up.



**Figure 8-1:** Adobe's free Digital Negative Converter transforms your current RAW files into the new Adobe DNG format.

## Along came a proprietary format

Did you know that Photoshop gives you the option to save your images in almost two dozen different formats right out of the box? Do you know what RLE or PXR or TGA formats are, or what applications create or need them? Or why these formats exist at all?

I'm sure each of the various file formats must have seemed like a good idea at the time. The ostensible reason for creating a particular format is that the software vendor wanted to add special features (such as the layers in the Photoshop PSD format) that weren't possible in other formats. Presto! A new file format is born that includes support for the new feature.

Of course, back in the dark ages of computing, another reason for creating a proprietary format existed: It tied buyers to the particular application that relied on that particular format. If you liked PixelPaint (I'm not making the name up; it

was a Macintosh program that flourished in the early 1990s), you used the PixelPaint format — and after you'd accumulated a few thousand images in that format, you were pretty well locked into that program. That is, you were until a new, spiffier application came along, offering support for the PixelPaint format and negating the advantages of the proprietary feature.

Before long, most of the non-compatible formats fell into disuse (although they remain as shadowy wraiths in many Save As menus). Virtually all image editors support the Photoshop PSD format, plus JPEG (created to provide extra-small file sizes) and TIFF (the closest thing to a standard high-quality format that isn't tied to one vendor). Image editors still have their own proprietary formats, but users of those programs are more likely to archive processed images as PSD or TIFF.

## Worth the Fuss: Understanding the Main Formats

I ignore the file formats used only within image editors and for applications outside the realm of digital cameras, such as Web pages. These formats include GIF, PNG, PICT, PDF, and BMP. Nice formats. Not relevant. B-b-b-bye!



When you're trying to decide what format to shoot with, you need to look at only TIFF, JPEG, and RAW, because that's what digital cameras work with. Each of these formats has its advantages and disadvantages, and that's what you really need to know about to make a wise selection.

### Don't get TIFFed

This format originated in 1987 with a company called Aldus, which developed pioneering graphics and layout programs such as Freehand and PageMaker. Intended as a standard file format for images, TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) incorporates descriptors called *tags*, which you can use to provide parameters for any special features included in the file. Theoretically, an application could include any kind of information it liked in a TIFF file — such as layers, objects, special color information, and selections — and tell any other application attempting to read that TIFF file how to retrieve the special data.

In practice, the TIFF format's versatility ends up making it possible to create "standard" files that can't be read by all the applications that have to work with them, which is not an advantage at all. TIFF files run the gamut (ha!) from RGB, CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, black), and L\*a\*b color models to black/white and grayscale images. It supports both 24-bit and 48-bit (high dynamic range) color depths, and it can be squeezed down without losing any picture information by using optional Huffman encoding, LZW, or PackBits. (If you don't know what some of these are, consider yourself lucky; they aren't important for day-to-day shooting.) Adobe acquired Aldus in 1994, and today offers options for saving Photoshop layers and selections right in a TIFF file.

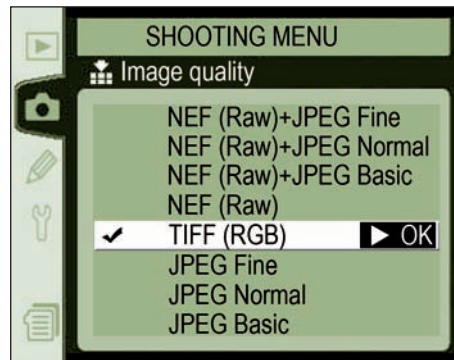
To make things even more interesting, some of the RAW formats I discuss a bit later in this chapter are actually TIFF files with some headers that transform them from standard TIFF into a vendor-specific format that requires special software to read.



Keep in mind these two important TIFF-file facts:

- **TIFF files are *lossless*.** They don't discard any of your image information.
- **TIFF files are much larger than JPEG and RAW files.** The larger size can increase the time it takes for your camera to store them on a memory card. In my tests, files that take only a few seconds to write to a memory card in RAW format can take 20 seconds or more as TIFF files.

The third most important thing to keep in mind is that fewer dSLRs offer a TIFF option these days; most that do are professional-level cameras, such as the Nikon D2Xs, as shown in Figure 8-2.



**Figure 8-2:** Pro-level dSLRs still offer a TIFF file option, as shown in this camera menu.

## JPEG o' my heart

Virtually every dSLR currently on the market can create JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) files. About 15 years ago, a consortium of the same name created this format. (The consortium originally consisted mostly of vendors such as Eastman Kodak Company, but it's now overseen by an international standards body.) The goal of devising the JPEG format was to create files that are significantly smaller than is possible with formats like TIFF, which compresses files somewhat without discarding image information, and to make them readable by a wide variety of applications in a standard way.

The first JPEG-capable applications reduced the time needed to transmit images by telecommunications links. The Internet wasn't in wide use by the public at that time. So newspaper photographers had to plug their unwieldy portable computers (laptops of that era needed several laptops to support them) into devices called *modems* to beam their photographs back to the editorial office over *telephone* lines. I am not making that up.

JPEG can reduce files by a factor of 20 or more by throwing away some of your hard-won image data, in a series of processes that are intended to reduce the size of the file by eliminating excess or redundant information.



JPEG compression first divides your image into *luminance* (brightness) values and *chrominance* (color) information, on the theory that human eyes are less fussy about color than they are about brightness. (That is, if you see a stop sign that's a slightly odd shade of red, you'll notice that less than if the same sign were darker or lighter than you'd expect.) It's the excess color information that's discarded.

The process slices your image into cells, say 8 x 8 pixels on a side, and then the process looks at each of the 64 pixels in the resulting chunk individually. Using mathematical trickery called Discrete Cosine Transformation (DCT), the compression process discards pixels that have the same value as those around them. (You don't have to remember things like *Discrete Cosine Transformation* unless you're trying to impress someone at a party.) Next, quantization occurs, during which pixels that are nearly the same color are converted to a common hue, and the picture information that's left is transformed into a series of numbers, which is more compact than the original information. (It's a bit like writing *1500* instead of *one thousand five hundred*.) If everything is done properly, the process compresses the image by 5X to 20X or more, depending on what compression level you've selected when you chose to save the file.



Because JPEG doesn't keep all the image information, it is referred to as a *lossy* format. Each time you load a JPEG image, make changes, and then save it again, you run the danger of losing a noticeable amount of information because the JPEG process occurs all over again — every time you save. The loss might be very slight at first, but it can accumulate, as you see in Figure 8-3, which shows a photograph that has lost sharpness after repeated savings.

What's cool about JPEG is that you can dial in the amount of compression you want, using lots of compression to produce very small file sizes (with an attendant loss in quality), or very little compression to preserve quality at the cost of larger files. What's *not* cool is that there is no standard way of referring to the *amount* of compression. Digital cameras tend to use discrete steps with names like SuperFine, Fine, Normal, Good, and Basic. Image editors might let you choose a continuous compression/quality range from, say, 0 to 15 or 0 to 20. (The Nigel Tufnel in you might wish that your editors offered an all-the-way-to-21 setting for when you need just that little bit of extra quality, but unfortunately, the designers of these applications apparently have never seen the movie *This Is Spinal Tap*.)



**Figure 8-3:** Repeatedly saving JPEG images can introduce artifacts into your photos.

Instead, in-camera JPEG compression is a little like a box of chocolates: You never know what you're going to get.

### *The RAW deal*

RAW isn't really a single file format. It's the broad term applied to all the proprietary formats created by each digital camera vendor for its particular product line. Every RAW format is different, which means that in order to access a RAW file, you must have one of two types of programs:

- ✓ Special software from your vendor designed especially for its RAW format
- ✓ A third-party utility, such as Adobe Camera RAW (furnished with Photoshop and Photoshop Elements), that is compatible *with your particular camera's* RAW format



Not all utilities support all RAW formats (not even the Adobe DNG converter), so your choices for reading these files might be somewhat limited. It's common for support for a particular version of RAW to lag behind the introduction of the camera that produces it for a few weeks or months, leaving you at the mercy of the camera vendor's utilities until everyone else plays catch-up.

You can consider RAW files to be your digital negatives because they haven't been subjected to the usual manipulations that your camera settings mandate when the raw image data is converted to JPEG or TIFF. (See the section "Using RAW Files as Digital Negatives" for more details.)

## Choosing a File Format

So your choices boil down to TIFF, RAW, and JPEG (or, with some cameras, saving in RAW and JPEG simultaneously). Which do you select? Your decision might hinge on how you shoot and on what you plan to do with your files after you've transferred them to your computer. Your available storage space might also figure into the equation.



If you get good results most of the time by using your camera settings, don't want to do a lot of processing in your image editor, and are taking lots of pictures, you might opt for TIFF or JPEG. TIFF gets the nod if you want the best image quality (although, as I noted, it's becoming rather rare as an option with digital SLRs), but JPEG might be preferable if you're on a trip and want to make your memory cards stretch as far as possible. RAW could be best if you plan on doing a lot of tweaking. These next sections explore these options in a little more detail.

## TIFF enuff

If your camera has a TIFF option, here are some factors to consider:

- ✓ **Highest quality:** Use TIFF if you want the highest-quality image in a standard file format. This lossless format produces image files that are theoretically and practically better than even the least compressed JPEG image.
- ✓ **Minimal post-processing:** TIFF is a good choice when you're generating large numbers of images for distribution and want to apply a minimum of post-processing. Perhaps you're shooting a wedding or other event and don't want to laboriously apply individualized settings to each photo with your image editor. If you carefully select your camera settings so your TIFF files already have the exposure, color balance, sharpness, and other attributes you want to end up with, you can safely save your files in TIFF format and expect all or most of them to be good to go right out of the box.





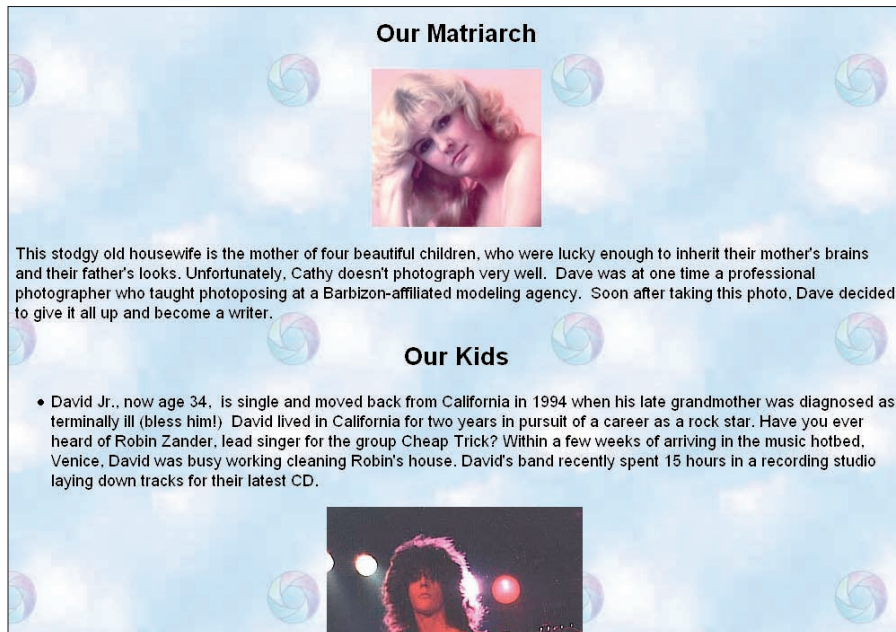
- ✓ **Limited editing:** TIFF is fine for images that will be manipulated in Photoshop for improvements that don't involve "unprocessed" RAW file attributes. For example, if you'll be retouching portraits to minimize facial flaws or compositing several images into one, you really don't need to work from RAW images. TIFF serves just as well.
- ✓ **Too slow for sports:** TIFF might not be the best choice if you're shooting sports or doing continuous shooting and your dSLR takes a long time to save such files to your memory card. Most digital SLRs store JPEG and even RAW files much more quickly than they do TIFFs.
- ✓ **Takes lots of memory:** TIFF is a poor choice if your memory card space is limited. If you're on vacation and have only a few 1GB cards to use between opportunities to offload your images, you'll find that TIFF files fill up the available media with alarming speed. (Your camera's best JPEG setting produces image quality that's almost as good while consuming perhaps 10 percent of the storage space.)

### *JPEG junkies unite!*

JPEG is a highly popular alternative to TIFF (for cameras that offer that option) and RAW. Some JPEG junkies use nothing else for their original photos. The format is compatible with virtually all applications, making it as much of a standard as TIFF, and much more compatible than RAW formats.

Of course, JPEG has that nagging loss-of-quality issue. You have to decide for yourself how important that is. Ponder these points when considering JPEG:

- ✓ **Really minimizes post-processing:** Everything I said about TIFF as an option when large numbers of images are involved goes double for JPEG. I don't know a single wedding photographer who prefers to shoot and work with RAW images, simply because they can't afford to spend that much time post-processing hundreds of images. I don't shoot weddings anymore, but I do photograph sports, and it's not uncommon for me to fire off 1000-1200 shots at a single game (blame my dSLR's 5-frames-per-second burst mode for that). I spend a little time before the contest shooting test pictures and adjusting my color balance, sharpness, and exposure to suit the conditions. Then I blast away, knowing that most of my photos will require little or no post-processing.
- ✓ **Gives you ready-made photos for Web display:** JPEG is a good choice for display on Web pages, like the one shown in Figure 8-4. Or, if you want to distribute pictures in digital albums on CDs, in online albums, or as prints no larger than 11 x 14 inches, the least-compressed JPEG option your dSLR offers should produce files that are easily up to these tasks.



**Figure 8-4:** JPEG files are good for Web display as is.



- ✓ **Good-enough quality:** If you do end up editing JPEG files, you'll find the quality is good enough as long as you remember to save your final version as a TIFF or Photoshop PSD file. You should always save your JPEG files in one of those lossless formats after making changes. That helps you avoid the quality loss that can result from repeatedly opening and editing JPEG files. If you still need a JPEG file (say, for display on a Web page), create one and retain your new TIFF or PSD versions in case the image requires more editing later on.
- ✓ **More compatible with software:** JPEG can be more compatible with some image-management/album-making software than other formats. The ancient application that I prefer (which predates the term “digital asset management” by about ten years) doesn't handle RAW files at all, so I always catalog a JPEG version of the file that's produced at the same time as the RAW file. (See the section “JPEG+RAW” later in this chapter.)
- ✓ **Writes to memory faster:** Your digital SLR probably can write JPEG files to your memory card faster than any other type of file. This speed might not matter if you're taking only a couple pictures at a time; the photos first go into the camera's high-speed memory buffer, which sucks up JPEG, TIFF, and RAW at similar speeds. However, writing these images to the memory card takes longer, and after the buffer fills, you can't take any more photos until some shots make their way out of the camera's

internal memory onto the card. I've used dSLRs that are so fast at writing JPEG files to a high-speed 120X (or faster) CompactFlash card that I can take sequence photos almost continuously for a dozen shots or more.

- ✓ **Takes less room on cards:** You can fit a lot more JPEG files on a memory card of a particular size. A 1GB card can store about 300 photos snapped with a 6-megapixel camera with the typical JPEG Fine setting, nearly 600 photos at a representative medium-quality setting, and as many as 1,100 shots at the highest compression setting. Only 180 RAW shots from the same camera might fill a 1GB card. My 10-megapixel camera can fit 488 RAW images on an 8GB CompactFlash card, or more than 900 JPEG Fine images.



I don't usually recommend using card storage space as a criterion for choosing which file format to use. I'd rather you purchase enough memory cards, instead. However, in some situations (such as vacations) storage is limited, and using the JPEG format, particularly the highest-quality setting, makes a good compromise.

## JPEG+RAW

Most digital SLRs include an option to save a pair of files every time a picture is taken: one as a JPEG file and a second in the RAW format. Many cameras, including modestly priced models from Nikon and Canon, let you select the quality level for the JPEG version, so you choose between a high-quality JPEG and one that's more compressed and lower in quality. Other cameras have a fixed JPEG quality level for the supplemental file; often the version that has the highest compression ratio sets the quality level.



Saving JPEG+RAW is a valuable capability. It lets you shoot JPEGs for cataloging, reviewing, and use in less-demanding applications (such as small prints, online auctions, and Web display), while retaining RAW versions as digital negatives in case you need to do more extensive tweaking. Generally, the image pairs share filenames (only the file extension is different), so it's easy to match them up.

The storage-card space penalty is fairly low. Even a 12-megapixel dSLR can save 198 RAW shots per 4GB card, and 132 JPEG FINE+RAW image pairs. It's truly a case of getting the best of both worlds. This is the mode I use by default.

## Working RAW

Saving in RAW format is the best option if you frequently need to fine-tune your images. RAW lets you make changes to settings that normally you apply in the camera, either to individual files or batches of them. For example, if you take a whole series of shots under a particular lighting setup and later decide on a single group of settings to apply to all of them, you can do that quickly with one batch process. Also, you can manipulate individual photos to your heart's content.

## RAW in the raw

People often describe RAW files as “unprocessed” image files that contain all the information captured by the sensor. That’s nonsense!

As I explain in Chapter 2, the sensor catches photons in little analog buckets (setting aside the wave/particle duality of light, as well I should!). The data collected is manipulated by your camera’s digital signal processor, a special chip that converts the analog information into digital format. At the same time, the Bayer-filtered image data that mimics separate red-, green-, and blue-sensitive pixels is interpolated to create three different color channels of 12 to 16 bits each. That’s a lot of processing right there!

All that preprocessing can have a significant impact on the quality of your image, and that’s *before* your camera settings are applied. You can’t do a whole lot to RAW files to *reverse* the changes that have been made. What RAW does for you is let you apply *after taking the photo* those settings you normally make in the camera (such as white balance, sharpness improvements, color saturation, and to an extent, exposure). If your shutter speed was too slow and you have a blurry photo, you can’t fix that. If your f-stop was too large and your depth-of-field is inadequate, you can’t fix that, either. You can apply a little sharpening, which might help somewhat in either case, but you have no way to undo serious errors made when you snapped the photo.

## Using RAW Files as Digital Negatives

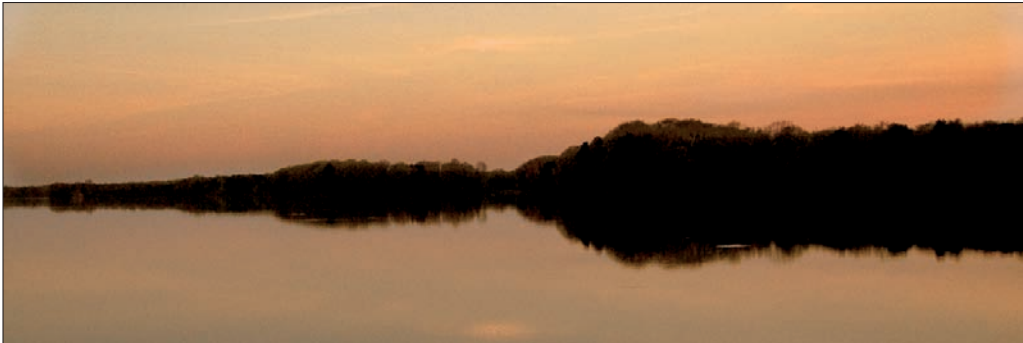
The more you shoot, the more you realize that it’s always a good idea to have that (relatively) unprocessed image as a sort of digital negative you can go back to at any time to work with anew. These files can be a treasure trove of images that will prove invaluable at a later time, whether or not you might think so now.

### Salvaging images from RAW files

However adept you may be presently, your image-editing skills will improve. With an image saved in RAW format, you can salvage images that weren’t usable before you gained new capabilities. Pictures that you didn’t think you had any use for might turn out to be worthwhile with the passage of time.



For example, take the photo shown in Figure 8-5, which I sometimes use as an example of how you can take photos in dim light without a tripod if you have a lens with a large maximum aperture. It’s true that the original photo *was* taken at dusk, and the camera *wasn’t* mounted on a tripod. It was taken with a fast lens, too, exactly as described. However, as they say, here is the rest of the story. (You’ll see that you don’t always need to have the patience of Ansel Adams to take landscape photos.)



**Figure 8-5:** This picture wasn't carefully composed. It was a grab shot produced from a RAW file shot on the spur of the moment.

I took the picture one evening when I was out scouting locations for future shoots. I was driving across a causeway that crossed a lake a few miles from my home, and I decided the view was interesting. While driving at 45 miles per hour, I picked up my camera and shot the image shown in Figure 8-6 *through the open right-side window of my minivan*. (Don't try this at home!) The ISO sensitivity was at 1250, the camera was in Shutter Priority mode with a shutter speed of  $\frac{1}{1,250}$  of a second preselected, and an aperture of  $f/2$  — chosen by the metering system — let me capture a relatively unblurred image despite my relatively high motoring speed. I know all this information because it was recorded in the EXIF data that accompanied the RAW file.

This was a grab shot in every sense of the word. Yet, when I needed a photo taken in dim light with a large f-stop, this throwaway proved useful. Because I'd saved in RAW, I was able to manipulate the photo a bit to make it a little more interesting by cropping out the guardrail and portions of my vehicle.

### *Archiving RAW files*

If you want to use RAW files as your digital negatives, you need to have a way to store them, because they're sure to eat up your hard drive space quickly. I have virtually every image I've shot in RAW archived on my computer's hard drives as well as on DVD. That includes shots of my feet taken when I tested an electronic flash, semi-blank frames that are seriously underexposed, and all manner of out-of-focus and poorly composed pictures. As my example in the preceding section shows, you never know when you might find some use for a garbage shot.



**Figure 8-6:** Here's the original RAW file before image editing.



Blank DVDs are so inexpensive these days that you have no excuse for not saving *all* your digital negatives. (Just don't forget to copy them to whatever format replaces the current DVD format in ten, or five, or two years.) With most operating systems, all you need to do to archive files to a DVD is drag and drop them to the DVD drive.

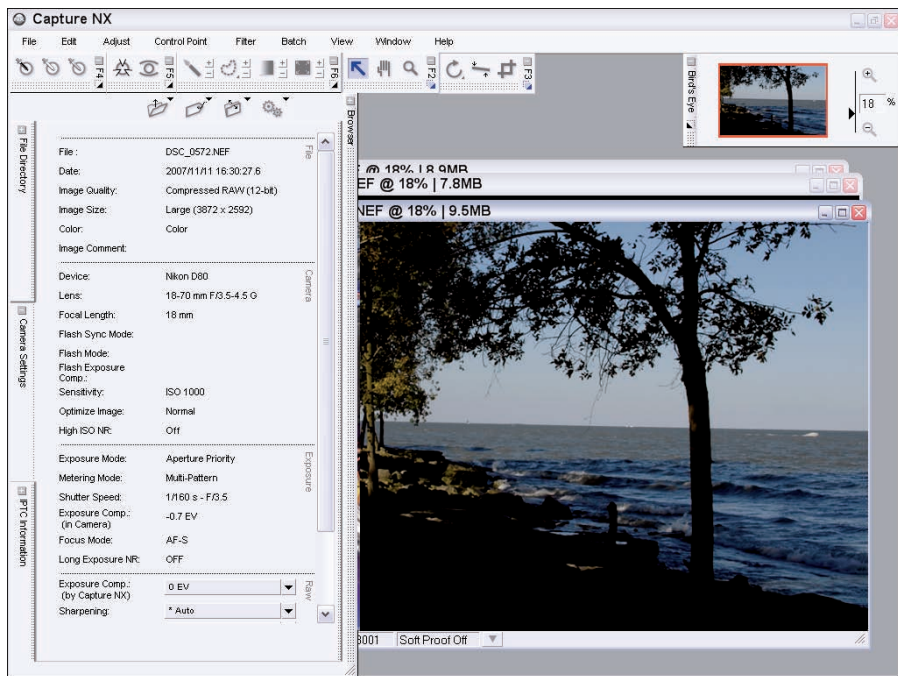
### *Finding RAW image-editing applications*

Remember, to work with RAW files, you need an application that can read them. A variety of RAW converters are at your disposal. Some of these are provided by your camera's vendor and, as you might expect, work only with the RAW files for that line of camera. Unless you own several different digital cameras from different manufacturers that can produce RAW files, these proprietary converters might be all you need — or you can check out third-party RAW applications if you prefer. The following sections introduce some of the more popular proprietary and third-party applications.

## Nikon Capture NX

Nikon offers the eponymous Nikon Capture NX, an extra-cost (\$149.95) program that handles both older and the latest versions of RAW files created by Nikon cameras. Besides offering control over settings you could have made in the camera, this utility provides some interesting additional capabilities. For example, it can de-fish images taken with Nikon fish-eye lenses, producing undistorted photos with straight lines where straight lines ought to be. This is one way to get super-wide-angle photos from your trusty fish-eye lens.

Nikon Capture NX, shown in Figure 8-7, has a separate lightness/chroma/hue palette for modifying these image attributes directly, along with post-shot noise-reduction features and vignette control to remove (or add) darkening/lightening to the corners of photos. Also handy is an image-dust-off feature that compares your shots with a dust reference photo and removes spots caused by dust on the sensor.

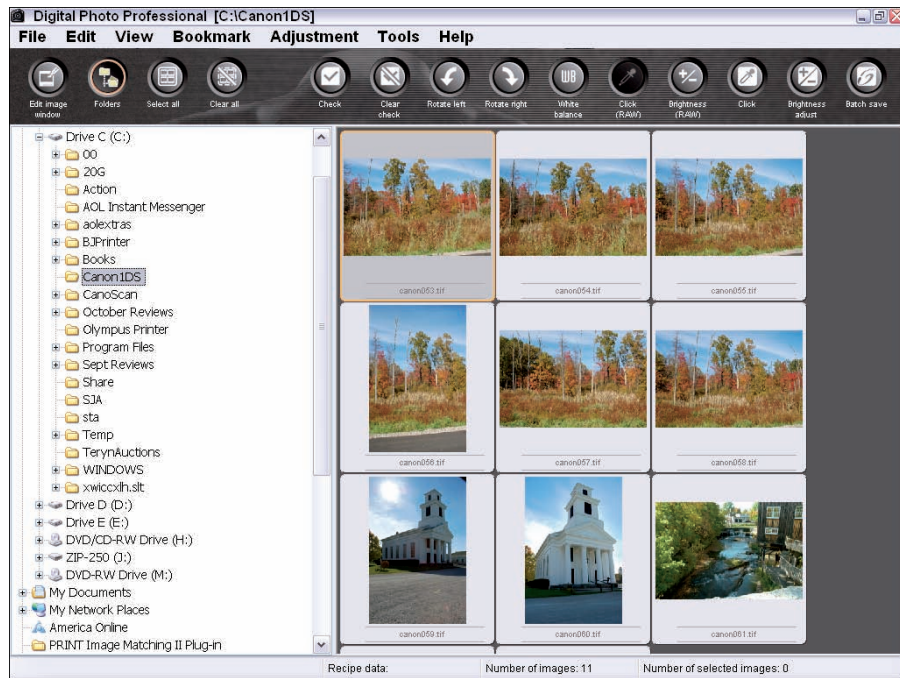


**Figure 8-7:** Nikon charges \$149 extra for Nikon Capture NX, but the extra features it offers are worth the cost.

### *EOS Utility/Digital Photo Professional*

Canon provides these software utilities for viewing/converting RAW images taken with Canon cameras, and for controlling the camera remotely. The EOS Utility is a bare-bones program; most dedicated Canon shooters prefer Digital Photo Professional, shown in Figure 8-8.

Digital Photo Professional offers much higher-speed processing of RAW images than was available with the late (not lamented), sluggardly File Viewer Utility formerly offered for Canon cameras (it's as much as six times faster). Canon says this utility rivals third-party stand-alone and plug-in RAW converters in speed and features. The program supports both Canon's original CRW format and the newer CR2 RAW format, along with TIFF and JPEG.



**Figure 8-8:** Digital Photo Professional is an advanced RAW file utility for Canon dSLRs.



You can save settings that include multiple adjustments and apply them to other images, and use the clever comparison mode to compare your original and edited versions of an image, either side by side or within a single split image. The utility allows easy adjustment of color channels, tone curves, exposure compensation, white balance, dynamic range, brightness, contrast, color saturation, ICC Profile embedding, and assignment of monitor profiles. A new feature gives you the option to continue editing images while batches of previously adjusted RAW files are rendered and saved in the background.

### *Third-party applications*

Third-party RAW converters range from the very inexpensive to the paycheck chompers, as shown in Table 8-1.

<i>Application</i>	<i>Cost</i>	<i>Platform</i>	<i>Web Site</i>
IrfanView	Free	Windows	<a href="http://www.irfanview.com">www.irfanview.com</a>
GraphicConverter	\$30	Mac	<a href="http://www.lemkesoft.com">www.lemkesoft.com</a>
Bibble Pro	\$129	Windows, Mac OS X, and Linux	<a href="http://www.bibblelabs.com">www.bibblelabs.com</a>
Capture One PRO	\$499	Windows, Mac	<a href="http://www.phaseone.com">www.phaseone.com</a>
Adobe Camera Raw	Comes with Photoshop or Elements	Windows, Mac	<a href="http://www.adobe.com">www.adobe.com</a>

At this time, the most popular and widely used third-party RAW converter is probably Adobe Camera Raw (or, commonly, ACR), which is supplied with Photoshop Elements 5.0 and Photoshop CS 3.0 (see Figure 8-9). It works with a long list of RAW formats from vendors including Canon, Nikon, Sony, Fuji, Olympus, Pentax, and Sigma. It does most of the general-purpose RAW conversion tasks that the vendors' own utilities handle, and it has the advantage of working transparently with lots of different RAW formats, plus Adobe's new DNG format.



**Figure 8-9:** Adobe Camera Raw supports a wide range of RAW formats.

Of the others, IrfanView, a Windows freeware program you can download at [www.irfanview.com](http://www.irfanview.com), is at the low end of the price scale. It can read many common RAW photo formats. It's a quick way to view RAW files (just drag and drop to the IrfanView window) and make fast changes to the unprocessed file. You can crop, rotate, or correct your image, and do some cool things like swapping the colors around (red for blue, blue for green, and so forth) to create false-color pictures.

Phase One's C1 Pro (see Figure 8-10) is the gorilla at the high end of the price scale, and this premium Windows/Macintosh program for professionals does everything, does it well, and does it quickly. Phase One has taken pity on us mere mortals and also provides several budget "lite" versions with a limited feature set and a more affordable price.

One of my personal favorites among third-party RAW converters is Bibble Pro, which now also incorporates Noise Ninja noise-reduction technology. It supports one of the broadest ranges of RAW file formats available (which can be handy if you find yourself with the need to convert a file from a friend's or colleague's camera). Available formats include NEF files from Nikon D1, D1x/h, D2H, D100; CRW files from the Canon C30/D60/10D/300D; CR2 files from the latest Canon cameras, ORF files from the Olympus product line, DCR files from the Kodak 720x/760/14n; RAF files from the Fujifilm dSLRs; PEF files from Pentax, and so on. Bibble Pro is available for Windows, Mac OS X, and, believe it or not, Linux.

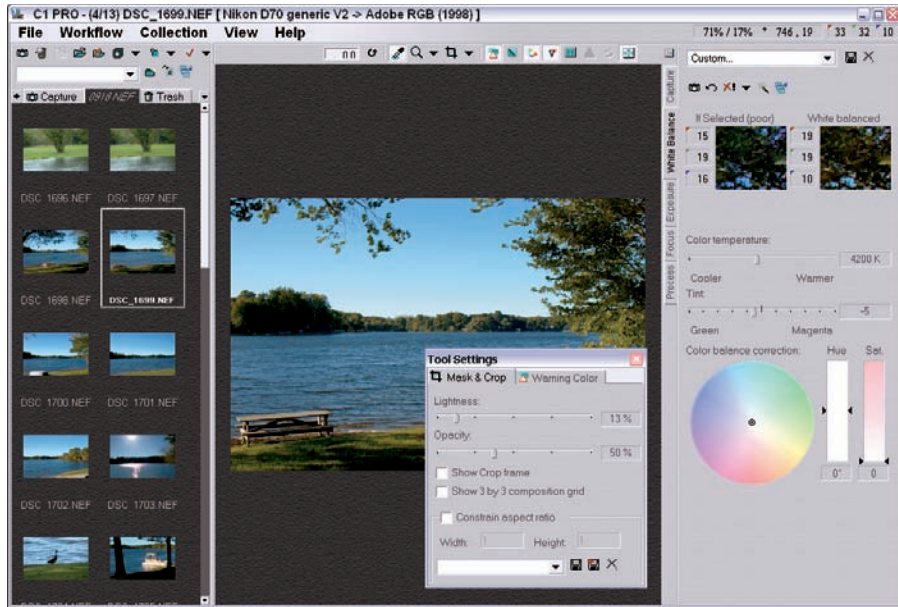


Figure 8-10: Capture One PRO from Phase One is a pro-quality RAW utility.



# Action, Flash, and Other Challenges

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Avoiding that lagging feeling
  - ▶ Shooting in bursts
  - ▶ Freezing action
  - ▶ Flashing your subjects
- 

**T**he difference between a novice digital photographer and one with some solid experience is often apparent in how the shooter handles more challenging photographic situations. Action photography, electronic flash photography, and situations that combine both electronic flash and available light seem to be the trickiest for photographers making the transition from neophyte to grizzled veteran. (Nobody really looks forward to being grizzled, but remaining a neophyte forever isn't a pleasant prospect, either.) These types of photography all offer challenges on both the technical and creative levels. If you can handle them, you can tackle anything.

This chapter looks at some of the technical stuff you need to understand to make the transition, while taking top-notch action, flash, and sequence photos. Although you find a bit of nuts and bolts here, stay calm and stick it out — my intent isn't to make you go nuts and bolt!



## Kind of a Lag

Shutter lag, first-shot times, and those annoying pauses between photos do more than interrupt your photographic momentum — they can cause you to miss photos. Fortunately, of all digital cameras, dSLRs do the best job of reducing those awkward moments to a minimum. In the following sections, you find out what causes this lag and what you can do about it.

### *Comparing point-and-shoot cameras with dSLRs*

Users of non-dSLRs feel the pain of shutter lag the worst. Of the dozens of point-and-shoot and electronic viewfinder cameras I test each year, most of them average lag from 0.6 to 0.9 seconds when shooting photos under high-contrast lighting (which makes it easy for the camera's autofocus system to lock in). In challenging low-contrast light, the best cameras average 0.9 seconds, many can take up to 1.9 seconds, and a few pause for an interminable 2.5 seconds before squeezing off the shot.

If you want to know how much a one-second lag can affect a photo, check out Figure 9-1. If you pressed the shutter release when the pitcher unleashed the ball toward the first baseman (top), what you'd get one second later would be the photo at the bottom, when the play was over and the action just a memory. Personally, I think you'd prefer to get the shot shown in Figure 9-2, an instant before the ball hits the defender's glove and the base runner's hand brushes first base. Full disclosure: None of these photos were actually taken with a point-and-shoot; I used a digital SLR that captured the beginning of the play, the ending, and all the action in-between in a five-frame burst. But the individual images demonstrate what you can capture — or not capture — with a point-and-shoot camera.

The final version is the sort of picture you can expect to take with a digital SLR. These cameras operate on a different plane of existence. Most of the time, such a camera seems to take the picture as soon as you press the shutter button. The actual elapsed time might be 0.2 seconds, or at least three times faster than what you get with a typical point-and-shoot digital camera.

Shutter lag of any length can cause you to miss a photo, particularly if you're engaged in action photography or shots of children and animals, where the difference between capturing the decisive moment and capturing the not-interesting moment *after* the decisive one can be measured in milliseconds. Shutter lag can be a problem with portraits, too. You say, "Smile!" and your subject smiles, but then she frowns when nothing happens. Guess which expression you're most likely to capture?



**Figure 9-1:** Press the shutter release when the pitcher releases the ball (top), and a point-and-shoot camera doesn't actually capture the image until as much as a full second (bottom photo).



**Figure 9-2:** A digital SLR can give you a photo taken at the critical moment.

### *Understanding the sources of lag*

Shutter lag is primarily caused by the delay in locking in autofocus between the time when you press the shutter release halfway and when you fully depress it to take the picture. But this isn't the only factor you want to be aware of.

There's a secondary kind of lag that can't be blamed on a camera's pokey autofocus system. If you're taking a lot of photos in a row and your camera takes a long time to write them to the memory card (or your memory card is a slow one that can't accept data as quickly as your camera provides it), you can run into unfortunate delays. Your camera's buffer fills up, you press the shutter release, and nothing happens.

But wait! There's more! A third kind of delay can occur when you're shooting with electronic flash. It might take a second or two (or three, or four) for your flash to recharge after you've taken a flash photo, and you're either unable to take a picture until the flash is ready or your camera goes ahead and takes the shot and provides incorrect exposure.

Fortunately, you can do things to counter all these shot-to-shot delays. Read on to find out how.



## Minimizing shutter lag

As I said, even the best-performing dSLR might not take a picture at the exact instant you want the shot to be captured. Hey, a 90-mph fastball travels 132 feet per second, so during a 0.2 second delay, the ball moves 26 feet. That's almost half the distance between the pitcher's mound and home plate!



Here are some ways to improve your results:

- ✓ **Anticipate the action.** It takes practice, but you can press the shutter release a fraction of a second before the action peaks. It helps if you understand the activity so you know approximately when, say, a skier is about to leap over a mogul, or you can tell the difference between a pump fake and an actual forward pass. By shooting just prior to the decisive moment, as I did for Figure 9-3, you can improve your timing.
- ✓ **Take lots of photos.** Hand-in-hand with the previous tip is the proviso that you'll end up missing that crucial moment quite a few times. If you take lots of photos, you're bound to get some good ones, and the practice helps you improve your timing. The day before I sat down to write this chapter, I photographed a professional women's softball game and took nearly 400 pictures over 6 innings. This wasn't a scatter-shot approach, attempting to get a good picture through dumb luck. I was trying to take *lots* of good pictures in an attempt to get a few *great* ones.



**Figure 9-3:** Shoot just before the decisive moment to catch the action at the right time.

- ✔ **Use your sequence capabilities.** Your dSLR's continuous shooting mode can boost your odds by grabbing quick bursts of three to five shots per second (or even more; Nikon and Canon offer pro models that snap off 8 to 10 frames per second). However, it's also possible that all the pictures in a sequence will be taken just before, just after, or between the best moments, so burst mode isn't a panacea.
- ✔ **Understand your camera's focus modes.** You can help your dSLR lock in focus more quickly by understanding how the individual focus modes work. Single autofocus (AF-S) focuses the camera when you partially depress the shutter release. That's fast but may not result in a sharp picture if your subject is moving. Continuous autofocus (AF-C) focuses the lens but continues to monitor the scene and then refocuses if the subject continues to move. That's often the best mode for sports. But you also need to understand how your camera uses various areas of the screen, the *focus zones*, to select which subject to lock in on. Some cameras can be set to focus on the nearest subject and ignore intervening objects that cross the field of view for a moment (such as when a referee passes in front of the camera while you're trying to photograph a running back).
- ✔ **Switch to manual modes.** Although digital SLR autofocus systems are remarkably speedy, they can be thrown off by rapidly moving subjects or shift between the background and the foreground while you frame your image. You might have better luck turning off the autofocus and manually pre-focusing on a particular point, such as first base, the goal line, or the position where an ice skater is expected to leap into a triple axel. If you don't expect lighting conditions to change much, use manual exposure, too. Fewer automatic features can lead to a quicker response from your camera.
- ✔ **Lock and load.** When using auto modes, follow the action and then lock in exposure and focus by using the lock control provided by your digital camera. When your camera is locked in for both exposure and focus (usually by pressing the shutter release halfway), pressing the shutter release the rest of the way takes your picture a bit more quickly.

### *Minimizing first-shot delays*

Some digital SLRs take a while to “warm up” before you can take a photo. The original Canon Digital Rebel was notorious for this, requiring up to three seconds from the time you turned it on until it reported for duty. Worse, the Digital Rebel tended to go to sleep as a power-saving measure while it was turned on, resulting in multiple three-second delays during a shooting session.

This delay was largely eliminated in the Digital Rebel XT/XTi, which turns on in less than half a second, a figure matched by most other digital SLRs on the market today.

You can virtually eliminate many first-shot delays with a simple technique: Don't turn off your dSLR! Point-and-shoot cameras typically go to sleep after a few minutes because their LCDs drain so much juice. Digital SLRs use very little battery power when turned on, so you can safely leave them activated for hours (or days) at a time.



Digital SLRs are more power efficient because the LCD is switched on only when reviewing pictures or navigating menus. The autofocus and exposure systems turn themselves off after a few seconds if you aren't actively taking a picture, but both revive almost instantly when you tap the shutter button. A few cameras, like some Pentax models, switch off the top-panel monochrome LCD status panel, which is annoying but doesn't contribute to too much delay. Only the built-in electronic flash uses a significant amount of power, and it, too, goes into standby automatically.



If you get in the habit of turning on your camera at the beginning of a shooting session and not turning it off again until you're ready to pack up the camera and put it away, you avoid nearly all first-shot delays. Your flash needs to recharge from time to time, but that doesn't impact most of your photography.

### Minimizing shot-to-shot delays

All cameras have an interval between shots that limits your ability to take a new photo immediately after taking the last one. Most of the time, this delay is negligible. That's because digital SLRs typically have a good complement of built-in super-fast memory called a *buffer*, which accepts photos as quickly as you take them, freeing the camera to take another picture. As long as the buffer retains enough room to accept new shots, you can take pictures as fast as you can press the shutter release. The Sony Alpha, in fact, writes images to your card so fast you can take pictures one after another for an unlimited amount of time — until the memory card fills up, in fact.



Unfortunately, not all dSLRs have sufficient buffer memory for all the shots you might want to take, particularly if you're using the continuous sequence modes. When that happens, delays can set in. Here are some of the things you can do to minimize them:

- ✓ **Monitor the buffer.** Keep an eye on the buffer indicator in your viewfinder. It might be a bar readout or numbers that show how many frames remain. If you think a moment that might be more important than the one you're shooting now is imminent, back off and let your buffer drain to make room.
- ✓ **Get a faster memory card.** As I note in Chapter 4, some memory cards are faster than others. With some digital cameras, a better-performing card can reduce shot-to-shot delays. When a camera feeds photos to the memory card faster than the card can accept the images, a bottleneck takes place, and the buffer can fill. A faster card just might eliminate the problem. Note that this won't work with every dSLR. Some have very

large buffers and can often write even to standard memory cards at roughly the same speed while new images are captured. You might be able to shoot photos all day and not notice any delay except, perhaps, when shooting long bursts. A faster card is of most benefit for dSLRs that have smaller buffers.

- ✓ **Shoot at a lower resolution.** I don't advocate shooting smaller image files (you never know when you can use the full resolution), but in a pinch, you can switch to a lower resolution to increase the number of shots you can take in a row. If rapid-fire is more important than image quality, go for it!
- ✓ **Enlarge your buffer.** This is an unlikely option, but I'm mentioning it for the sake of being complete. Some digital SLRs can be upgraded with additional buffer memory by the factory for a reasonable cost. The affected models are generally older, higher-priced professional cameras. Your digital SLR is unlikely to have this option.

### Minimizing flash delays

Your camera's built-in electronic flash can cause delays when you're forced to wait for it to build up a full charge between shots. Some cameras have a useful option of locking the camera to prevent taking a photo before the flash is recharged, which blocks spoiled photos but obviously doesn't eliminate the annoying delays. Others let you fire away, risking an underexposed photo if the flash doesn't have enough charge.



Keep these tips in mind when you want to keep shooting flash pictures without pausing:

- ✓ **Close-up shots use less power.** If you're taking close-up photos, you can probably shoot quicker and with fewer delays than if you're using up your flash's maximum power with every shot.
- ✓ **Reduce flash power.** A related technique you can use for photos taken at lesser distances is to reduce the power setting of your flash. Many built-in speedlights and external units can be set to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ , or  $\frac{1}{8}$  power, or can reduce power for you automatically at closer distances. If that's all you need, use it and enjoy faster operation.
- ✓ **Use an external flash.** The flash built into your camera sucks juice from your camera's main battery and so has been designed to use the minimum amount of power necessary to do the job. This conservative approach can mean slower recycling. External flash units that fit on your camera's hot shoe or use a connecting cable usually have beefier batteries and recycle much more quickly.
- ✓ **Use an add-on battery pack.** You might be able to connect your external flash to an add-on battery pack that offers *really* fast recycling, on the order of a second or less.

## Shooting in Sequences

In the consumer marketplace, very cool features tend to filter down from higher-end products to the gear that we peons can afford. Power seats and power windows once were found only in pricey luxury cars, but now you'd have a hard time finding a vehicle without them. Speedy motor drives on cameras, once the province of professional photographers, eventually made their way into the lowliest point-and-shoot film cameras. And now, because *burst mode*, *continuous advance*, or *sequence shooting* is found on every digital camera, you can also produce a series of shots like that of a speeding train, as shown in Figure 9-4.

The chief differences between the continuous shooting mode found in \$149 point-and-shoot cameras and your digital SLR are the speed, flexibility, and number of shots that can be captured in a sequence. Whereas a basic digicam owner is lucky to grab 2 frames per second (fps) for a half dozen shots, digital SLRs typically can snap off from 6 to 24 pictures at rates of 2.5 up to 10 fps (with the pro models) without breaking a sweat. Your results vary depending on the camera and format you use.



**Figure 9-4:** Continuous shooting lets you capture a sequence of shots.



As I mention earlier in this chapter, sequence photography is no substitute for good timing. You still get better results by taking a picture at precisely the best moment than by capturing random frames in great bursts of exposures.

Your camera might have several different continuous modes, ranging from a basic mode at 3 to 5 fps to a high-speed continuous advance of up to 8 fps. The Canon EOS 1D Mark III offers 10 fps in a camera that offers a 1.3X crop factor. Nikon's D2Xs model achieves its 8 fps high speed only by cropping the image from its 12.4-megapixel 4,288-x-2,848-pixel mode down to a 3,216-x-2,136-pixel frame that yields a measly 6.8 megapixels.

Nikon's solution is interesting in that it crops a cropped frame further, so the D2Xs 1.5X crop factor becomes a 2X crop factor in high-speed mode. The extra cropping is theoretically an advantage for digital photographers who imagine that a highly cropped image multiplies the focal length of their lenses, as I expound upon at length in Chapter 6. Figure 9-5 shows the view through the D2Xs viewfinder in cropped high-speed mode. The inner bracket represents the area of the cropped image.



To use your digital camera's burst mode, all you need to do is activate it and then fire away, taking into account the need for good timing, the capacity of your camera's buffer, and all the other tips for minimizing delays, which I discuss in the earlier section, "Kind of a Lag."



**Figure 9-5:** Some cameras crop the field of view when shooting at the highest frame rates.

## Stopping Action in Its Tracks

Freezing action isn't all it's cracked up to be. My recent foray into pro softball shooting had some strange results, as you can see from Figure 9-6. I was testing a long lens to see whether I could successfully hand-hold it, and I bumped up the shutter speed of my DSLR to  $\frac{1}{2,500}$  of a second. That lofty speed did nullify any camera shake, but it had the additional effect of freezing a hard-thrown softball in midair.

Without the added dimension of a little motion blur, you can't tell whether the ball is headed toward the player or away from her (she's actually just thrown it), and it really appears as if the ball isn't moving at all; rather, it seems to be suspended from overhead by a string. This shot wasn't destined to be a prize-winner anyway, but now, at best, it looks a little weird.



**Figure 9-6:** It looks like this softball is hanging from a string, not flying through the air.

The lesson here is that stopping action completely might not be the best idea unless the image contains all the other elements of a good action shot so that it looks like a frozen moment rather than a staged setup. Instead of completely stopping all movement, you might want to incorporate at least a little blur into your shot to give it more of a sense of excitement. For example, motor sports look more realistic if photographed with a shutter speed long enough to allow the wheels to blur. And, anyone seeing a photograph of a helicopter with its rotors stopped would expect to see it crashing to Earth in the next moment.



The key to stopping action successfully (and believably) is to choose the correct shutter speed. Your shutter slices off little moments in time; the briefer the exposure, the smaller the slice and the less blur-causing subject movement. To make things interesting, your shutter sees motion at the same speed in different ways, depending on which way the subject is moving:



- ✓ **Across the frame:** Motion parallel to the width or height of the frame seems to move fastest to the sensor, and the subject blurs more easily. Higher shutter speeds, from  $\frac{1}{500}$  to  $\frac{1}{2,000}$  of a second in many cases, are required to stop this motion, compared to movement in other directions.

- ✓ **Toward the camera:** Motion moving toward you appears to have a much slower rate of speed, and such subjects blur the least. You can use a much slower shutter speed to freeze this kind of motion. For some kinds of subjects, shutter speeds of  $\frac{1}{60}$  to  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second might work.
- ✓ **Diagonal motion:** This type of movement falls between the first two. An automobile going from the upper left to the lower right is crossing the frame at the same time it's coming toward you, so you need an intermediate shutter speed, on the order of  $\frac{1}{25}$  to  $\frac{1}{60}$  of a second.
- ✓ **Close up/distant:** Subjects closer to the camera cross the frame more quickly than those farther away, and so require a higher shutter speed.
- ✓ **Relative speed:** If you move the camera in the same direction as the subject's motion — a *panning* technique — the relative speed difference is less, so you can use a lower shutter speed. The next section has some tips on panning.

### Going with the flow (or, panning)

The term *panning* comes from the word *panorama*, or “whole sight” if you happen to speak Ancient Greek in the home. It refers to an unbroken view of an area, like the view a motion picture camera produces when rotated smoothly from side to side. Panning is always horizontal; *tilting* is the vertical equivalent.

In either case, because the swiveling motion of the camera (usually) follows the direction the subject is moving, the subject appears to the camera to be moving at a slower rate of speed and can be captured at a slower shutter speed. The result is shown in Figure 9-7, which was taken at  $\frac{1}{4}$  second with the camera following the player attempting a lay-up. The static background, which isn't moving at all, appears to be blurry, and so do the other players who could be stopped, moving slower than the player in the center of the frame, or moving in another direction.



You can pan with a hand-held camera or with a camera mounted on a tripod that has a swiveling panorama (pan) head. Here are some tricks to getting good panned shots:

- ✓ **Have the right attitude.** To pan without using a tripod, position your body so you're facing in the direction at the end of the pan. Then twist to the start position and untwist while you follow the action smoothly, triggering the shutter when you want to snap a picture.
- ✓ **Level your platform.** To pan with a tripod, make sure the tripod and pan head are level with the direction of the movement so that when you rotate the camera, it follows the action smoothly.



- ✔ **Practice, practice.** Try out your pan a few times before you actually take a picture. When you practice, your technique improves.
- ✔ **Move smoothly.** Don't use jerky movements. Follow the movement of your subject closely.

### *Catching peak action*

Many kinds of action culminate in a *peak* — the motion stops for a moment before resuming. A basketball player at the top of his or her leap before uncorking a jump shot, a ski jumper at the apex of a soaring flight down a slope, or a roller coaster poised at the top of a hill can all be captured at relatively slow shutter speeds. Figure 9-8 shows a running back bursting through the offensive line as his teammates engage all but one of the opposing players. Most of the movement had stopped when the linemen butted heads, and the halfback was running toward the camera. So, a shutter speed of  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second was fast enough to stop this action.



**Figure 9-7:** A shutter speed of  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a second and panning allowed the player in the center to appear sharper, adding a feeling of motion to this shot.



**Figure 9-8:** A shutter speed of  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second was fast enough to stop this action.

You can find lots of action peaks that don't involve sports, too. Your child on a swing can be frozen for an instant at each end of the swing's arc. Birds in flight stop pumping their wings and ease into a lazy glide to ride thermal currents.



The magic bullet for catching peak action is patience and perseverance. Figure out just when the crucial moment is likely to occur and then time your shot accordingly.

### *Zapping action with flash*

Electronic flash units are still sometimes called *strobes*, after the stroboscopes used by Dr. Harold Edgerton at MIT to freeze shattering light bulbs and to stop bullets in flight. When flash is used as the only source of illumination in a photo, it can be very effective at stopping action because of its very brief duration.

Indeed, most electronic flashes built into digital SLRs have a *maximum* duration of about  $\frac{1}{1,000}$  of a second and might last only  $\frac{1}{50,000}$  of a second or less when used for close-up photography. That's because the most effective way of controlling the exact output of a flash is to limit the length of time that the energy stored in the unit's electrical capacitors is emitted. To produce a small blip of light, the flash releases only a tiny amount of energy in a very short time. To produce more light, give the blip a longer duration.

If the shutter speed and f-stop you use to capture an image with the flash is such that the continuous or *ambient* illumination isn't strong enough to register, the image is produced by the flash alone, so your camera's actual shutter speed is irrelevant. That is, you might be shooting at  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at f/8, but action is stopped by the electronic flash's  $\frac{1}{2,000}$  of a second duration.

You find out more about flash in the next section.

## Flash in the Pan: Other Keys to Good Flash Photography

Actually, you *can* use flash while panning (or when your subject is moving) to produce an interesting effect, but I save that for a bit later in this section.

First, it helps to understand a few concepts about using flash, whether you're applying this tool to action photography or other types. In the following sections, I help you understand how flash works at different distances, how to sync flash and the shutter to get the effect you want, and other techniques that can help you improve your flash photography in less than  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second.

### Understanding flash at different distances



The most important flash fact to remember is that electronic flash differs from the continuous illumination you know as daylight in one important respect: Daylight appears to be relatively even at most working distances, but the brightness of flash diminishes rather quickly as the distance between the subject and the flash increases. You can step 10 or 20 feet away from your subject in daylight, and the exposure doesn't change. Move the same distance from your subject when using flash, and the illumination decreases dramatically.

That's because electronic flash, like all illumination, obeys the *inverse-square* law. Light diminishes relative to the inverse of the square of the distance. So, if you're photographing a subject that's 4 feet from your flash, you need 4 times as much light when the distance is doubled to 8 feet, not twice as much. That also means that if you photograph two subjects, one 4 feet from the camera and one 8 feet from the camera, the more distant subject will be underexposed by 4X (two f-stops) if the closer subject is properly exposed.

This pesky law applies to daylight, as well, but the distance between the light source and subject is so much greater that you can ignore the consequences — unless you plan on stepping back 93 million miles between shots.



In practice, your camera's built-in flash probably doesn't do a good job illuminating anything 24 feet from the camera (say, a quarterback stepping back to unleash a pass) unless you use a high ISO setting. Your flash has probably been optimized to shoot subjects around 12 feet from the camera at around  $f/8$  or so, and it produces poor results at 24 feet, for which  $f/5.6$  might be required. Those kinds of situations call for more powerful, external flash units.

In addition to the sharp fall-off in illumination, using flash has some other disadvantages:

- ✓ Flash photos can look harsh, with bright foregrounds and very dark backgrounds, thanks to that inverse-square nonsense.
- ✓ Flash photos can produce a ghost effect when there's enough ambient light to produce a blurry secondary image along with the flash exposure.
- ✓ Electronic flash uses your camera's internal battery at a tidy clip.

You can see why proper use of flash is one of the more interesting challenges facing dSLR users.

### *That sync-ing feeling: Coordinating flash and shutter*

Many new SLR owners become confused over the options for synchronizing electronic flash with their camera's shutters. This section clears up that confusion.

As you might know, digital SLRs can use a combination of electronic and mechanical shutters to control the length of time the sensor is exposed. An electronic shutter is just that: The sensor is controlled electronically to allow it to capture photons for a fixed period of time. The electronic shutter is used for very brief exposures.

The mechanical shutter physically opens and closes to expose the sensor, and is used for longer exposures, from 30 seconds (or whatever your camera's maximum exposure happens to be) to a length of time that is known as the camera's *flash sync speed*, which can range from  $\frac{1}{180}$  to  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second. It's called that because it's the fastest shutter speed that can ordinarily be used to take a picture with the electronic flash.

The reason for that is easy to understand. The mechanical shutter used in dSLRs travels in front of the sensor, just above the plane of sharp focus (and is called a *focal plane* shutter for that reason). The shutter consists of two curtains. The *front curtain* opens first, moving across the plane of the sensor until it's fully open. Then, after the sensor has been left exposed for the desired amount of time, the *rear curtain* begins to follow it, gradually covering the sensor until it's completely concealed. Because of the brief duration of the flash, the flash must be fired only when the sensor is entirely uncovered. Otherwise, your picture consists of a partial frame, showing only the portion of the sensor that happened to be uncovered when the flash went off.

You can synchronize the flash in two ways, each producing a slightly different effect:



TIP

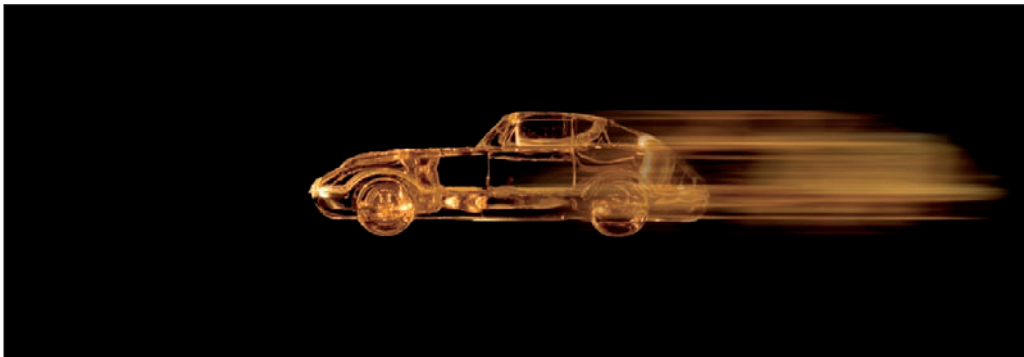
- ✓ **Front-curtain sync:** This is the default mode used by cameras. The electronic flash is triggered as soon as the front current has reached the opposite side. This records a flash exposure of the subject. Then, the shutter is allowed to remain open for the rest of the exposure. If there's sufficient ambient light and the subject is moving, you end up with a streak in the direction of the subject movement, as if your subject was preceded by a ghost. Most often, you don't want to see that.
- ✓ **Rear-curtain sync:** In this mode, the flash doesn't fire until the rear curtain begins to move at the *end* of the exposure. The ghost image, if any, registers first and terminates with a sharp image at your subject's end position. In this case, the ghost image trails the subject, like the cool streak that follows the Human Torch everywhere, as you can see in Figure 9-9. If you must have a ghost image (or want one), this is the way to go.



REMEMBER

What if you want no streak at all? In that case, try to use a shutter speed that's high enough that the ambient light doesn't register an image. The higher your camera's flash sync speed, the better your opportunity for using a shutter speed that's so brief you won't get a ghost image. Less is more: A  $\frac{1}{500}$  of a second sync speed, like the one found on the Nikon D40, works better in that regard than slower speeds, such as the  $\frac{1}{200}$  of a second sync speed of the Canon Digital Rebel XTi or Nikon D40x, or the  $\frac{1}{80}$  of a second of the Pentax \*ist DS.

Don't confuse front- and rear-curtain sync with *slow-sync*, which is a digital SLR option in automated modes that sets the camera to choose slow shutter speeds to *deliberately* add exposures from ambient light to the flash image. Slow-sync doesn't work well with moving subjects; use it with the camera mounted on a tripod so the background can be recorded along with the flash exposure.



**Figure 9-9:** With rear-curtain-sync flash, the ghost image trails the sharp image of the subject.

Another flash sync option found on some dSLRs is *high-speed sync*, which uses longer (but weaker) flash exposures to synchronize the flash at even higher shutter speeds than the camera's nominal flash sync speed. This option is best applied to close-up photography, where the diminished flash output is sufficient for a good exposure.

### Getting the right exposure

Your dSLR most likely uses a *dedicated* flash unit designed specifically for your camera, and it's built right into the camera, mounted on top in the hot shoe or connected to the camera with a cable or wireless triggering mechanism.

Dedicated flash units are commanded by the camera itself, which measures the amount of flash that reaches the sensor and tells the flash when to shut itself off. This is TTL, or *through-the-lens metering*, which is generally the most accurate type of flash exposure calculation. Communication between the flash and camera might also include information about which zoom setting is being used on the lens (so the flash can change its coverage to match) and what color temperature the flash emits (so the camera can compensate).

Flash exposure systems can also work with a preflash that's used to calculate the right exposure or integrate the distance data supplied by your camera's focus system to adjust flash output. There's also good old manual flash exposure, in which the flash pops at whatever power setting you specify (such as full, half, or quarter power), and you set the f-stop yourself by using a flash meter, guide number estimates, or good old-fashioned guessing.

## Yo, Trigger! Setting Off an External Flash

The mechanism used to set off your flash involves some considerations, too. Perhaps you want to separate an external flash from your camera by a distance that's too long for a connecting cable. In that case, you have a few options:



- ✓ **Slave device:** This activates the remote flash when its sensor detects the light from your main flash.
- ✓ **Slave units:** These work well when you plan to use several electronic flash units together. You can end up with brighter overall illumination or use the positions of the different flash units to provide specific lighting effects.
- ✓ **Wireless trigger:** This more sophisticated approach sets off your flash without the need for a main flash at all. The camera or a device attached to the camera provides the signal that trips the remote flash unit(s). These often have a selection of four or more channels, which let you control flash units individually and also avoid conflicts with other photographers who happen to be using similar wireless devices at the same. Wireless sync can operate by radio signals or low-power preflashes from the main camera that don't contribute to the exposure.

In addition to the type of trigger you can use for your external flash, I have one more slightly important topic to discuss: how to avoid frying the electronics of your camera when using an external flash! Sounds like a good idea, right?

All digital SLRs that allow connecting an external flash use a triggering circuit that closes a switch that fires the flash. The triggering voltage from the flash that passes through this switch in your camera might vary from a few volts to 250 volts or more.

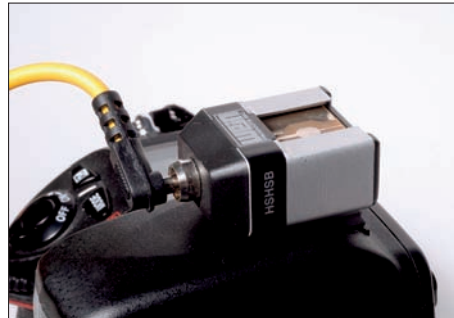


Modern digital cameras might not respond well to voltages of more than 10 to 15 volts, and some very bad things can happen to the camera's circuitry if more juice goes through than recommended.



Flash units built specifically for your camera or for digital cameras in general rarely cause difficulties. The problem seems to reside with older flash units and newer cameras. One solution is to determine from your flash vendor the exact triggering voltage. You can often find this figure on the Internet, and the information is usually as reliable as any guidelines you find on the Internet (which is to say not very). My preference is to use a voltage isolation device, like the Wein Safe-Sync, which separates your camera from the actual voltage used by the electronic flash.

The Safe-Sync, as shown in Figure 9-10, receives the signal from your camera and passes the information along to your electronic flash. The flash fires, your camera isn't fried, and everybody is happy. You can mount the device in your camera's hot shoe and then slide the flash into the shoe on top of the Safe-Sync. Or, you can link a flash with a PC cord by using the connector on the side of the gadget.



**Figure 9-10:** A voltage isolation device can safely connect your DSLR to any flash unit.





# Composition and dSLRs

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding composition basics
- ▶ Shooting portrait poses and other people shots
- ▶ Snapping publicity and PR photos
- ▶ Photographing architecture and landscapes extraordinaire
- ▶ Taking travel shots for gadabouts

**I**n some respects, a digital SLR makes achieving good composition a tiny bit easier, even though the eye and skills of the photographer bear the final responsibility. Some photographers say, with justification, that good composition should be exactly the same whether you're using a digital SLR or the least-expensive point-and-shoot camera. Other photographers say that those folks need to spend more time using a dSLR. Some significant differences exist between composing photos with a snapshotting camera and a digital single-lens reflex, the primary one being that you can do it.

Your basic non-SLR camera might rely on a tiny LCD (liquid crystal display) that's 3.0 inches diagonally at the max (but likely a bit smaller). This LCD is easily washed out in bright light, might be too dim to view under reduced illumination, and is grainy and subject to ghost images if the camera or subject moves. It might display only 85 percent or less of the actual subject matter, and it probably turns off after a minute or two because it hogs so much power. And that's the good news.

The bad news is that these cameras often have an alternate viewfinder that's even worse than the LCD. A *viewfinder* is a tiny optical window that not only shows just part of the actual image, it shows



you the view uncentered. Depending on the location of the optical viewfinder, it can seduce you into cutting off the top of your subjects and maybe a little on the right side, as well. This paragon of technology doesn't show depth-of-field even as poorly as the LCD.

And it gets worse. The trend these days is to eliminate the optical viewfinder on non-SLR cameras entirely, forcing snapshooters to hold their camera at arm's length so that they end up *aiming* the device in the general direction of the subject they want to shoot, rather than creating a thoughtful composition. Truman Capote once said of Jack Kerouac's work, "That's not writing — that's typing!" The photographic equivalent is "framing — not composing."

Think how much easier the typical dSLR makes your job of creating a photograph. Your camera's viewfinder probably shows 95 percent of the actual photo at a magnification of 0.75X to 0.95X life size at a normal focal length (roughly the equivalent of 45–50mm). You have a good idea of the depth-of-field by default, and you can usually press a depth-of-field preview button to get a better representation of what's in focus and what isn't. A digital SLR's viewfinder is live all the time — even when the camera is turned off, and the view winks out for just a split second during exposure. There's no ghosting. You're never in danger of cutting off your subjects' heads.

So, coming up with a good composition when shooting with a point-and-shoot camera is more than problematic — it's an outright challenge. Given that a dSLR makes it easy for you to compose images in the first place, be sure to consider applying some of the tips listed in this chapter.

## *Composing a Photo: The Basics*

Good composition is a little like good art. Even when people aren't consciously aware of all the components that go into great compositions, they still know what they like. That's because the very essence of composition is to arrange subject matter in a way that both is pleasing and communicates the message the photographer is trying to get across.

That communication can be very subtle. Once, I was watching one of my favorite films by Japanese master Akira Kurosawa with the DVD commentary turned on. The film scholar/commentator pointed out that when Kurosawa wanted to express tension in a scene, he frequently arranged the actors and their surroundings in triangular compositions. During calmer scenes, the composition was more open and square-like.

When I knew what to look for, the late director's compositional legerdemain leapt off the screen, as obvious now as the methods were unnoticed before. I realized that good composition can strongly affect my feelings about an image, even if I wasn't consciously aware of the techniques being used.

I help you understand some of the rules for composing images — and understand when they can be bent or broken. Composition is all about communicating messages in a pleasing way or, conversely, in a disturbing way if that's your intent.

### Composing for message and intent



Before you can frame your image in the composition you desire, you need to know what your messages and intent are. You don't need to spend hours contemplating your photo before you shoot. Simply keep the following questions in mind while you bring your dSLR to your eye and compose your picture:

- ✓ **What do I want to say here?** Am I simply trying to portray my subject in a thoughtful or playful mood, or is my intent to show the anguish and hard life of a typical migrant mother? Am I looking to create a peaceful shot of a forest scene, or do I want to show the ravages humankind has wrought on the environment? Or, is my goal to make my client's widget look tempting so someone will buy it? Some good photos make statements; others convey images of quality or affordability. A few more attempt to evoke humor. If you know in advance what kind of message you want to convey and who your audience is, you're way ahead in the compositional game.
- ✓ **What's my main subject?** Wow! What a great lot of classic automobiles all lined up at the drive-in. Wouldn't that make a great picture? An array of these cars might make a memorable shot — but it might not make a good composition. Instead of trying to cram six autos into one shot, choose one and let the others create an interesting background. Your photo should always have one main subject, even if that main subject is a group of people posing for a portrait.
- ✓ **Where's the center of interest?** Your main subject is generally your center of interest, and it probably shouldn't reside in the center of the photograph except when you're shooting close-ups, portraits, and other subjects that are naturally centered. But, if not centered, your subject *should* be in a place that attracts the eye and encourages examination of the rest of the image.

✔ **Do I want a vertical or horizontal composition?** Digital SLR shooters are much less likely to fall into the trap that the point-and-shoot set is subject to — composing all photos horizontally — simply because that’s the way the camera was designed to be held. A dSLR easily pivots between vertical and horizontal orientations (some even have built-in or add-on “vertical grips” with auxiliary shutter releases and command dials). So, you can choose vertical compositions for tall buildings and NBA players, and you can use horizontal layouts for ranch homes and NFL quarterbacks who’ve just been flattened by a linebacker. Of course, you can always crop your image from one orientation to the other within your image editor, but that wastes pixels. Figure 10-1 shows an image that quite logically falls into the vertical composition mold.



**Figure 10-1:** Some subjects are best suited for vertical compositions.

- ✔ **Do I want to print this image in black and white?** In that case, textures and contrasts can become a more important part of the composition.
- ✔ **How should I arrange the subjects in my photo?** Placement of the subjects within the frame is a key part of good composition. You might be able to move some objects or change your shooting angle to alter the composition. The arrangement of your subjects determines how the viewer’s eye roams around in the frame. There should be a smooth path to follow, starting with your main subject and progressing to the other interesting elements in the photo.
- ✔ **Where should I stand?** The distance from you to your subject and your angle can have a dramatic impact on your composition. A high angle provides a much different view than a low angle, and shooting at eye level is likely to be boring. Getting close emphasizes a subject in the foreground while potentially minimizing the importance of the background. Backing away can make the foreground appear to be more expansive. You have to change your shooting angle by physically moving, but you can achieve a specific distance by zooming, switching to a prime lens of a particular focal length, or simply taking some steps forward or back. And in a pinch, you can crop your photo in an image editor.

✓ **What's in the background?** Backgrounds can make or break a photo. Sometimes you want a plain background to draw emphasis on the center of interest. Other times the background is part of the composition and adds interest. Take a careful look at what's in the background before you shoot. If you re-examine Figure 10-1, you see that the bush in the background could be a little distracting or, worse, could form a merger with the lion statue. You find out more about mergers later in this chapter.

## Applying the Rule of Thirds

Every book on photography you'll ever read includes a blurb describing the infamous *Rule of Thirds*, which posits that the ideal locations for objects in a composition reside  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the way from the top or bottom margins and  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the distance from either side. For example, in Figure 10-2, the Castillo de San Marcos in St. Augustine, Florida occupies two such nodes at the left side of the frame, and the *horizon* (the stone wall surrounding the castle) lines up roughly  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the way from the bottom of the picture. Most of the books don't tell you exactly *why* dividing an image into thirds is such a good idea. After all, couldn't you follow the Rule of Quarters, the Rule of Fifths, or even the Rule of Six and Seven-Eighths?

## The origins of the Rule of Thirds

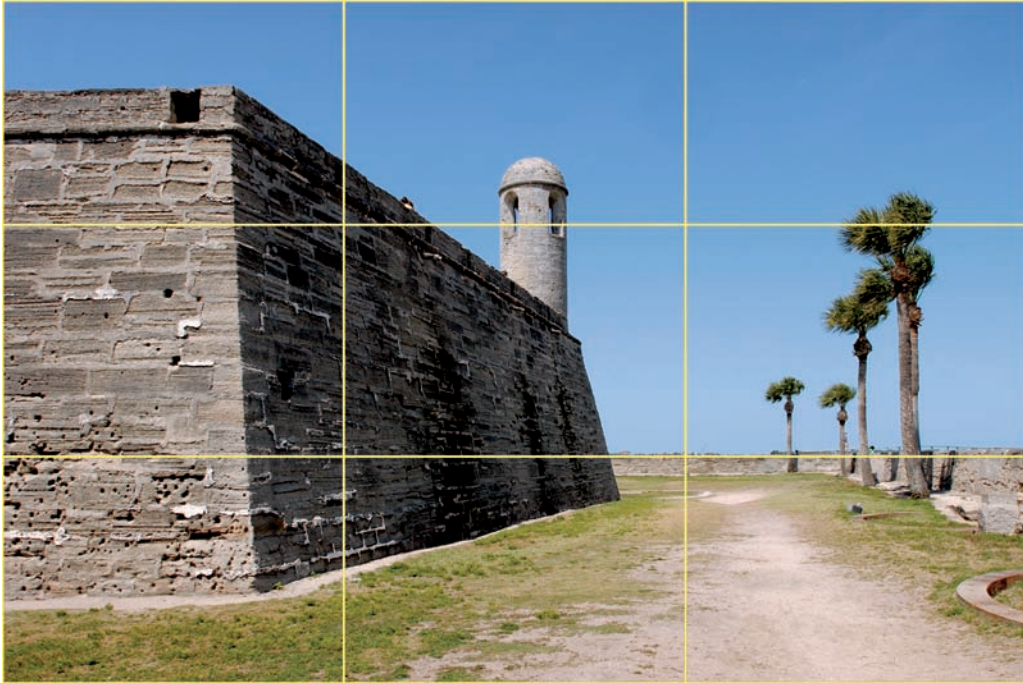
In reality, the Rule of Thirds wasn't created by some all-knowing artist back in the dawn of time, nor was it created arbitrarily. The Rule of Thirds was created by Mother Nature herself. The ancient Greeks studied many of the most pleasing works of nature and discovered that most of them adhered to a specific proportion that could be described in a particularly harmonious mathematical way.

They deemed this particular proportion golden and used it to construct a Golden Rectangle, which, if its long side is defined as 1, the short side is 0.618 as long. Bisecting this Golden Rectangle produces Golden Triangles, and if you do it enough times, you end up with four points that divide the original rectangle into thirds. Zazaam! With all that math and natural beauty driving it, the Rule of Thirds *has* to provide pleasing proportions. Of course, the typical digital film frame isn't necessarily a Golden Rectangle, but the Rule of Thirds can be applied nevertheless.

## Putting the Rule of Thirds to work

To use the Rule of Thirds, try to locate your subjects at one of the imaginary intersection points in the viewfinder. Remember that if your dSLR has optional grid lines, they probably *aren't* arranged to follow this rule. Also know when to ignore the guideline. It's okay to center your subject or locate it at the far right, top, or bottom if you have good reasons for doing so. Most close-up photos and many portraits, for example, place the subjects right in the middle of the frame, usually because no other compositional elements are in the photo that need to be arranged to provide balance.





**Figure 10-2:** The Rule of Thirds offers guidelines for placing the horizon and other significant parts of an image within the frame.

## *Posers and Poseurs*

People photography is one of the most enjoyable types of picture-taking, and digital SLRs are especially adept at it. Whether you're posing friends, family, and colleagues for casual or more formal portraits or attempting to catch, say, the next rock star wannabe onstage, your dSLR has the features you need to excel.

Compared to point-and-shoot digital cameras, digital SLRs provide more flexibility in choice of lenses, more control over depth-of-field (so you can throw a distracting background out of focus), and better image quality with the longer exposures sometimes necessary for people shots at night. Despite all you have going for you, be sure to keep the compositional tips in this section in mind while you snap away.



You can use thousands of good poses for individuals or groups, but you don't need to memorize dozens of options to get good portraits. If you're a beginner at people pictures, you might want to look at some poses that work in magazines and books. However, a few simple rules can help you build workable subject arrangements from scratch. Read on for details.

### *Shooting individual portraits*

Portraits of individuals are theoretically easier than pictures of groups because you have only one subject to worry about. Of course, you have to please that subject with your results. Everyone wants to be portrayed in a flattering way, and it's the photographer's job to see that a subject *looks* the way he or she imagines himself or herself — or better!



Here are some tips:

- ✓ **Make sure your subject is relaxed and comfortable.** Sitting is better than standing for anything short of a full-length portrait, and a stool is often the best seat because no back or arms intrude into the photo, and a perch on a stool discourages slouching. However, a picnic bench, a handy rock, a fence, or even the kitchen table can provide a place for your subjects to relax while you capture them for posterity.
- ✓ **If your subject isn't facing the camera, have him or her look into the frame, rather than out of it.** Otherwise, the viewer wonders what's going on outside the picture area that's so interesting.
- ✓ **Choose a good angle that flatters your subject.** As I discovered from my days photographing models, even the most attractive people can have hands and feet that are positively grotesque when photographed from their worst angles, which are the backs and palms of the hands and bottoms of the feet. Most of the time, bare feet won't be a prominent element in your portraits, but if you photograph the edges of hands, they can become an expressive part of your photo. Exception: Baby hands and baby feet can be cute from any angle, particularly to the parents and close relatives. But be aware that some childless adults and a few other types are powerfully sick of adorable pictures of somebody else's kids, so this charm isn't necessarily universal.
- ✓ **Compose your shot to de-emphasize problem areas.** Bald heads aren't necessarily as problematic as they once were because athletes, musicians, and those who aspire to coolness often shave their heads specifically to get the bare pate look. If your subject is sensitive about involuntary baldness or if his or her particular attempt at being cool is, um, let's say, a poor implementation, lower your camera slightly and elevate your subject's chin. If you're using external lights, avoid adding glare to the top of the head.

Long, large, or angular noses might be a badge of honor and personality for some, and perhaps a plus for thespians seeking character roles for their distinctive faces. For everyone else, try having subjects face directly into the camera.

Alfred E. Neuman, Dumbo, and H. Ross Perot just wouldn't look the same without their distinguishing ears. Less-famous folk sometimes appreciate it if you minimize their prominent ears in photographs or, at the very least, avoid making them the center of interest. Try shooting your subject in profile or arrange the lighting so that the ear nearest the camera is in shadow.

✔ **Diffuse lighting to diminish defects.** To minimize wrinkles or facial defects, such as scars or bad complexions, use softer, more diffuse lighting. Shooting in the shade or bouncing light off a reflector (which can be something as simple as a white shirt worn by an assistant or passerby) can provide a more flattering rendition. A diffusing filter on your lens or diffusion added in your image editor can help, too. Or, zoom out or take a step back to shoot your subject from the waist up, as shown in Figure 10-3. That reduces the relative size of the face in the final picture.

✔ **Avoid reflections off eyeglasses.** Have your subject raise or lower the chin a bit so the glasses aren't bouncing light directly into the lens. If using flash, position the flash at an angle. You can see many reflections through your SLR viewfinder, but for flash shots, review your picture and reshoot if reflections are a problem.



**Figure 10-3:** Teenagers are often best pictured with soft lighting in full-length or waist-up poses.

## Shooting group photos

Group photography has all the potential pitfalls of individual portraits, multiplied by the number of people in the shot. However, the following special considerations are unique to photographing groups:



- ✓ **Remember that each group shot is also a portrait of all the individuals in the shot.** The guidelines for creating flattering portrayals remain basically the same. (I list the guidelines in the preceding section.) Unfortunately, optimizing everyone's visage in a single shot can be tricky because you can't have one person in profile, another from a low angle, and a third with special lighting to minimize yet another kind of defect. Fortunately, though, because individual faces in a group shot are relatively small, these problems can take care of themselves as long as you keep everyone relaxed and smiling.
- ✓ **Watch the eyes!** Make sure everyone in the photo is looking in the same direction, which should generally be in the same direction their noses are pointing. Check for blinkers and noddors, too. Try to take at least one photo for every person who is in the photo (that is, at least six for a six-person pose) just to get one in which everyone's eyes are open. Then double that number to be safe.
- ✓ **Arrange your subjects into interesting patterns.** Make sure that all the heads aren't in a single horizontal or vertical line, although it's possible to make exceptions for special poses, like the one shown in Figure 10-4.
- ✓ **Triangular and diamond shapes work best for groups of three or four people.** If you have more than that in a shot, break them up into multiple triangles and diamonds. Copyright restrictions dating back to the year 1662 prevent me from including in this book Rembrandt's portrait we know as *The Dutch Masters*, but if you Google this picture (or just buy yourself a box of cigars), you see that it contains a cunning arrangement of *three* triangles to represent just six people. The trio on the left make up one triangle, the three on the right make up a second, inverted triangle, and the same figures produce a third triangle if you look only at the three gentlemen in the center.

## Tips for Publicity and PR Photography

I made my living taking publicity and public relations (PR) photographs for more years than I care to count, so you'd think I'd be competent at it by now. I know enough that I can summarize the difference between the two in a single sentence:



Publicity photography is intended to make someone or something famous; PR photography is designed to make someone or something likeable.

A typical publicity photo might be one showing a rising 28-year-old TV/movie star out on a date with a 45-year-old thespian whose career has seen better days. If the picture captures the public interest, it's likely to boost the careers of both, regardless of whether it portrays the pair in a favorable light, and regardless of whether it was taken by a paparazzo or supplied by a publicist.



**Figure 10-4:** This shot works best in a nontraditional pose, with the mother and daughter facing each other.

A publicity photo can also picture an object, rather than a person. Perhaps a giant blow-up figure promoting a new movie has been stolen from the roof of a fast-food restaurant and now resides on the front lawn of a college fraternity. Everybody wins here: the restaurant, the movie producers, and the college students who gain 15 minutes of fame.

Photos intended to improve PR are almost always provided by the PR agency or publicist of the person or product that benefits. If the 28-year-old and 45-year-old stars happen to be arrested after crashing a sports car through the window of a jewelry store, you can bet that some PR photos will soon appear picturing those same personalities doling out dinner at a soup kitchen or entertaining the troops in some foreign country.

Of course, the approach isn't quite that cynical in the real world, and both publicity and PR photos can be used for quite serious and laudable purposes, I'm told.



Your job, if you choose to accept it, is to create pictures that do their intended job. As such, you must realize that publicity and PR photos don't revolve as much around a particular subject as they do a particular purpose. Portraits, sports photos, landscape pictures, and even travel photography all can be included in this category, so you'll want to follow the guidelines for each. But, in particular, keep these things in mind:

- ✔ **These photos all have a particular message or two to convey.** Your composition should revolve around that message, whether you hope to portray a particular person as a fine upstanding citizen, represent a product as a good value, highlight a premium-priced luxury item, or show a technological breakthrough that will save the world. Keep your message in mind at all times.
- ✔ **Keep It Simple, Silly (KISS).** Exclude everything that doesn't help convey the message out of the photo. You don't want viewers of the picture to become interested in something else that they find more compelling.
- ✔ **Look for unusual angles and subjects.** Your historical society invited a William McKinley impersonator to speak before the group. Ho hum! If you want newspapers in your area to run your PR shot, avoid a traditional photo of the actor posing with members of the group. Instead, shoot an eye-catching picture of him in character, like the one shown in Figure 10-5, and make the editor sit up and take notice.
- ✔ **If you're shooting a PR picture, you must represent the person or product accurately, within reason.** If you don't do that, your image loses credibility and reputable news media will decline to run it. No adding marbles to a bowl of soup to make the vegetables rise to the top. Don't show your company's CEO running a marathon when the most exercise she gets in real life is pounding on the boardroom table. That doesn't mean you're obligated to picture every defect and problem, only that you shouldn't deliberately use your photographs to mislead the audience.
- ✔ **If you're shooting a photo for publicity, go ahead and ignore all the advice in the preceding paragraph.** Nobody takes your efforts seriously, anyway. Your photos are desirable only if they're a bit over the top and



**Figure 10-5:** Capture your subject in action for a more interesting PR shot.

perhaps more than a little sensational. A photo showing an Academy Award winner punching out one of his mates in a bar is a lot more salable than one of him mending a fence on his ranch. The latter is more likely to be a PR photo released when he's released out on bail, and a much tougher sell.

## Capturing Architecture



Architectural photographs frequently call for wide-angle lenses, which let you take in large expanses of a building and its surroundings without having to step back a mile or two. Indoors, the same wide-angle lens makes it possible to photograph interiors without having to step outside and shoot through an open window. Wide-angle lenses also allow you to include foreground detail, such as landscaping, which can be an important part of an architectural photo.

On the plus side, the interchangeable lenses available for digital SLRs generally have a much wider view than you can get with even the wide-zoom model point-and-shoot digitals. Several non-SLR cameras from Nikon, Olympus, and others have wide-angle lenses that are the equivalent of a 24mm lens on a 35mm film camera or a full-frame digital SLR. However, those are relatively scarce, and frequently, that isn't nearly wide enough. Only digital SLRs allow you to fit lenses as wide as 15mm for a true ultra-wide view.

Of course, the wide-angle perspective comes at a price, especially if you're using a digital SLR with the crop factor that comes with the territory in cameras that have smaller than full-frame sensors. On a camera with a 1.5X crop factor, a 20mm extra-wide lens becomes an ordinary 30mm wide-angle lens, and 16mm ultra-wide optic has a 24mm view. Although you can readily buy true ultra-wide lenses for your digital SLR — including zooms that take in the equivalent of an 18mm full-frame lens at the wide end, and fisheyes — these lenses can be expensive. My favorite fisheye zoom lens, a 10-17mm Tokina optic, costs almost \$600. Even so, if you want to shoot architecture frequently, you'll spring for the pricey lenses you need.

The next sections outline some of the details you need to consider when shooting architecture, indoors or out.

### *Reeg, your perspective is out of control!*

Whether it's a good thing, most people take photographs with the camera at eye-level and the back of the camera parallel to the plane of the subject, and at right angles to the ground. I'm always harping about using interesting angles, both high and low, but, most of the time photos are taken straight-on with little or no tilting in any direction.



Wouldn't you know it? Camera tilts commonly come into play when the shooter is taking architectural photos. Outdoors, tilting the camera up is often necessary to photograph tall structures, which seems like a good idea until you see that the building appears to be falling back in the final picture. That little bit of tilt can make the picture look somewhat bizarre, as you can see in Figure 10-6, thanks to a syndrome called *perspective distortion*. Fortunately, unless you're inside a cathedral or domed stadium, you probably won't need to tilt the camera upward, and you can avoid the most common kinds of perspective distortion when shooting interiors.



**Figure 10-6:** Tilt your camera back, and a tall structure appears to be falling away from you.

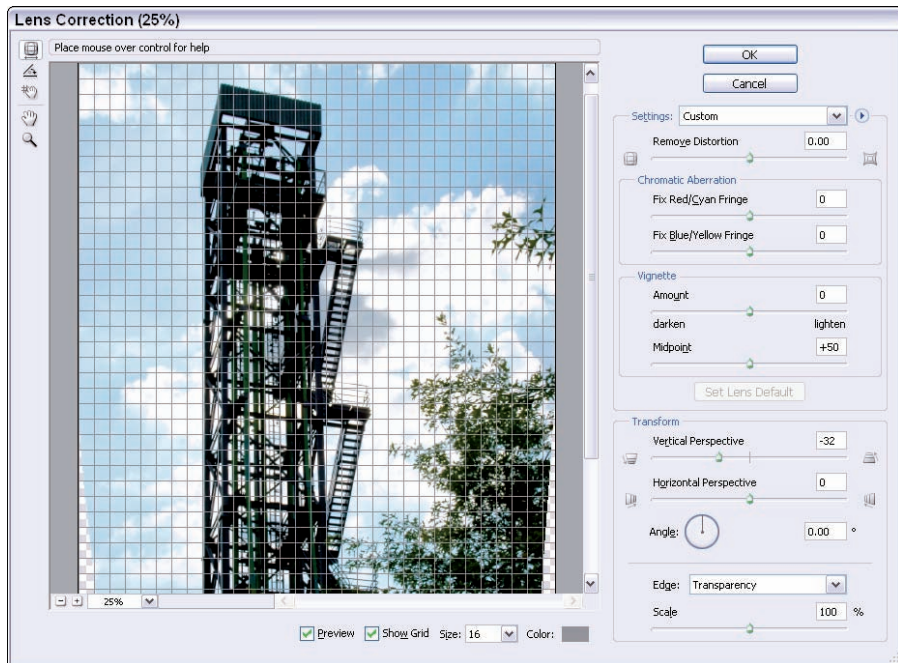
The most logical solutions for this distortion outdoors don't always work well. You can take a few steps back so you don't need to tilt the camera (or tilt it as much), but that often means that intervening trees, fruit carts in the plaza, and other obstacles now intrude on your photo. A wider lens sometimes helps, although you'll end up wasting a lot of pixels on foreground subjects that you'll end up cropping out of the picture.

If a handy building stands across the street, you might be able to ascend about halfway up, shoot out a window, and take in both the base and top of your target structure without tilting the camera at all, but you'll rarely be that lucky.

Your digital SLR might be compatible with any of the available *perspective control* lenses, which can move their optics off-center enough to take in more of a subject in any one direction without the need to tilt. However, perspective control lenses can cost a bundle, might not be available for your camera, and are tricky to use.



Your best bet might be to do the best you can and then use your image editor to correct the perspective distortion. Photoshop CS3 has a handy Lens Correction tool, as shown in Figure 10-7 (choose Filters→Distort).



**Figure 10-7:** Photoshop's Lens Correction tool can help fix perspective distortion.

The Lens Correction tool can fix perspective distortion, correct chromatic aberrations, and mend pincushion and *barrel distortion* (the tendency to bow vertical and horizontal lines inward or outward, respectively). Apply this corrective filter, and you can end up with an image like the one shown in Figure 10-8.



**Figure 10-8:** The corrected tower looks like this.

## Charge of the lighting brigade

Architectural photos, indoors or out, can also suffer from lighting problems. As with other types of photography, one of the main challenges to you, the photographer, is to make sure the lighting helps render your subject in the most suitable way for the particular type of photograph you're taking.

In Figure 10-9, for instance, I decided to let uneven lighting work for me. The shadows of the upper rafters of the railroad station were dark, and the highlight areas of the surrounding area washed out, concentrating attention on the platform area. In most cases, though, you're not so lucky, but you can turn to Table 10-1 for solutions to many common lighting problems.



**Figure 10-9:** Sometimes uneven lighting can work for you, concentrating attention on one part of the image.

**Table 10-1 Handling Common Lighting Problems**

<i>Problem</i>	<i>What to Do?</i>
<b>Too little light.</b> If you're shooting outdoors at night or indoors, it's very likely that you don't have enough light to make a proper exposure with the camera hand-held.	Provide extra lighting (with flash, perhaps), mount your camera on a tripod to allow a longer exposure, or use a technique like <i>painting with light</i> in which the shutter of a tripod-mounted camera is left open in a time exposure while the photographer or an assistant illuminates the subject with repeated electronic flash bursts, a flashlight, or some other light source.



<i><b>Problem</b></i>	<i><b>What to Do?</b></i>
<p><b>Too much light.</b> Having too much light is rarely a problem. Architectural photography usually is friendly toward bright (but not harshly lit) environments that allow using short shutter speeds and/or small apertures that provide lots of depth-of-field.</p>	<p>Although rare, in very bright situations, you may need to use a neutral density filter to cut back on the amount of light.</p>
<p><b>Harsh lighting.</b> You might find yourself in a situation where the light is glaring, contrasty, and harsh.</p>	<p>You may need to soften the lighting by intercepting direct illumination so that it bounces off reflectors.</p>
<p><b>Uneven lighting.</b> Harsh lighting can be uneven, but uneven lighting isn't necessarily harsh. You simply might find yourself with plenty of suitable illumination in part of your frame and not enough light in other parts.</p>	<p>Break out the electronic flash or reflectors to cast a little light in the gloomy portions of your subject.</p>
<p><b>Mixed lighting.</b> Indoors, it's common to have multiple light sources illuminating your room. Space located near windows might be lit by outdoor light that is quite bluish compared to the warm interior light. These mixed light sources can be fairly ugly if left unmodified.</p>	<p>Pros do things like draping orange filter-like material over windows to give it the same color as the interior light or filtering their electronic flash so it matches the room illumination. Your best bet might be to draw the blinds or turn off the interior lights, as well as stick with the window light and perhaps a few supplemental electronic flash units with the same white balance.</p>

## *You've been framed!*



Most kinds of photography benefit from building a visual frame around your subject, but architectural photos benefit more than most. If possible, frame your main subject by using doorways, windows, arches, the space between buildings, or the enveloping branches of trees as a pseudo border. Usually, these frames are in the foreground, which creates a feeling of depth, but if you're creative, you can find ways to use background objects to frame a composition.

## Designing Your Landscape Photos

Landscape photography is another photographic pursuit that benefits from the dSLR's ability to use wide-angle lenses. Landscapes also happen to be, after portraits, one type of photography that is most likely to be blown up to huge sizes and displayed on the wall. As much as people love their loved ones, they're also fond of Mother Earth and enjoy sharing photographs of each.

Like architectural photography, landscapes lend themselves to contemplative shooting. Scenery changes slowly over long periods of time, so Ansel Adams-esque quests for the perfect angle, idyllic weather, and ideal conjunction of the stars and planets are understandable and not at all unreasonable. Given enough time to work with, you can use all the compositional suggestions that I mention in this chapter.



Use curves, lines, and shapes, like those shown in Figure 10-10, to guide the viewer's eye. Fences, gracefully curving seashores, meandering roads, railroad tracks, and receding tree lines all can lead the viewer through your carefully crafted composition. Curved lines are gentle; straight lines and rigid geometric shapes are more forceful. Although you can't plan on moving things around helter-skelter to improve your composition (rocks, mountains, and streams pretty much must remain where you found them), you're free to change angles and viewpoints until your picture elements all fall into place.



**Figure 10-10:** Lines and shapes can guide your viewer through your photograph.



Landscape photography also happens to be one of the more happily gadget-prone photographic pursuits. Gradient neutral density filters — dark on top and clear on bottom — can balance a brilliant sky with the less-bright foreground. Gradient color filters, which I describe in more detail in Chapter 15, can blend a warm orange color on one half with a rich blue on the other, producing an interesting split effect between sky and foreground.

Tripods are a valuable tool for landscape photos because they steady the camera to help you take razor-sharp images that you can blow up to mammoth size. They're also handy as a camera stand that keeps your lens pointed in the right direction while you spend lots and lots of time thinking about your shot. Panorama heads work in conjunction with your tripod to allow leveling your camera while you crank off overlapping shots at the correct intervals.



When you're ready to shoot, keep some of these tips in mind:

- ✓ **Avoid splitting your photo in half with the horizon.** Remember that Rule of Thirds! Place the horizon  $\frac{2}{3}$  down from the top if you want to emphasize the foreground or  $\frac{1}{3}$  up from the bottom if the background and sky are your most favored subjects.
- ✓ **You don't have to compose landscapes in landscape mode.** Try shooting some verticals. If you incorporate strong vertical lines, such as trees, off to one side of the shot, your landscape photo can be naturally converted to a vertical orientation.
- ✓ **Shoot lots of sunsets (or sunrises if you're *that* kind of person).** Sunsets and sunrises always look good because the light has a marvelous golden quality, and they're different each time — even if you shoot from the same location. Remember that the sun rises and sets in a slightly different place on the horizon each day of the year.
- ✓ **Manually focus if you must.** Autofocus systems sometimes have difficulty finding enough contrast for focusing automatically, especially if a lot of sky is in the photo. Most landscapes are focused at infinity, anyway.

## Compositional Ideas That Travel Well

Travel shots are often a combination of architectural photography and landscape photography. While you roam around on vacation, you're bound to find interesting things to photograph within cities as well as in the countryside. The chief difference between travel photography and architectural or landscape pictorials is that the travel shots invariably have one or more members of your party standing smack in the middle of the picture, waving or pointing.

It doesn't have to be so. Oh, of course you want to prove you've been to the Eiffel Tower or Grand Canyon, so go ahead and take a few shots with you or

your companions mugging for the camera. But then shoo everybody out of the way and take a few well-composed photos you can be proud of. After all, 20 years from now most of your family members in the photos will be old and wrinkly. But the Eiffel Tower and Grand Canyon will be an unaging part of your vacation memories if you take the time to capture some memorable photos while you're there.



Vacation photos are your chance to apply some of the basic compositional techniques I discuss throughout this chapter. A few new principles to consider include

✓ **Try to balance your compositions.** Place interesting subject matter on both sides of the frame. I don't mean that you need to have two centers of interest, only that your photo shouldn't be lopsided. If you pose a person on one side of the frame, include a building or some foliage on the other side to create a balanced look. This trick encourages viewers to explore the image, rather than feel uneasy because they're wondering why all that empty space is on the other half of the photo.

✓ **Avoid mergers.** *Mergers* are the (usually) unintentional combinations of unrelated subjects spliced together in disturbing ways. The classic merger is usually a tree growing out of the top of someone's head (but you can do the same thing with the Eiffel Tower if you're careful and have tired of having your subjects just stand in front of it and wave).

Mergers can also happen when subjects seem to grow out the edges of the picture. For example, if you have a tree branch drooping down into your image but there is no tree anywhere to be seen in the rest of the photo, the branch appears to have sprung from the edge of your picture. Examine your compositions carefully to spot and eliminate mergers before you capture them in pixel form.

✓ **Don't be afraid to try some new subjects.** Certain travel photos are almost obligatory. Return from Spain without a picture of a flamenco dance or come back from Philadelphia lacking a shot of Independence Hall or the Liberty Bell, and your acquaintances might doubt you've actually been where you claim. But don't let those expectations limit you.



I like to photograph what I call the *Gettysburgs* of each location I visit — the places many people have heard of, but have rarely seen pictured. In the United States, that might be a view of the St. Louis arch taken from underneath the arch itself, rather than from the other side of the Mississippi River, or a close-up of a door knocker on an ancient door of a cathedral, like the one shown in Figure 10-11. In Europe, you might want to photograph El Toboso, a village in Spain where Don Quixote's Dulcinea lived, rather than snap only the same-old-same-old photos at the Alhambra or the Costa del Sol.



**Figure 10-11:** Look for unusual subjects, such as the knocker on this 400-year-old door to the cloisters of a European cathedral.

With a little imagination, you can return from your trip with well-composed, interesting photos that capture the spirit of your vacation but don't look like they were cribbed from postcards.

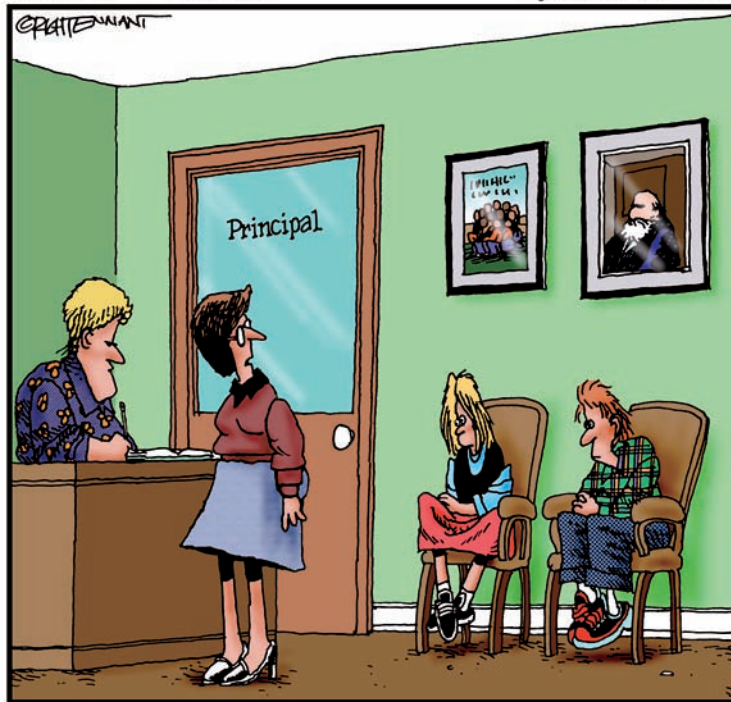


# Part IV

## Fine-Tuning Your Output

### The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

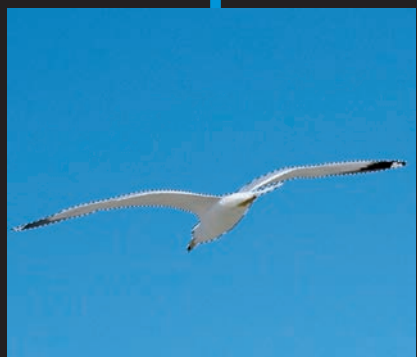


"I found these two in the multimedia lab morphing faculty members into farm animals."

## *In this part . . .*

**Y**ou aren't done yet! Pressing the shutter simply takes the photo. Then, you might want to make the photo better by using the creative tools available with image-editing software. This part shows you some of the things you can do with your image, including the joys of distributing them as hard copy prints.

Chapter 11 helps you do basic retouching with the image editor of your choice, salvaging murky photos, correcting unacceptable colors, and removing annoying spots. Chapter 12 shows you simple techniques for combining one or more photos, removing backgrounds, and getting creative with selective modifications. Chapter 13 proves that making good hard copies doesn't have to be hard.





# Fixing Up Your Images

## *In This Chapter*

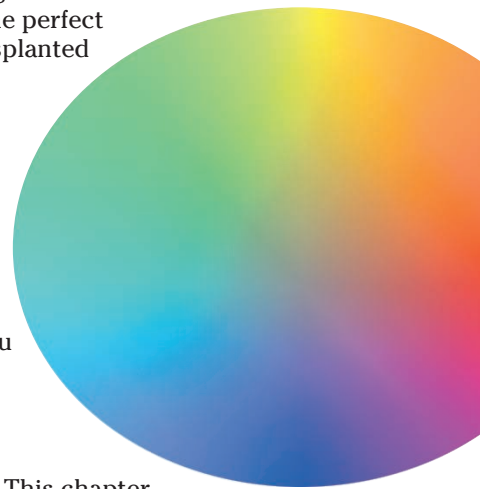
- ▶ Checking out available image editors
- ▶ Fixing up photographs

If you're really, really good at digital SLR photography, your images might not need any fixing at all, right? Dream on. *Nobody's* that good; even the most sharp-eyed shooter still uses image editing, or what the cognoscenti refer to as *post-processing*. (It'd take some major mojo for a photographer to perform *pre-processing* on images *before* they were taken!)

Thanks to the miracles of image editing, you can take that perfect composition and create an entirely new picture by judicious cropping. Perhaps you can modify your perfect exposure to produce a special high-contrast effect or a low-contrast moody look. You can creatively twist great color balance with oddball colors. You might even find that the perfect shot of the Eiffel Tower looks even better if you transplanted the structure to a cornfield in Kansas.

Image editing is a skill anyone can master. One of the best things about digital photography is that your images are digital all the way. You don't need to scan film or a print or do any conversion. What you shot is what you got — a digital image full of pixels just waiting to be tweaked, fine-tuned, shifted around, and optimized. You can do a lot of that in your camera, but for even greater image enhancement, you need an editor, such as Adobe Photoshop Elements, Paint Shop Pro, or even the granddaddy itself, Photoshop CS3.

These are all things you can do with an image editor. This chapter and Chapter 12 show you what you can do to fix up images or transform existing shots into entirely new ones.



## Editor-ial Comments: Choosing an Image Editor

Which image editor should you use? It could be argued that Adobe Photoshop is the best image-editing software on the planet. It could also be argued that owning your own private jet is the best way to travel around the country. Not everyone can afford private jets or Photoshop, and not everyone wants to spend time figuring out how to pilot them. That's why so many alternatives to Adobe's flagship image editor have flourished.



Some image editors have every imaginable feature, but others take a barebones approach. Do you need to be able to edit CMYK (cyan/magenta/yellow/black) image files and make color separations, or are you just looking to correct red-eye problems? Do you want absolute control over every parameter, or would you prefer that your image editor handles simple tasks with a wizard-like interface? Image editors differ both in the features they have and the approaches they take to image editing. The trick is to figure out which editor has the features you need and an approach that's compatible with your working style.

Because you're working with a digital SLR, I assume that your editing requirements are — potentially — a little on the ambitious side. Certainly, you want to adjust tones, fix color, or sharpen things a little. But you also might have a hankering to drop out backgrounds, remove an extra head from your brother-in-law from another planet, or combine several of your best shots into one. So, in this chapter, I assume that you want to go beyond the basics with your image editor and your image-editing activities. (In Chapter 12, I explain how to do so.)

For an ambitious soul like you, the image-editing choices are numerous.

### Adobe Photoshop

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

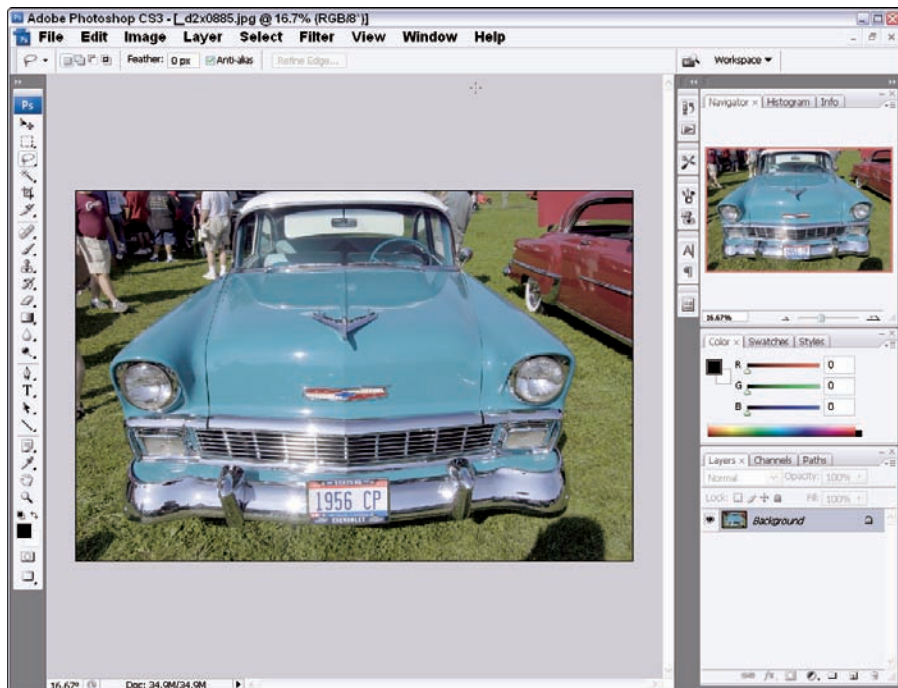
Photoshop is a verb? With apologies to R. Buckminster “I Seem to Be a Verb” Fuller, Adobe Photoshop is well on the way to joining our language as a process rather than just a product. The average person who has never used an image editor, when confronted with an obviously manipulated photograph, is likely to say, “That looks photoshopped!” Common misuse of its trademark might pain Adobe, but the company has to be pleased at how widely known and used the product is.

Since it appeared on the market in the early 1990s, Photoshop, including its latest incarnation, Photoshop CS3, has gained its number-one position over the years by virtue of a complex set of circumstances, many of which relate to how cool the product really is. Consider these points:

- ✔ **Photoshop does everything any sane digital photographer or graphics worker would want to accomplish.** Recent releases have filled a lot of holes, including the long-requested ability to curve text along a path. If you can't do it with Photoshop, you probably don't need to do it.

- ✔ **Photoshop does *not* include feature bloat in the form of capabilities that nobody wants or uses (unlike, say, a certain Office suite).** You might not need every single Photoshop feature now, but someday you might. Photoshop has no equivalent of a dancing paper clip.
- ✔ **Photoshop works identically with both PCs and Macintoshes.** With some minor interface differences, Photoshop works the same with both PCs and Macs.
- ✔ **Understanding how to use Photoshop is a marketable skill.** Certainly, it takes months to become a Photoshop master, but the knowledge you gain won't help you only with your current job but, potentially, your next one, as well. Employers won't take notice if you're a Paint Shop Pro guru (unless the company happens to use that program) but might place a premium on Photoshop expertise.

Despite its cost and learning curve, Photoshop, as shown in Figure 11-1, is certainly not out of the reach of the average dSLR owner. Most computers built in the last couple years are certainly powerful enough to run it, especially if you upgrade to 2GB of random access memory (RAM), which shouldn't cost more than \$200. If you're serious about photography, spend the time to master it.



**Figure 11-1:** Photoshop CS3 in action.



Attractive upgrade offers let you purchase a full copy of Photoshop for a fraction of its original \$650 list price (or about \$1,000 for the CS3:Extended version). Thereafter, you can upgrade when Adobe comes out with a new release (on roughly an 18-month schedule) for about \$200. You can even skip a release (upgrading, say, from Photoshop CS to Photoshop CS3) if you don't need the very latest features.

### *The good news*

Photoshop's strength is its complete feature set, with tools for doing retouching, compositing, complex color correction, and even Web design. If you specialize in one type of image processing over another, you'll find that Photoshop has everything you need in its well-organized tool set.

The latest version has a revamped user interface, including (at last!) the ability to dock palettes at the edge of the workspace to keep them out of the way of the image you're working on. Selection tools have been improved, making it easier to grab parts of a photo for pasting into new combined (composited) images. Photoshop's filters have gotten smarter, so you can edit their settings or even remove their special effects throughout the picture-fixing process. My favorite new tool is the nifty black-and-white conversion capability, which enables you to create a monochrome version of a color image while retaining the tonal separation of objects — so that parts of your photo that have different colors but similar brightness levels can still be clearly discerned.

Photoshop is a nimble, cross-platform, cross-application tool. It can read, write, and manipulate all the industry-standard file formats as well as many nonstandard file types. You can resample images to change the image size, resolution, and color depth. Photoshop excels at providing images that are optimized for specialized uses, such as commercial printing and Web graphics. As part of the Adobe Creative Suite, Photoshop is also well-integrated with several leading page-layout programs and Web-development programs, such as Illustrator, PageMaker, InDesign, and GoLive. Now that Adobe has acquired Macromedia, you can enjoy some integration with that subsidiary's products as well.

Photoshop provides a rich set of tools for everything from simple image manipulation (cropping and color balance adjustments, to name two) to selecting complex shapes from an image and applying sophisticated filters and effects to the selected area. Photoshop also includes a full set of painting tools that you can use to retouch your images or to create original artwork.

Adobe designed Photoshop to accept filters and plug-in program extensions provided by third-party suppliers, such as Andromeda, Applied Science Fiction, Alien Skin, Auto FX, and Extensis. A robust aftermarket has evolved to supply a wide assortment of plug-ins that let you quickly and easily apply all manner of textures, edge treatments, special effects, and other image manipulations to the images you edit in Photoshop.

The latest Photoshop version has an improved way to review images on your disk, an upgrade to an earlier program called *Bridge*, which is a standalone application (used with all the Creative Suite applications) that you can open without powering up Photoshop.

### *The bad news*

Photoshop doesn't do natural media well; that is, it has trouble mimicking various types and styles of brushes, charcoal, pens, and other tools needed to paint original images. For that, you need Corel Painter. In fact, many graphics pros own both, using Photoshop for color correcting and retouching and using Painter for creative brushwork.

Photoshop's \$650 list price has to go into the bad news column. Photoshop can also develop into a money pit. Serious Photoshop users have a thirst for plug-ins, which can each cost as much as, say, Paint Shop Pro. Although Photoshop comes with more than 100 plug-ins, you can never be too rich, too thin, or have too many filters for your image editor.

Don't downplay your investment in time required to figure out how to use Photoshop. Although you can pick up the basics in a few weeks, if you really want to master every nuance and trick, be prepared to spend even more time. There's a good reason why a search for Photoshop books on Amazon.com returns more than a thousand results. Hundreds of authors who had to figure out how to use this application are eager to share their knowledge with you. You probably need to buy two or three of the best books and read them thoroughly to master the basics and most common shortcuts.

One of the most comprehensive books on the market is *Photoshop CS3 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies*, by Barbara Obermeier (Wiley).

Finally, Photoshop is definitely not a program you can use once a month. You can invest all that time figuring out how to use it, and then forget half of what you know if you don't work with the application on a weekly basis. Photoshop is a commitment.

## *Adobe Photoshop Elements*

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

Adobe Photoshop Elements is a powerful junior version of the full Photoshop program. Elements has most of the functionality, but it lacks some of the features that the average photographer might be able to get along without. At about \$100, it's more affordable, too.

Elements, as shown in Figure 11-2, shares much of the same user interface with Photoshop. Although it's missing a few features that Adobe deems professional, such as Layer Masks and CMYK editing, Elements includes most of the basic image-editing tools that the typical digital photographer needs on a



regular basis. That includes image-selection tools, retouching tools, painting tools, a generous assortment of filters, and the ability to expand those filters by accepting the same Photoshop plug-ins as its sibling program.

### The good news

A price tag of \$100 puts Elements within the reach of anyone, and its reduced feature set is a good match for the needs of the typical digital photographer. Most of the standard selection, retouching, and painting tools from Photoshop are available in Elements. If your image-editing needs revolve around retouching and manipulating individual pictures one at a time, you'll probably never miss the more advanced Photoshop features.



The automated commands on the Enhance menu make quick work of common image-editing tasks, such as adjusting backlighting or color cast. As a result, an occasional user working with Elements can complete those tasks faster and more accurately than a seasoned graphics pro working with Photoshop.

Elements also makes a good introduction to Photoshop for people who plan to upgrade someday. After you master this program, you can transfer much of what you know directly to Photoshop. You make filters, most kinds of selections, and basic tonal and color corrections in much the same way in both applications.

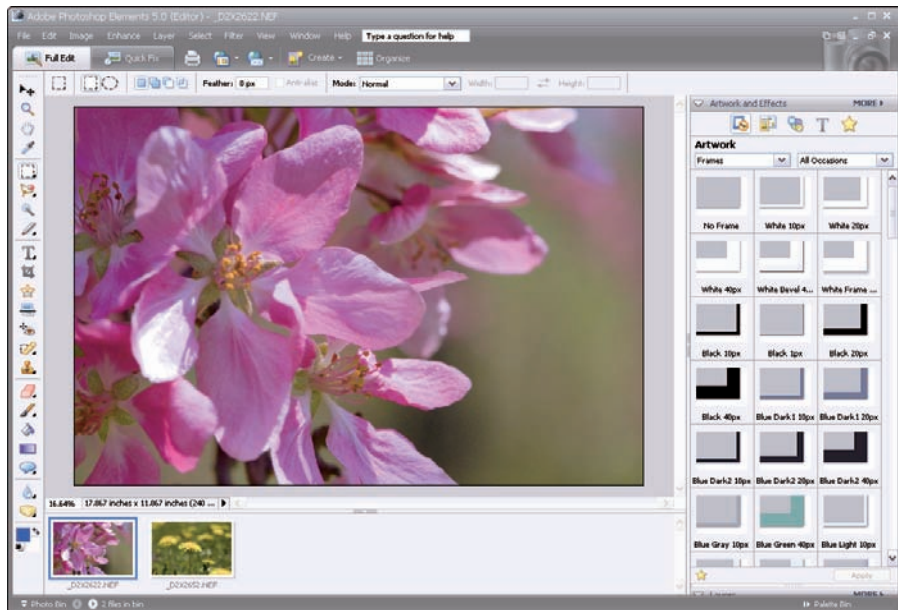


Figure 11-2: Photoshop Elements at work.

### *The bad news*

Compared to the most basic non-Adobe image editors, Elements can be a bit daunting. The similarity to Photoshop works against you if you're a total image-editing neophyte because the menus and palettes bear more similarity to Photoshop than they do to less ambitious programs. Even so, dSLR photographers probably wouldn't be happy with the simplest image editors, anyway, so the "easy, but not *that* easy" interface of Elements doesn't offer much of a downside.

The other downside is Adobe's tendency to introduce new features for Elements in its Windows version first, with the Macintosh upgrade following months later. Some features are available only in the Windows edition.

### *Corel Photo-Paint*

[www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com)

Corel Photo-Paint is one of *four* image editors theoretically available from graphics-giant Corel. The company's product line is often in a state of flux, and I can't promise that Photo-Paint or its stablemates, Corel Painter, Corel PaintShop, and Ulead PhotoImpact, will all remain available (or under those names) for the life of this book. I'll do the best I can to describe your available options from Corel, starting with Photo-Paint.

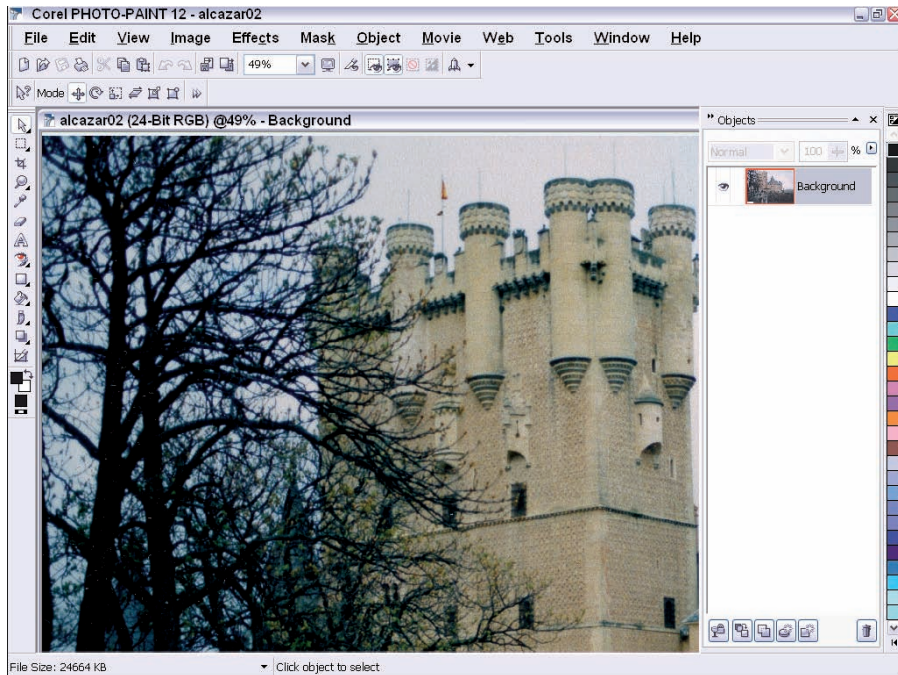
*Photo-Paint*, in its revamped Photo-Paint Image Adjustment Lab incarnation, is the image-editing program that is included in the popular CorelDRAW Graphics Suite. Various versions of this program are available for both PCs and the Mac, although the Mac version is several releases behind and might be difficult to locate.

Photo-Paint, as shown in Figure 11-3, is a reasonably full-featured photo-retouching and image-editing program. Although its feature set can't match the full version of Photoshop, Photo-Paint stands solidly among a second tier of products that deliver a large portion of Photoshop's functionality for a relatively small portion of that program's price.

Photo-Paint offers a full set of selection, retouching, and painting tools for manual image manipulations. It also includes convenient automated commands for a few common tasks, such as red-eye removal. Photo-Paint accepts Photoshop plug-ins to expand its assortment of filters and special effects.

### *The good news*

Corel Photo-Paint is a respectable product as a standalone image editor. However, its greatest strength is its integration with CorelDRAW and the rest of the Corel Graphics Suite. If you use CorelDRAW to create and edit graphics, you've probably got Photo-Paint installed on your computer, and you'll feel right at home using the product. All the Photo-Paint menus, dialog boxes, and palettes behave just as they do in CorelDRAW.



**Figure 11-3:** Corel Photo-Paint comes with the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.

### *The bad news*

Photo-Paint is available only as part of the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite. At \$400, CorelDRAW Graphics Suite is a good value, provided you need the main CorelDRAW program and any of the other components of the suite. However, \$400 is a lot to pay for Photo-Paint alone, especially because other image editors are available for around \$100.

### *Corel Paint Shop Pro*

[www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com)

Paint Shop Pro (PSP) is the next-to-last image-editing program to join the Corel fold. The company that originated it, Jasc, is no more. PSP is a general-purpose image editor that has gained a reputation as the “poor man’s Photoshop” for providing a substantial portion of Photoshop’s capabilities at a fraction of the cost. The program lists for about \$100, but you can often find it for sale at a substantial discount.



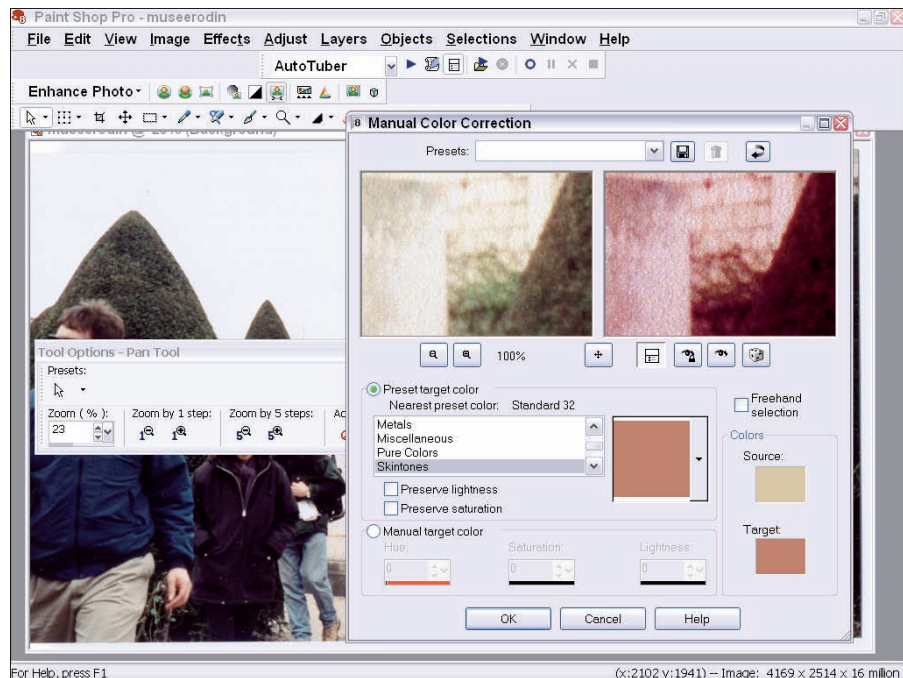
This Windows-only program features a fairly complete tool kit that includes selection, painting, and retouching tools for direct manipulation of your images. It also offers a sizable collection of wizard-like commands that automate common tasks, such as removing red eye and scratches. Paint Shop Pro, as shown in Figure 11-4, includes a nice assortment of filters and effects, and you can expand that assortment by adding almost any of the Photoshop plug-ins.

### The good news



Paint Shop Pro originated as a shareware program, but was so good that it eventually became a thriving retail product. It's been around for more than a decade and has had plenty of time to evolve and mature into a robust, easy-to-use product. Indeed, many people rate PSP as the easiest to use of the general-purpose image editors, and it's among the lowest priced programs in its class.

Paint Shop Pro supports layers, which enable you to achieve some fairly sophisticated editing effects. This is a surprising capability in such a low-cost image editor.



**Figure 11-4:** Paint Shop Pro has many of the features found in Photoshop.

### *The bad news*

The breadth and depth of the Paint Shop Pro feature set is a little uneven. The program shows surprising depth in some areas, such as the availability of layers, and shallowness in others, such as the limited choice of selection and paint tools. Also, some tools (such as the Histogram Adjustment command) require more knowledge and experience to use effectively than do the corresponding tools in some of the other editors.

Evaluate the program carefully to determine whether its particular strengths and weaknesses are a good match for the mix of work you need to do.

### *Corel Painter*

[www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com)



Corel's third image-editing program is Painter, which continues to be popular among photographers and artists because of its ability to create content from scratch. As such, it might not be your favorite application for retouching your digital pictures, but if you need to paint something on an existing image with a fuzzy brush soaked in oil paints, this is your baby, and this baby works for both PCs and Macs.

Painter, as shown in Figure 11-5, is adept at re-creating in digital form a wide range of traditional artist media, such as charcoal, pastels, and various kinds of paint. Painter includes a basic assortment of tools that you can use to edit existing images, but the program is really designed for artists to use in creating original illustrations.

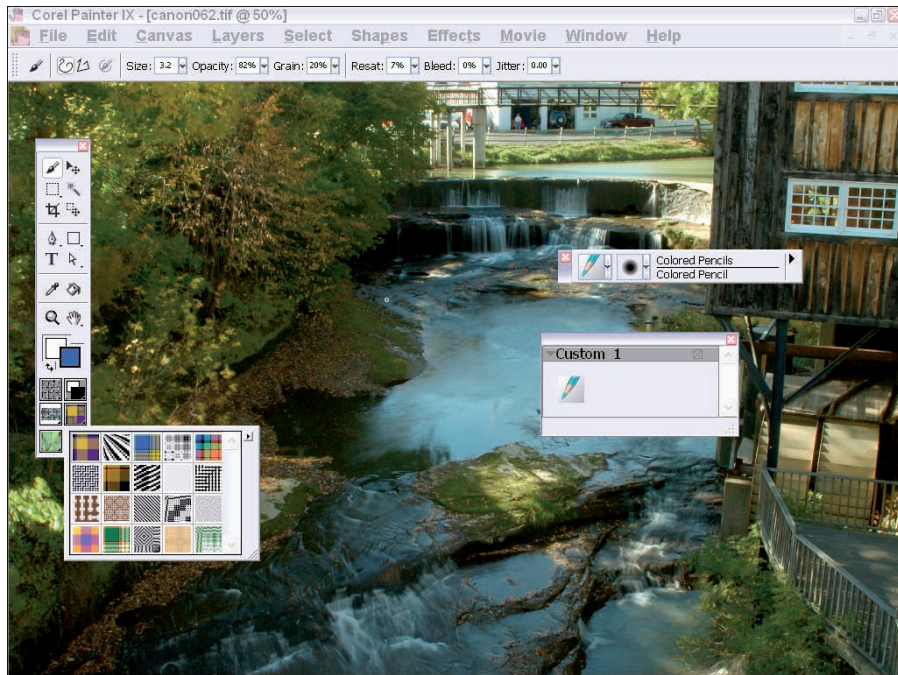
### *The good news*

Painter's natural media effects are incredible. Some other programs allow you to select different paintbrush tools and adjust their color, size, edge softness, and a few other attributes. But Painter takes the concept of brush effects to a whole new level.

In Painter, you can define not only the characteristics of the brush, but the texture of the paper or canvas, the thickness of the paint on the brush, and how the paint, brush, and paper interact. As a result, the program can realistically simulate the very different effects of a watercolor wash on hot-press paper, oil on canvas, pastels on a sanded board, or any of a huge assortment of other media/material combinations. Painter comes with a large inventory of predefined brushes and art materials, which you can use or modify to suit your artistic impulse. With the right settings, you can even watch the digital paint drip and run.



A pressure-sensitive graphics tablet is almost a must with this program.



**Figure 11-5:** An image being edited in Painter.

### *The bad news*

Expect to be confused the first time you work with Painter. Its bewildering array of palettes have options that allow you to exercise precise control over each brush stroke. Just finding where each feature or palette is located can be a challenge, and working your way through the various options each time you want to do something can be tedious. When you gain experience with the program, it becomes easier to use, but figuring out how to use Painter effectively takes no small amount of time and commitment. This isn't a program that lends itself to occasional, casual use.

Painter's image-editing capabilities are more attuned to the needs of an artist who wants to incorporate part of an existing image in a new composite than they are to routine image enhancements and corrections. If you're looking for a digital darkroom where you can crop, correct color, and repair your digital photographs before printing, look elsewhere.

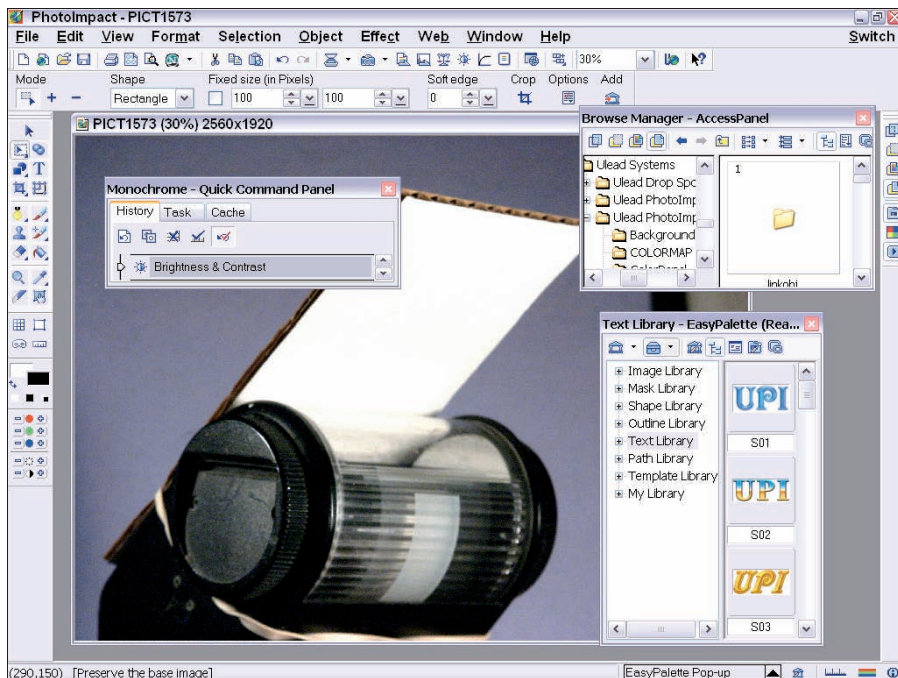
At about \$300 (for the downloadable version), Painter is somewhat expensive. You probably wouldn't want to buy it just to fool around with it. If you need this program's capabilities, though, \$300 can be a bargain.

## Ulead PhotoImpact

www.corel.com

In the last edition of this book, I announced that Ulead PhotoImpact, as shown in Figure 11-6, was unique in that it was just about the only general-purpose image-editing program that hasn't been acquired by another company. That's no longer true, as this useful application has finally fallen before the Corel hegemony. In longevity terms alone, PhotoImpact deserves a look. For more than a decade, it's been on the market as a Windows-only program and has a particularly strong palette of features.

PhotoImpact includes a full assortment of brushes for painting, retouching, and cloning in addition to the expected selection, cropping, and fill tools. It also offers tools for text and vector shapes, as well as tools for creating slices and image maps for use on the Web. PhotoImpact supports layers and includes a generous collection of effects filters, which you can expand with Photoshop plug-ins. Auto-process commands are available to automate many of the most common image-correction and image-enhancement tasks.



**Figure 11-6:** PhotoImpact offers Photoshop versatility for less than \$100.



### The good news

Price! Like Paint Shop Pro, PhotoImpact offers a lot of what you get in Photoshop but for less than \$100 (Corel currently lists it at \$89.99). It's also a good tool for repetitive operations, although the PhotoImpact batch and auto-process tools are no match for the Photoshop Actions. Still, you can select multiple image files and then apply any one of a long list of filters, enhancements, or auto-process commands to all the selected files.

PhotoImpact also includes some specialized features for creating Web graphics, including wizards that lead you through creating Web backgrounds, banners, and buttons. Its image-optimization features are good for people who would otherwise use ImageReady or Fireworks.

### The bad news

I find the PhotoImpact user interface odd and inconsistent, and some features feel more like add-on modules than built-in components.

## Workflow Workarounds

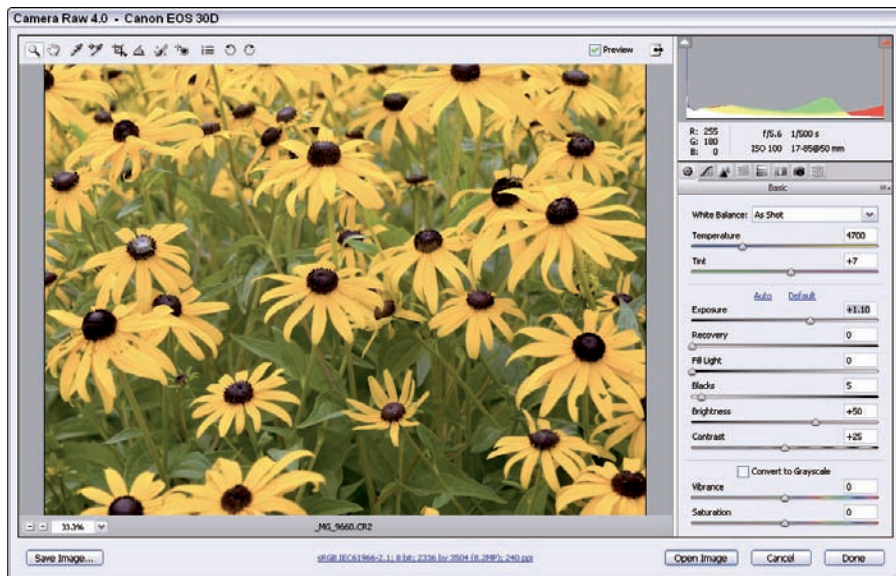
Regardless of what image editor you end up with, as a digital SLR owner, you need to establish a mysterious set of protocols, or a workflow, before you get down to serious business. A *workflow* is nothing more than the order in which you perform all the various tasks associated with image editing under particular circumstances. You can easily have one workflow that you use for sports photography (because you're shooting tons of JPEG images at a healthy clip and don't want to waste a lot of time in post-processing) and another for landscape photography (which might require fine-tuning of RAW images to retain detail and subtle tones).

At the very least, *think* about your workflow and establish some guidelines for yourself, if only because all your photographer friends will be asking you what your workflow is in a given situation, and if you don't have a good answer ready, you'll look like a (lowercase) dummy.

A well-planned workflow can actually save you some time because you aren't reinventing wheels every time you work on a photographic project that's similar to one you've already mastered. The key elements of a typical workflow proceed along these lines:

- ✓ **Getting your photos from your camera to your computer.** Will you be using a USB cable (fine for small numbers of photos) or a card reader (probably better for larger numbers of images)? Are your photos located on an external hard drive, such as a PSD (personal storage device) used for backing up images in the field or on vacations? Are you copying *all* the photos on your memory card or only some of them?

- ✓ **Processing on-route.** If you're using a photo transfer program, such as the one provided with Photoshop Elements, you can select from a few options for processing your images during the actual transfer to your computer. For example, you can rename the image files automatically (from, say, DSC\_0488 . . . to DisneyWorld0001 . . . and so on). Some transfer programs can look for and remove red-eye effects automatically as well.
- ✓ **Destination location.** Where do you put your photos on your hard drive? Do you separate them into folders with chronological names and dates? Do they go into folders arranged by project? Are all your flower or football photos dumped into folders arranged by subject matter? This point in your workflow can help determine how easily you can locate a particular image at a later date.
- ✓ **RAW conversion.** If you shoot RAW files, do you run everything through a RAW converter, such as Adobe Camera Raw (see Figure 11-7), creating, say, TIFF or JPEG files, at the time the photos are transferred? Or do you just dump the RAW files and convert them when you're ready to edit a particular photo? Do you plan to convert files one at a time or in batches? Will you use (or need) preset settings to perform similar adjustments on images shot at the same time?
- ✓ **Image editor workflow.** You have lots of options after a photo is imported to your image editor. The order in which you crop photos, adjust color, make tonal changes, and apply sharpening can be important. Do you save a copy with all its layers before you "flatten" an image to produce the "final" version?



**Figure 11-7:** RAW conversion is an important part of your digital workflow.

- ✓ **Backing up your images.** How and when do you create backup images? Do you back up everything, or just original files and modified files? Do you copy images to a spare hard drive, a DVD, or some other media? How *many* DVD copies is enough for perfect safety? Where do you store your backups?



Workflow considerations inside — and outside — your image editor can be quite complex and include many more factors than those I've listed here. But, in any case, a little planning never hurts.

## Fixing Your Photos

You can manipulate your photos in two different ways: by fixing anything seen as a defect without really changing the content extensively, or by combining and reorganizing images in more drastic ways. I show you the basics of combining and reorganizing (which includes *compositing*, or melding several different images or parts of images) in Chapter 12. In the following sections, I stick with the techniques for making repairs and fixes.

The most common fixes for digital photos fall into five categories:

- ✓ **Cropping:** As you discover in Chapter 10, you can often improve a photo just by removing items that don't belong or that distract from the composition. *Cropping* — adjusting the borders of an image — is the easiest way to do this.
- ✓ **Tonal adjustments:** Your images might be too bright or too dark, or worse, include some parts that are too dark and others that are too light. Although your dSLR includes features that let you make some adjustments for tone (including specialized tonal settings called *custom curves*), frequently these adjustments are easier to make with an image editor.
- ✓ **Color correction:** If your colors are off, you can usually fix them in your image editor. If your colors are accurate, you might want to *make* them seem off as a creative effect. You can do both with your editor.
- ✓ **Spot removal:** Your dSLR shots might have a variety of different spots and artifacts that need to be removed. A dirty sensor can produce dust spots on pristine images. Perhaps birds in the sky off in the distance are too small to look like anything other than blotches. Your subject might have a small scratch or defect. You need an image editor to touch up these spots.
- ✓ **Sharpening/blurring:** You can change the emphasis within your composition by selectively sharpening or blurring parts of the picture. You can also salvage a shot that isn't quite sharp enough with a little sharpening, or smooth out rough texture with blurring.



The following tips apply specifically to Photoshop; your image editor can perform the same tasks, but it might use different commands.

## Cropping

If you know anything about composition, you know that images can often be vastly improved with some judicious trimming. Figure 11-8 shows you what I mean. At first glance, it appears to be a photo of a powerful jet fighter climbing into the sky at dusk, possibly preparing to attack an enemy in a dogfight. When I show people this photo, they often ask whether I took it from the air or perhaps from the ground with a very long telephoto lens.

The answer lies in the uncropped version of the photo, as shown in Figure 11-9. (Please don't feel cheated by the mundane origins of this picture!) As you can see, it's a photo of an old jet mounted on concrete pylons on the front lawn of a high school in my area (nickname: Aviators). I loved the plane, but I found that it was difficult to get a good angle. So, I shot a picture anyway, darkened it a little to make the image look more dramatic, cropped the image tightly, and trimmed out some utility wires to produce a much more exciting view.



**Figure 11-8:** Cropping tightens a composition and adds drama.





**Figure 11-9:** The original shot is slightly less inspiring!

Photoshop gives you several ways to crop a picture. Here are some of the fastest and most versatile:

- ✓ **Create a rectangular marquee around the part you want to crop to and then choose Image → Crop.** Photoshop trims off everything outside the selection marquee.
- ✓ **Draw around the area you want to crop with *any* line-oriented selection tool, including the Lasso, Polygonal Lasso, and Magnetic Lasso.** The area specified doesn't even have to be remotely rectangular in shape (see Figure 11-10). However, a cropped rectangle *is* what you end up with. Photoshop crops to the smallest rectangle that includes the entire image within your selection, as you can see in Figure 11-11. For details on using these Lasso tools, see Chapter 12.



If the image you want to preserve is included inside a border that's roughly the same tone, such as a picture frame surrounding a photo hanging on a wall, you might be able to select that border with the Magic Wand and then reverse the selection with Ctrl+Shift+I (⌘+Shift+I on the Mac) and crop to the image that's now selected.

- ✓ **Use the Crop tool.** The Crop tool is probably the best choice because it allows you to adjust the borders of the selection individually before making the crop.

To use the Crop tool, follow these instructions:

1. **Select the Crop tool (press C to make it active or select it from the Tool Palette).**
2. **Drag a selection that roughly includes the area in the cropped image.**

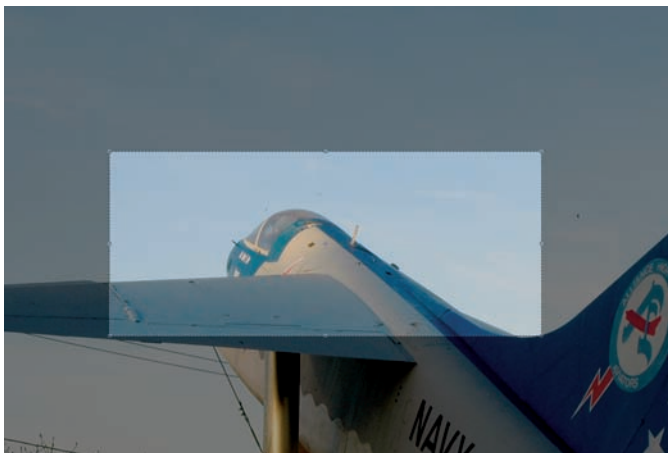
3. Grab the handles on the top, bottom, or side selection borders and move in or out to adjust the cropping exactly the way you want.

Notice that the area outside the crop selection darkens, making it easier for you to visualize the final picture, as shown in Figure 11-11.

4. Press Enter (Return on the Mac) to apply the crop to your image.



**Figure 11-10:** I made a selection with the Lasso tool, and Photoshop kindly cropped to the selection for me.



**Figure 11-11:** The Crop tool allows you to precisely specify the crop borders.

## Fixing murky or contrasty photos

Tonal adjustments are another fix that you'll frequently want to make. Digital SLRs have the ability to capture a broad range of tones, called a *dynamic range*. That lets you capture detail in dark shadows as well as bright highlights. Unfortunately, many scenes have a dynamic range that's too long for even the best digital sensors. When that happens, you might end up with pictures that have lots of detail in the shadow areas, but the highlights are washed out (or *blown* in digital parlance).

If an exposure captures highlight detail, your shadows might be murky. Indeed, some DSLRs are programmed to deliberately produce this murky effect, on the theory that it's easier to retrieve underexposed information in shadows that are dark, but not completely black, than it is to regain detail in highlights that have gone completely white.

Some images might have a very limited range of tones, including whites, some intermediate grays and colors, and blacks, but lacking the other in-between tones. These images are said to be *high contrast*. Others are rather bland-looking, with lots of individual tones spread throughout the image, but few true blacks or whites. Such images are said to be *low contrast*. The problem doesn't always lie with your camera: The lighting in your scene might be too contrasty or too low in contrast to render the scene attractively.



If your images are high or low in contrast, or are simply too dark or too light, you might be able to fix the problem in Photoshop or another image editor.

As you might expect, Photoshop has several tools that can help you. Some work well, but others are atrocious or intended only for beginners. In the following list, I run through all the tools so you know which traps to avoid:

- ✓ **The “auto” tools:** Photoshop includes two tools, Auto Levels and Auto Contrast (choose Image⇨Adjustments). They can analyze your photo and correct the brightness, contrast, and tonal values for you. These tools have no idea what kind of effect you're going for, so the results might or might not please you.
- ✓ **The Brightness/Contrast controls:** Also on the Image menu is a deceptively simple set of sliders that allow you to brighten or darken everything in an image or change the contrast of the entire image. Originally, this tool was problematic because you very seldom want to apply that sort of adjustment uniformly to every pixel in an image. Lighten the shadows with the Brightness slider, and you probably made the highlights *too* light. Slide the control to the left, and your too-light highlights turn an ugly gray while your shadows turn black. You could expect the same poor overall results with the Contrast slider. However, Photoshop CS3

made this pair of controls considerably smarter. The Brightness/Contrast controls now work proportionately, so you can change the amount of detail in the highlights and shadows without affecting all the other tones. If you'd prefer to use the "bad old" tool, mark the Legacy box in the dialog box to return to Photoshop's old behavior.

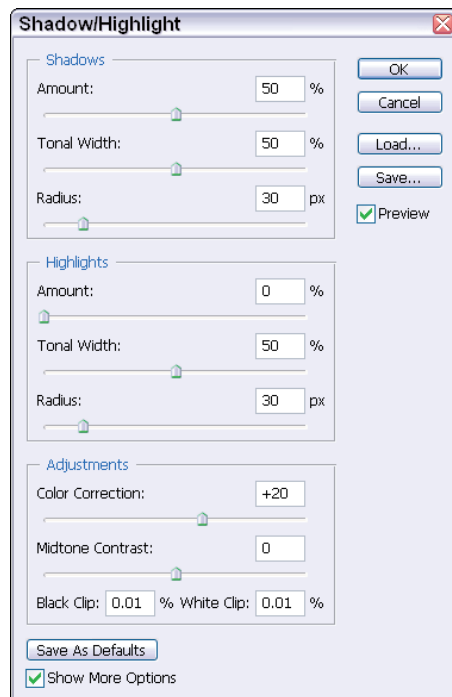
- ✓ **The Shadow/Highlight controls:** These controls are a more intuitive way of doing what the Brightness slider should have done all along. They let you adjust the brightness of the shadows and highlights individually by using a dialog box like the one shown in Figure 11-12. This one's a keeper, and I explain it in more detail in the next section.
- ✓ **Levels:** The Levels dialog box lets you specify how tones are distributed in your image. I explain this one later in the chapter, too.
- ✓ **Curves:** The Curves dialog box gives you full control over the tones in your image. Stay tuned for more on this.

### *Working with the Shadow/Highlight controls*

When you activate this dialog box, it defaults to settings suitable for fixing images that have been backlit, with the shadows much too dark. The Shadow slider will be at 50 percent, and the Highlight slider at 0 percent. If you've selected the Show More Options check box, you see the full dialog box, as shown in Figure 11-12.

The full dialog box has three areas: one for shadows, one for highlights, and one for adjustments. The Shadow and Highlights areas have the same three sliders. Here's how you can use each one to fix contrast in an image:

- ✓ **Amount:** This is the degree of change to be applied. A higher number equals a more drastic application of the tonal change.
- ✓ **Tonal Width:** This represents the number of tones, from the 256 different tonal levels in the image, that are affected. For example, if you set Tonal Width to 25 percent, one quarter of the 256 tones (64 tones) are



**Figure 11-12:** The Shadow/Highlight controls allow you to adjust tonal areas individually.



modified. A value of 50 percent affects 128 tones and produces a more pronounced change.

The best way to decide what value to use is to watch your image while you move the slider. Use a small value to brighten only the very darkest shadow areas or to darken only the lightest highlight areas. Increase the value to brighten more of the dark areas or darken more of the highlights. Don't use very large values or you end up with glowing haloes at the boundaries between the shadows and highlights.

- ✓ **Radius:** The Radius slider helps Photoshop determine what should be considered a highlight pixel and what should be considered a shadow pixel. Ordinarily, the control examines each pixel's neighbor to make this determination. Increasing the Radius value enlarges the size of the neighborhood so that more pixels are counted as highlight or shadow pixels rather than middle-tone pixels (which are *not* affected by the Shadow/Highlight control). Monitor your preview image to see whether you're getting the effect you want.

The third area of the dialog box, the Adjustments area, controls other parameters. These include

- ✓ **Color Correction:** This isn't a color-correction tool as much as it's a way of compensating for color shifts that occur when you're fiddling with the tonal controls. Use it to remove these casts.
- ✓ **Midtone Contrast:** Although the shadow and highlight controls adjust only the darkest and lightest areas, this slider lets you apply some fine-tuning to the middle tones.
- ✓ **Black and White Clipping:** Use these controls to increase contrast intentionally by dropping (or *clipping*) a desired percentage of black or white tones from your image.

### Working with levels

The Photoshop Levels dialog box allows you to control the tonal values of an image much more precisely than you can with the Shadow/Highlight controls. Most good Photoshop books have a whole chapter on using levels, but I can provide a good introduction.

The Levels dialog box shows a *histogram* graph, which is very similar to the histogram you can view on the LCD (liquid crystal display) of your dSLR after you've taken a shot. Your camera histogram shows you only whether all the tones are being captured, and you can do little other than adjust exposure up or down, or perhaps make a tonal setting change in your camera's menus. The one in the Levels dialog box (choose Image⇨Adjustments⇨Levels) actually lets you change the tonal values.

As you might know, a histogram is a graph that shows the relative number of pixels at each of 256 brightness levels. The more pixels at a particular brightness, the higher the bar at that level. Histograms provide a mountain-range-type curve, like the one shown in Figure 11-13, with most of the tones usually distributed in the middle and fewer trailing off toward the dark tones (left side of the graph) and light tones (right side).

The objective of the Levels command is to avoid wasting any of the 256 possible tones that can be represented. You do that by moving a trio of triangular sliders at the bottom of the graph:

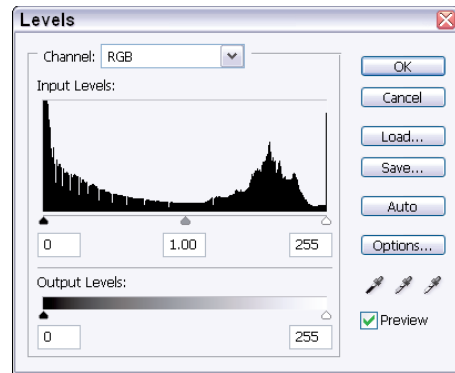
- ✓ Move the black triangle to the right until it touches the edge of the black tones actually present in the image, as shown in the graph.
- ✓ Move the white triangle to the left until it touches the edge of the actual white tones.
- ✓ You can move the middle gray triangle to lighten or darken the overall image by adjusting the midtone position.

If you remember these basics, you can improve your images significantly without understanding the additional fine-tuning capabilities of the Levels dialog box. Should you want to spread your wings and discover more, I recommend *Photoshop CS3 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies* by Barbara Obermeier (Wiley).

### Working with curves

If the Levels dialog box is worth a chapter or two, the Curves dialog box, as shown in Figure 11-14, is worth an entire book! That's particularly true because Adobe smartened up the Curves command for Photoshop CS3, providing new automatic presets that can bend tones for you and adding displays of histogram, clipping, and other information.

Curves are a way of changing the highlights, midtones, and shadows entirely independently. They allow you to change the values of pixels at any point along the brightness-level continuum, giving you, in effect, 256 locations at which you can make corrections.



**Figure 11-13:** The Levels dialog box provides more precise tonal control.

The Curves dialog box includes a two-dimensional graph, with the horizontal axis mapping the brightness values as they are before you make image corrections. The vertical axis maps the brightness values after correction. By default, the lower-left corner of the graph represents pure black (0,0), and the upper-right corner represents pure white (255,255). When you open the dialog box, the graph begins as a straight line because, unless changes are made, the input is exactly the same as the output, forming a direct 1:1 correlation. When you change the shape of the curve, you change the values in the image at each point within the curve.



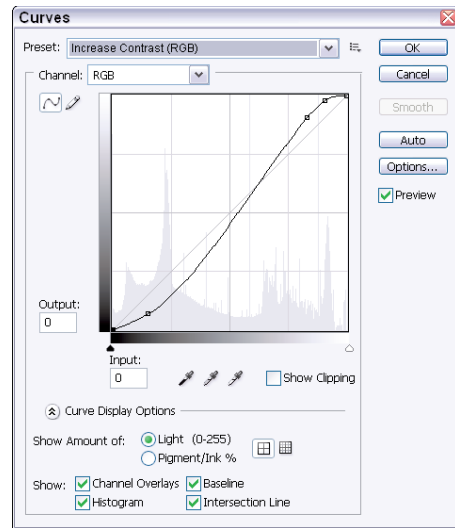
The best way to see what this tool can do is to play with it (press Ctrl+M on a PC or ⌘+M on a Mac to access the dialog box) or try out some of the preset curves to see how they affect your image. After you've been using Photoshop for a while, you begin to see how curves can provide the precise control you need over tonal values.

## Correcting those colors

Sometimes, despite the best intentions and competent technique, you end up with pictures that have bad color. Perhaps the picture has a green color cast caused by fluorescent lights, or it has too much red because you took it late in the day. Fortunately, image editors, such as Photoshop, let you fix these. Lots of tools are at your disposal. Some are easy to use, but others take a little practice.



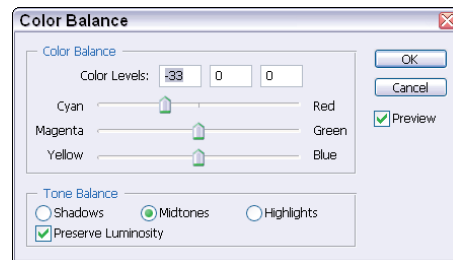
Before you get started, keep in mind that you can't add color that isn't there in the first place. If your image is way too red, you can't compensate by adding its opposite color (cyan). Image editors work by *subtracting* hues. So, if your picture is dominated by red and has very little green or blue, when you remove the excess red, you don't end up with a correctly balanced image. You wind up with a picture that's grayish because a little bit of red, blue, and green are all that's left.



**Figure 11-14:** Curves allow controlling tonal values at 256 different brightness points in your image.

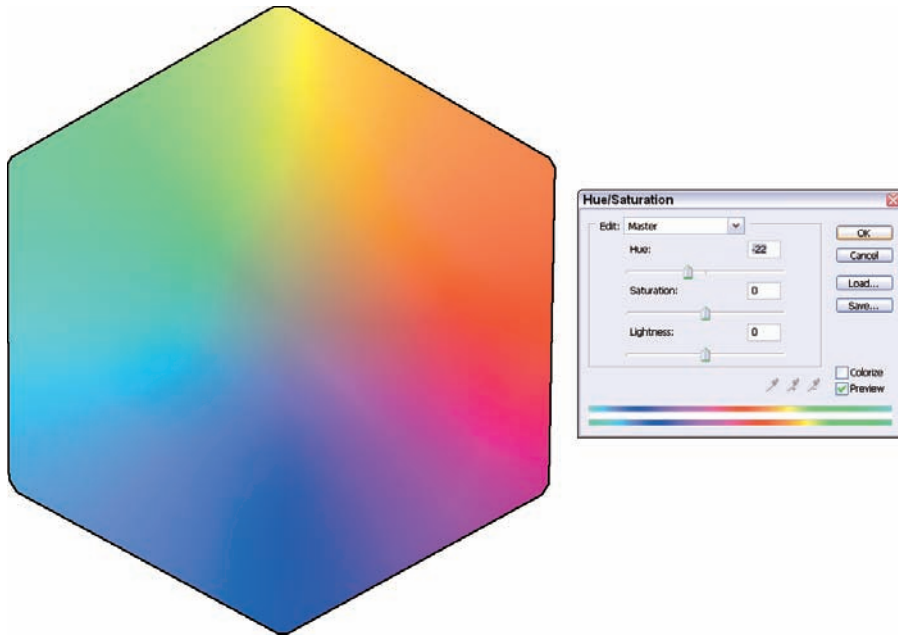
Photoshop's color-correcting tools include the following:

- ✓ **Auto Color:** This is another one of those pesky “auto” controls that uses Photoshop's guesswork to provide a possible correction to your color problems, but most likely, the correction isn't what you want.
- ✓ **Color Balance:** The Color Balance sliders (press Ctrl+B on a PC or ⌘+B on a Mac) let you seemingly add red, green, or blue while subtracting their complements (cyan, magenta, and yellow). You can use the sliders while viewing your image to make color corrections. Of course, as I note earlier, you can't really add a color to an image; the dialog box's operation is just an easier-to-understand representation of what's really going on. That is, when you move the Red/Cyan slider to the right, Photoshop actually is subtracting cyan. Move it to the left (to “add” cyan) and you're really subtracting red. If you understand what's going on, you aren't really fooled, but you don't mind, either. The same thing takes place when you adjust the Magenta/Green and Yellow/Blue sliders. The Color Balance dialog box, as shown in Figure 11-15, allows you to apply these color changes to the highlights, midtones, and shadows.
- ✓ **Hue/Saturation:** This control (press Ctrl+U on a PC or ⌘+U on a Mac) changes color by using different components than the standard color balance tools use. Instead of modifying the primary colors of light, it adjusts the overall color of the image (*hue*), how pure or rich the colors are (*saturation*), and the lightness or brightness of the color. Moving the Hue slider rotates the color clockwise or counterclockwise around the edges of the color wheel, as shown in Figure 11-16, but *not* displayed in the dialog box. The Saturation slider adds richness, turning a muted pink into a deep rose or dark red, for example. The Brightness slider controls the overall luminosity of the image and is generally less used.
- ✓ **Variations:** The Variations dialog box gives you a way to compare different color and darkness alternatives for an image. You get to choose the one that looks best, as you can see in Figure 11-17.
- ✓ **Curves:** I've come full-circle to the Curves tool again. You can use this complex tool for more than adjusting basic (grayscale) tonal values. You can actually control the tonal rendition of each of the primary colors in an image. Using the Curves tool in this way usually requires a lot of experience unless you're very adventuresome.

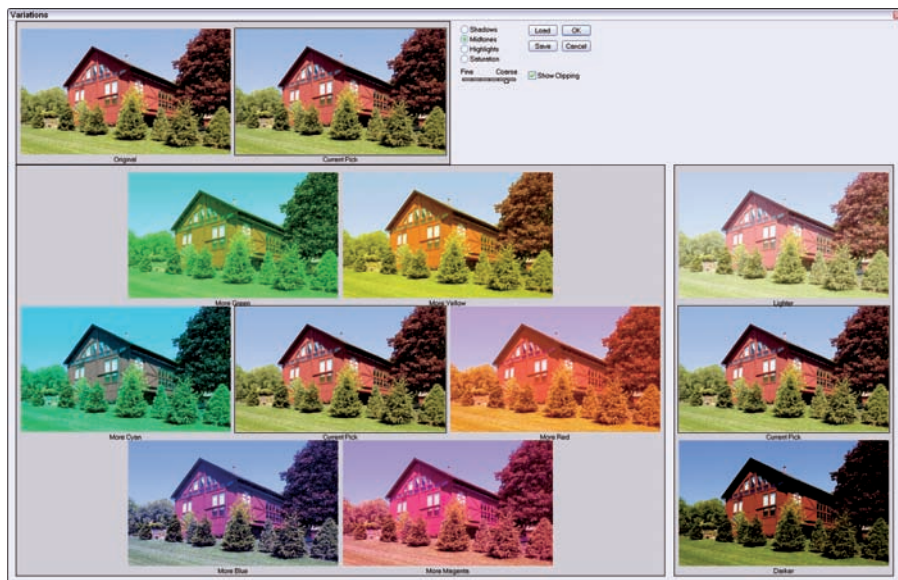


**Figure 11-15:** Change color by subtracting red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, or yellow.





**Figure 11-16:** Hue, saturation, and brightness can be controlled separately with this dialog box.



**Figure 11-17:** The Variations dialog box lets you choose the best rendition from a selection of versions.

Use whichever combination of color-correction tools works for you. They all have particular advantages and disadvantages.

### *Spot removers*

Unwanted artifacts in your image might not be arty, but they are facts. Your job, should you choose to accept it, is to remove them. Several different causes of spots, speckles, and other naughty bits (and bytes) are in your images, and Photoshop has the tools to remove them. In the following sections, I offer an overview of how to use these tools.

### *Reducing noise*

A little noise in your image can be a good thing. Noise can add an artsy, grainy effect and serve to add some texture to an annoyingly smooth surface. Indeed, detractors of one particular brand of digital SLR say that the remarkably noise-free results produced by that camera look plasticky. I'm not going to mention the particular camera model because the rebels who prefer that brand see this lack of noise as a definite advantage.



This little tidbit isn't widely known among digital photographers who don't have a graphics-production background: One advantage of noise is that a little noise actually makes smooth gradients reproduce better because of the way press equipment and the halftoning process operate. Now you know.

However, for most folks, noise is unwanted. You can often prevent it by using your dSLR's noise reduction feature. But what do you do if noise turns up in your captured image?

You're in luck! Photoshop CS3 includes a Reduce Noise plug-in, found by choosing **Filters** ⇨ **Noise**. The dialog box, as shown in Figure 11-18, has four main sliders. You can specify the strength of the noise reduction, whether noise reduction should be done at the expense of image detail, how much to tone down the colored speckles that are endemic in most noisy images, and whether the remaining details should be sharpened after the noise has been removed. You can also have the tool search for and remove defects caused by JPEG compression. In Advanced mode, you can access a second tab that allows you to specify the noise reduction by color channel, which is useful because some channels, such as green, might be more prone to noise than others.

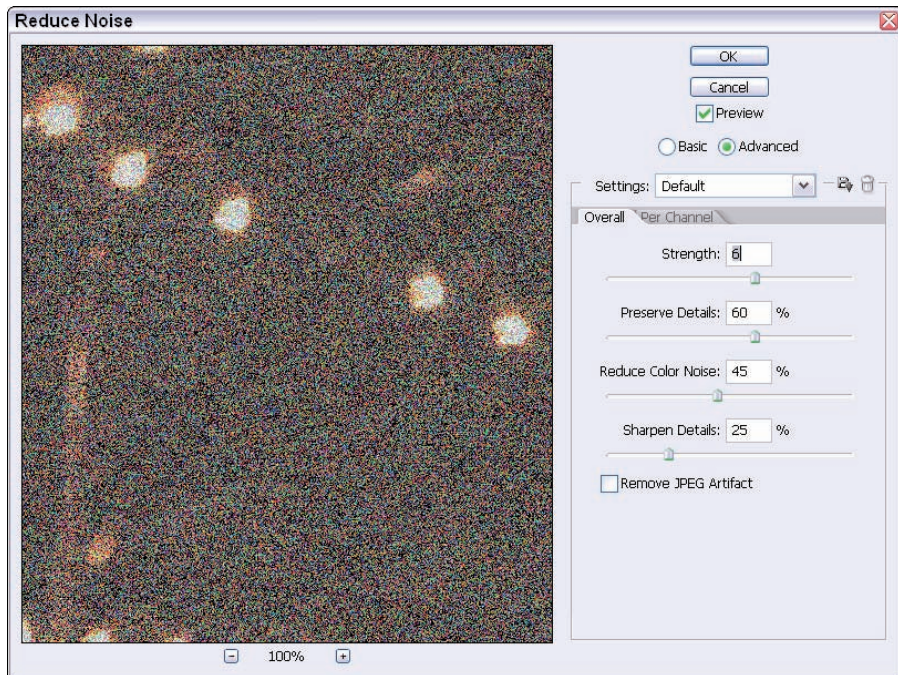
### *Spotsylmania*

Photoshop gives you several ways of eliminating other kinds of spots, scratches, and so forth. These include filters, like

- ✔ **Despeckle:** This filter looks for areas of great contrast in your image because such areas are likely to be edges. Then, it blurs the non-edges, making any spots and speckles less obvious. Because the edges are still sharp, your image still might look relatively sharp. This filter works best with images that are sharp in the first place but plagued with artifacts, and it's less effective with images that are already somewhat blurry. It's a good tool for eliminating halftone dots, too.
- ✔ **Dust & Scratches:** This filter actively hunts through your image for spots. It includes two sliders: a Radius slider that lets you specify the size of the area around a potential spot to be searched, and a Threshold slider that determines how distinct a spot must be before it is considered a defect.

### *Send in the Clone Stamp*

The Clone Stamp tool is useful for removing spots and other defects by copying a portion of the surrounding pixels, which should have a similar color and texture, over the ailing portion of your image.



**Figure 11-18:** Reduce noise with a filter in Photoshop CS3.

To use the Clone tool, follow these steps:



1. **Choose the Clone tool from the Tool Palette or press S to make it active.**
2. **In the Option bar, choose a brush of an appropriate size from the Brush drop-down list.**

A soft-edged brush is usually best.

3. **If you want to gently copy over the area to be fixed and blend the pixels more evenly, set the Opacity slider on the Option bar to less than 100 percent.**

Anything from 25 percent to 90 percent works well.

4. **Make sure the Aligned check box is selected in the Option bar.**

This lets you stop and start the cloning process while retaining the same positional relationship with the origin point you choose in the next step. When Aligned isn't selected, each time you begin cloning again, the origin point goes back to the original location.

5. **Place the cursor in an area near the portion you want to copy over. Hold down the Alt key (Option key on the Mac) and click in that area to select the origin point.**

6. **Move the cursor to the area you want to copy over, hold down the mouse button, and paint.**

Figure 11-19 shows you an example of what you can do with the Clone Stamp.



**Figure 11-19:** If your results are a little spotty, the Clone Stamp can help you out.

### Healer, heal thyself

The Healing Brush, Spot Healing Brush, and Patch tools let you copy pixels from one place in an image to another, similar to the Clone Stamp tool, but while taking into account the lighting, texture, and other aspects of the image. That makes for smoother, less obvious touch-ups. Here's how each one works:

- ✓ **The Healing Brush** works like a brush in much the way the Clone Stamp tool does. It copies pixels from a sample origin point you specify.
- ✓ **The Patch tool** operates like a tire patch, pasting an area of pixels you choose on top of the part of the image you want to fix.
- ✓ **The Spot Healing Brush** works like the Healing Brush, but you don't have to specify an origin point; it automatically samples pixels around the area being healed and uses them to copy over the defective spots.

### Look sharp, be sharp

If you have an image that isn't sharp enough or if you want to increase the contrast between one area and another by sharpening one part, Photoshop's varied sharpening tools can do the job for you. Keep in mind that sharpening works by increasing the contrast between transitions in tone of an image. So, while you're adding sharpness, you're also increasing contrast. It's easy to end up with too much of a good thing.

If you want to sharpen the entire image, use the various sharpening filters. Choose **Filters** ⇨ **Sharpen** and you find a selection of choices. These include

- ✓ **Sharpen:** Applies a fixed amount of sharpening to the entire image or selection.
- ✓ **Sharpen More:** Applies a stronger fixed effect.  
Use either of these filters, **Sharpen** or **Sharpen More**, only when you need a touch of sharpening and don't need to be precise.
- ✓ **Sharpen Edges:** This filter seeks out the areas of transition in an image (the edges) and sharpens only those areas, preserving the smoothness in the rest of the image. As with the first two filters, you can't specify the amount of sharpening to be applied.
- ✓ **Unsharp Mask:** This filter does let you control the degree of sharpening, especially when it's applied to the edges of images. This should be your tool of choice for most image sharpening because it applies sharpening more intelligently and flexibly.



✓ **Smart Sharpen:** This filter includes three tabs that let you specify sharpening parameters, as with Unsharp Mask, but you can also control sharpening separately in shadow and highlight areas.

If you want to add some sharpness in specific areas quickly (say, to sharpen the eyes in a portrait), Photoshop has a Sharpen tool in the Tool Palette that lets you “paint” contrast. It’s easy to overdo this tool, so be careful.

### *Blurring for effect*

Blurring is the exact opposite of sharpening: Instead of heightening the contrast difference between adjoining pixels, the color and brightness differences are reduced so that pixels are much closer to each other in terms of their color levels, brightness, and contrast. Your eyes see this as a low-contrast blur effect.



Selective blurring can reduce the effect of noise or spots, or even make some areas seem sharper in contrast. You can blur one area while sharpening another to create an especially dramatic look, as shown in Figure 11-20. Of course, you can also go too far with blurring and end up with something that isn’t even recognizable, or you can fail to blur enough, leaving the content as distracting as ever. The key is to find a happy medium where objects are still recognizable, but nobody spends much time looking at them.



**Figure 11-20:** An apparent contrast in sharp and blurred areas of an image can be dramatic.

Photoshop has blur effects to match those in the sharpen category, including the Blur tool and filters, such as Blur, Blur More, Gaussian Blur (the equivalent of Unsharp Masking, but in reverse, in many ways), and Smart Blur. Photoshop also has more specialized blur effects, including

- ✓ The kind of blur you get from subject or camera motion at relatively slow shutter speeds
- ✓ A blur produced by lens effects
- ✓ A Radial blur, as if you were photographing a record player turntable from above as it spun
- ✓ A Box blur, which blurs by using mosaic-like boxes
- ✓ A Shape blur, which uses your choice of oddball shapes to blur your image

### Fixing with filters

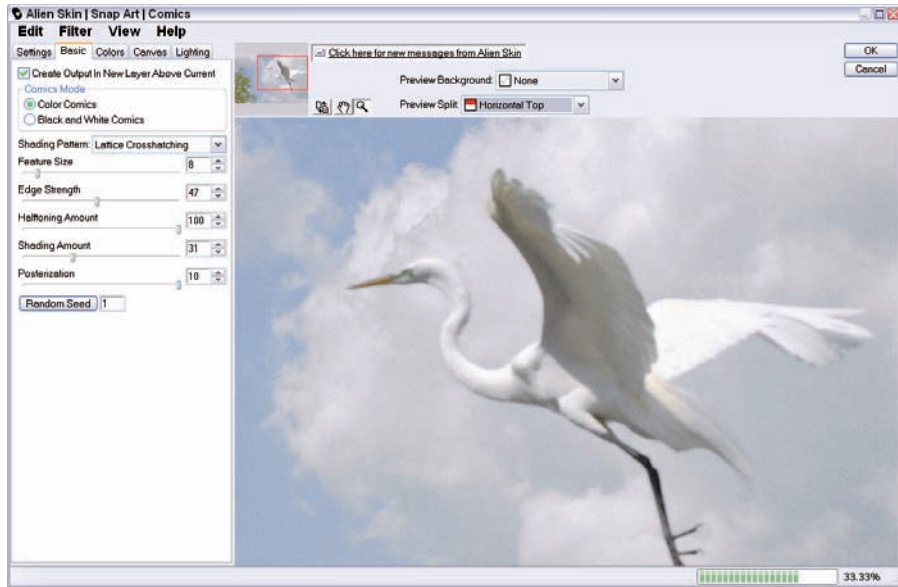
As you notice in the previous section on blurring and sharpening, filters can be your friends. Although many of the filters available with Photoshop, in other image editors, and from third-party vendors are best known for their “special effect” capabilities, they can also be used to fix up your images, even if you’re using the filter’s image transmogrification features just to disguise an egregious problem in your photo.

That’s what I did when I found myself with the photo shown in Figure 11-21. It had all the elements of a good picture: majestic water bird in flight, interesting birdie pose, magnificent clouds in the background, um . . . dSLR autofocus locking in on the clouds in the background, allowing the avian to become a messy blur (see the inset).

Fortunately, I have dozens of add-on filters at my disposal, including an interesting clutch from the fine folks at Alien Skin, who brought us Xenofex, Eye Candy, and now, Snap-Art. This plug-in offers hundreds of ways of transforming great photos into great art by using media, such as colored pencil, comics, pastel, pen and ink, oil painting, and many more. And if you don’t have a great photo that needs transforming, it can do its stuff on mediocre images, like mine (see Figure 11-22).



**Figure 11-21:** Ooops. Autofocus leads to out-of-focus when the sky confuses the dSLR’s servos.



**Figure 11-22:** Alien Skin’s Snap Art plug-in comes to the rescue.

Many more options and fine-tuning parameters are available than the “photo-art” filters within Photoshop or other image editors, and Snap-Art includes hundreds of preset effects so you can reproduce “canned” looks. Figure 11-23 shows how I turned my sorry excuse for a photo into a semi-abstract comic book rendition in the Roy Lichtenstein tradition (albeit with somewhat less artistic merit).

You can use other filters to mend your defective images quickly and somewhat easily. For example, as I note, sharpening filters can often fix photos that are slightly out of focus. Blur filters can provide the illusion of reduced depth-of-field if you want to isolate a subject using selective “focus.” Distortion filters, like Photoshop’s Lens Correction filter, can fully or partially eliminate some kinds of perspective distortion, remove chromatic aberration (colored fringing around subjects), and eliminate inward or outward curving (pincushion and barrel distortion, respectively) caused by some telephoto and wide-angle lenses (also, respectively).



I’m no advocate of letting your image editor and its filters correct problems that never should have been present in the first place, but when you do goof (or want to use one of these pixel bending tools for artistic effect), it’s good to have them available.





**Figure 11-23:** This comic book look is the best “fix” I can hope for.



# Combining and Reorganizing Your Images

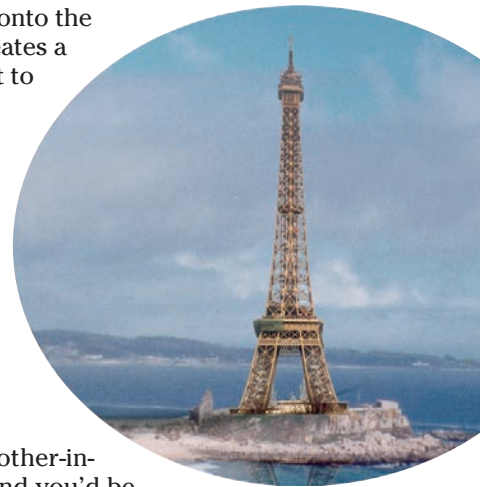
## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Making selections
- ▶ Removing and replacing objects in your photos
- ▶ Replacing boring backgrounds
- ▶ Compositing images

You gotta love those eye-catching magazine covers. *National Geographic Magazine* moved the Great Pyramid to create an improved composition. *TV Guide* gifted Oprah Winfrey with Ann-Margret's figure — literally. More recently, *Newsweek* featured a full-length photo of Martha Stewart based on a head shot of the home economics queen grafted onto the body of a model. It's been estimated that someone creates a new fake image in Photoshop every 30 seconds. I want to find that guy and ask him when he finds time to sleep!

Perhaps you don't want to fool anyone into thinking that Mao Zedong is swimming in the Yangtze River. Your motives for doing some heavy-duty image manipulation are much purer. Maybe you want to add an extra wing onto your house to show around at your high school class reunion. Or, it's time to remove Madge from the group shot of your organization's Regional Sales Managers because Madge has been reassigned to the mail room.

Worse, you have an unsightly photo showing your mother-in-law with a tree apparently growing out of her head, and you'd be happier if the image showed just the tree. That's the sort of thing you can do with an image editor, such as Photoshop. The simple editing and retouching tasks I detail in Chapter 11 are cool enough on their own, but in this chapter, you get serious performing *real* imaging magic to add or subtract objects, move them around, or combine photos.





This chapter focuses on image editing with Photoshop. Your favorite image editor might work similarly or have cool features of its own.

## Making Selective Modifications

A wag once said that time is what keeps everything from happening at once. The same can be said of selections in Photoshop: The ability to select one portion of an image makes it possible to modify only that selection while leaving everything else in the photo untouched. Selections are the basis for just about every variety of image manipulation I describe in this chapter. You'll see this is true the first time you use the Sharpen filter to enhance the sharpness of everything in an image because along with sharpening that face in the foreground, the Sharpen filter can make some unwanted details in the background more visible, too.

### What is a selection?

In Photoshop, a *selection* is all the stuff inside the crawling *selection border*, which is sometimes called *marching ants*. Selections can consist of an image area within straight or irregular outlines; include multiple disconnected areas in one selection; and have relatively solid edges or fuzzy, fading edges, as shown in Figure 12-1.

A selection defines an area in which modifications can take place. You can create selections with three kinds of edges: antialiased (smoothed), feathered (fading out gradually), and non-antialiased (jagged edged). Selections can be totally opaque, semitransparent, or graduated in transparency.



**Figure 12-1:** Selection edges can be sharp (left) or fuzzy (right).

## Performing everyday changes with selections

After you successfully select part of your image, you can do lots of things with the selection. These include

- ✓ **Copying** the selected area to an area of memory called the Clipboard, where it sort of sits around waiting (until you copy something new to replace it) so you can paste it into a new layer of its own. The copied portion is surrounded by transparency, so it floats over the image area in the layers below it. Press Ctrl+C (⌘+C on the Mac) to copy a selected area.
- ✓ **Cutting** the selected area so it is removed from your image. The cut portion ends up on the Clipboard, just as if it was copied and is available for pasting until you replace it on the Clipboard with something else. Press Ctrl+X on a PC (⌘+X on the Mac) to cut a selected area.
- ✓ **Changing** the selection. After you make a selection, you can change its boundaries, making them larger, smaller, and more or less feathered or irregular. You can also add other selections to your original selection, transform the size and shape of the selection, and invert it. Use the Select menu to adjust a selection.
- ✓ **Filling** with the contents of other selected areas or images you've copied to the Clipboard, thereby pasting one image into another. Press Ctrl+V (⌘+V on the Mac) to paste an image that's been copied to the Clipboard.
- ✓ **Painting, filling, or modifying** the selected areas by using any of the brush-like and painting tools while rendering the rest of the image (the nonselected area) immune to your fiddling. You can paint with color or fill the area with a color or pattern. To apply changes, you can use the Clone Stamp, Gradient tool, Dodge and Burn tools, Blur/Sharpen tools, and many more utensils.
- ✓ **Applying** a filter only to a selected area.
- ✓ **Masking** selected areas to prevent them from being modified accidentally. Use masking when you want to do a little brushwork on the background of an image but *don't* want to mess with a face in the foreground. Select the face as a protected mask (Photoshop lets you use selections as either an active or a protected image area) and go to town.
- ✓ **Transforming** the selected area by changing its size, shape, or perspective; by flipping it horizontally or vertically (or both); and by rotating it. Choose Select⇨Transform Selection to apply these changes.
- ✓ **Saving** selections to use later when you want to reselect the same portion of an image. Choose the Selection⇨Save Selection and store the selection as a file under a name you choose.
- ✓ **Converting** selections into vector-oriented paths that you can manipulate with the Pen tool. You go the other way, too, converting paths to selections. Use the Make Work Path and Make Selection options, respectively, in the Paths palette.

## Making Basic Selections

Photoshop has three main selection tools: Marquee, Lasso, and Magic Wand. Each tool has multiple variations. For example, the Marquee tool includes Rectangular, Oval, and Single Row/Column versions. The Lasso tool includes Polygonal and Magnetic varieties. The Magic Wand is pretty much the Magic Wand (it's magic, it's a wand, and that's about it) but does come in one variation, Photoshop CS3's new Quick Selection tool, which although its icon is also a wand, operates in a different way (by dragging around your object, as I explain later). The tool you use depends on the shape of the image you want to select. In the following sections, I offer the simple steps for using each tool.

### Making rectangles, squares, ovals, and circles

Normally, you draw a Marquee selection by clicking and dragging to the correct size:

1. **Select one of the Marquee tools from the Tool Palette (the tools are all nested within the same icon) or press M to select the Marquee.**
2. **Then click and drag in your image, releasing the mouse button when the selection is the size you want. (See Figure 12-2.)**

Cancel your selection by clicking outside the selection border when using a selection tool or by pressing Ctrl+D on a PC (⌘+D on the Mac). Make its borders visible/invisible by pressing Ctrl+H on a PC (⌘+H on the Mac).



**Figure 12-2:** Round things lend themselves to selecting with the Elliptical Marquee.



You can view all the nested tools hidden in a Photoshop Tool palette icon by clicking the small triangle in the lower-right corner of the icon. When you pass the mouse cursor over an icon, the name of the tool pops up. To display all the tools, right-click (Control-click the Mac) the icon.



To radiate a selection outward with the clicked point as the center of the selection, hold down the Alt key (Option key on the Mac) while dragging. Hold down the Shift key while dragging to create a perfect circle or square.

The Option bar gives you increased control over your Marquee selection:

- ✓ **To create a selection with particular proportions** (say, 5:7 if you want to crop to the shape of a 5-x-7-inch print), select Fixed Aspect Ratio in the Style drop-down list.
- ✓ **If you want a selection with specific pixel dimensions**, such as 640 x 480 pixels, select Fixed Size in the Style drop-down list.
- ✓ **To feather the edges of your Marquee selection**, which creates a fading border effect, type a pixel value into the Feather box.

## Selecting odd shapes

You can use the Lasso tool to make freehand selections of a part of an image:

### 1. Select the Lasso tool from the Tool palette (or press L).

You can choose from three types of Lasso:

- The *Default Lasso* sketches in a selection as if you were drawing with a pencil.
- Click multiple times with the *Polygonal Lasso* to create odd-shaped selections with straight lines.
- The *Magnetic Lasso*, at work in Figure 12-3, looks for edges while you drag, and it hugs those edges by using Option bar options, such as width, edge contrast, frequency (number of magnetized points to lay down), and (with a pressure-sensitive tablet) pen pressure or line thickness.

### 2. Drag around the outline of the area to be selected.



**Figure 12-3:** The Magnetic Lasso clings tightly to outlines.

## Selecting pixels

The Magic Wand tool, as shown in Figure 12-4, selects pixels that are similar in hue and value to the pixel you first clicked. The Magic Wand is a good tool for selecting plain areas with few contrasting details, such as the sky, blank walls, or solid colors. After you select this tool, use the Option bar to set how the tools should work:

- ✓ You can set the Magic Wand tool to select only pixels that touch each other (contiguous) or similar pixels anywhere in the image (noncontiguous). Select either mode from the Option bar.
- ✓ Decide how fussy you want the wand to be by choosing a Tolerance setting from 0 (*really* fussy) to 255 (accepts just about anything).

A default value of 32 usually works best, but you can increase or reduce this number to select more or fewer pixels.

- ✓ Select the Use All Layers box to tell the wand to select pixels based on information in all the layers of your image, rather than just the currently active layer.





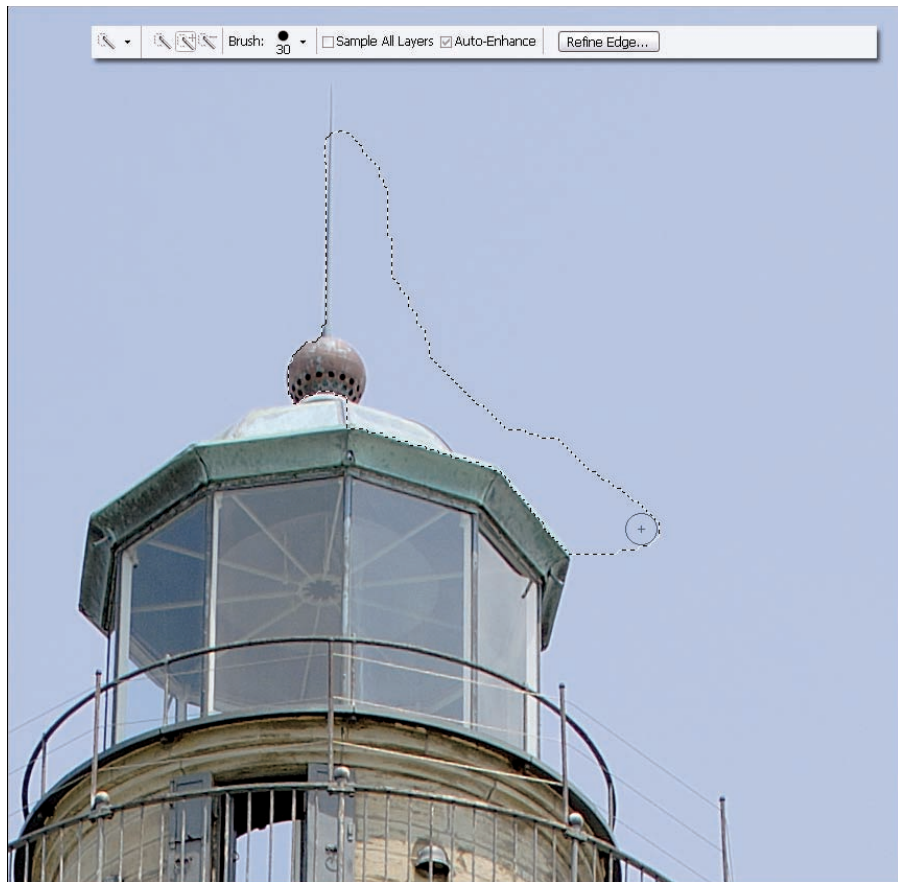


**Figure 12-4:** The Magic Wand is good for selecting evenly toned, evenly colored subjects, like the sky in this picture.

The Quick Selection tool, nested in Photoshop CS3's tool palette with the Magic Wand, can be dragged around the periphery of a relatively well-defined shape (one surrounded by a background that might be suitable for selection with the Magic Wand, for example). While you drag, the tool creates a selection around your object. Although the selection may not “look” right at first, as shown in Figure 12-5, in which the selection border appears to be on the wrong side of the lighthouse spire, when you continue to define the selection, it corrects itself.



After you've used this tool for a while and are familiar with how it defines a selection, mark the Auto-Enhance check box to allow the Quick Selection tool to more closely align the selection border with the object. You can make further improvements to the selection border by clicking the Refine Edge button after the selection is complete. Both toolbar controls are shown in the inset in Figure 12-5.



**Figure 12-5:** The Quick Selection tool allows you to drag a selection around the edges of an object.

## *Painting selections*

Photoshop's Quick Mask mode is a great way to create your selections by painting them with any size and shape brush that you want. While in Quick Mask mode, you can also use other selection tools, such as the Lasso tool or Magic Wand, to select areas that you then fill with the mask color. Here's how:

- 1. To enter Quick Mask mode, click the Quick Mask icon in the Tool palette or simply press Q.**
- 2. (Optional) Double-click the Quick Mask icon to set several options, such as the opacity and color of the tone used to represent the painted mask.**

You can also choose whether the tone represents the areas that are selected for editing, or the areas that are protected from editing (masked). I prefer to paint the actual selection I want.



If you're working with a subject that contains a lot of red, you might want to use a mask painting color other than red. You can also select whether the painted area represents a *selection* (an area that can be worked on) or a *mask* (a protected area).

**3. With the Brush, paint the area you want to select/mask.**

For the image shown in Figure 12-6, I wanted to blur part of the background, so I painted a selection that included the parts to be blurred.



**Figure 12-6:** Paint your selections by using Quick Mask mode.

**4. Apply whatever changes you want to make to the selected area.**

In my example, as shown in Figure 12-7, I applied the Blur filter.

**5. Press Q again to exit Quick Mask mode.**



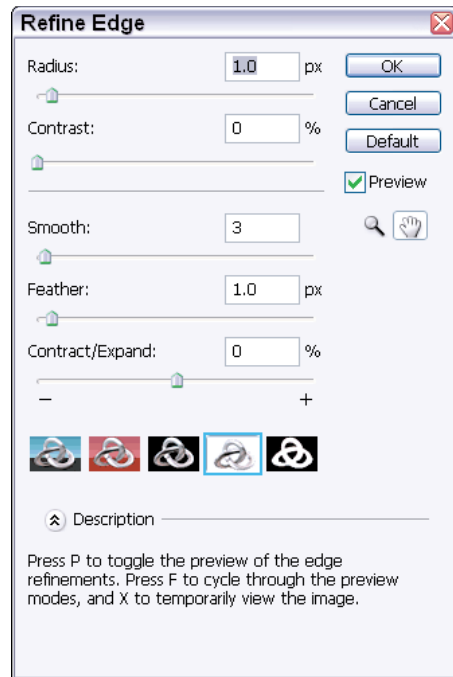
**Figure 12-7:** The painted areas become fuzzy when the Blur filter is applied.

### *Fiddling with your selections*

After you select part of an image, you can apply all sorts of effects to your selections, including marking the Anti-Aliased box in the Option bar to smooth the edges of freehand or elliptical selections. (Rectangles don't need smoothing.) Type a value into the Feather box to create a selection that fades out over the range of pixels you specify. Add to a selection by holding down the Shift key while you drag with any selection tool to create additional selected areas. Subtract from a selection by holding down the Alt key (Option on the Mac) while dragging the area you want removed. If you want the selection tool to default to normal, add, or subtract mode, you can also click the Normal, Add, or Subtract icons (natch) on the Option bar. Another handy tool is the Intersect button, which lets you create a selection that consists only of the portion that *overlaps* both the new and original selection.

You can also modify selections by using the Select menu. You find options for selecting everything in the image (usually it's easier to press Ctrl+A to select all or ⌘+A on the Mac) or to select nothing (press Ctrl+D or ⌘+D on the Mac). You might also choose to select based on a range of colors that you specify; to feather the current selection; to modify the selection border width, size, and smoothness; to grow the selection to adjacent pixels meeting the current tolerance parameters; or to select pixels anywhere in the image that are similar to those chosen already. The Transform Selection option can be useful for sizing, rotating, or skewing a selection.

One handy new tool added to Photoshop CS3 is the Refine Edge facility, available by clicking the Refine Edge button when a selection is complete. The Refine Edge dialog box, as shown in Figure 12-8, appears. It contains sliders for smoothing, feathering, expanding, or contracting the selection edge, plus increasing the size of the selection edge radius or enhancing the contrast. Photoshop can show you the effects of your changes in various modes (including Quick Mask mode, and the selection contrasted against a black or white background). Although Refine Edge isn't a magic tool, it does allow you to use the selection tools built into Photoshop more intelligently.



**Figure 12-8:** Refine Edge allows you to modify selections with several different controls.

## Adding to and Subtracting from Your Pictures

Instead of tearing all your wedding photos in half, you can replace your ex-spouse with a potted plant, which might be more appropriate than you think. Did your brother-in-law end up mugging in *every single* group photo taken at your last family reunion? Does that 1977 Pinto parked in the driveway otherwise detract from the beautiful landscaping in the photo of your stately manor home? Sure, you could've been smarter when you snapped the original photo, but at least you have the opportunity to redeem yourself by removing the offending person or object in Photoshop.

## Evicting your ex-brother-in-law

Okay, your sister has untied the knot, and her former spouse has left the state. Why is he still haunting all the family photos? Your best move might be to take him out (unless you live in the kind of family where that phrase has a different context). Photoshop can do the job. Figure 12-9 shows a typical "problem" picture. The guy on the left is the one I want to get rid of. I can copy portions of the background over the parts of him that overlap areas I want to keep and then crop the image so the rest of him is excluded from the final photo.



**Figure 12-9:** How can I get rid of the guy on the left?

The steps to follow are fairly easy:

- 1. Use a selection tool to grab parts of the background to either side of the person you want to delete and then copy the selections to a new layer.**

A new layer is created automatically when you paste your copied selection. The resulting layer looks like Figure 12-10.

You can make the initial selection by using the Lasso tool or in Quick Mask mode. Then press Ctrl+J on a PC (⌘+J on the Mac) to copy the selection directly to a new layer. This is usually a lot faster than pressing Ctrl/⌘+C (copy) followed by Ctrl/⌘+V (paste).



**Figure 12-10:** Grab part of the background to cover up the unwanted image area.

- 2. Move the background pieces so they cover the unwanted ex-relative.**

After they're pasted, the copied pieces reside in their own layer, so you can move them around as you want within that layer.
- 3. Press E to select the Eraser and use an eraser brush (I selected a soft-edged eraser brush) to remove the edges of the background pieces so they blend in with the original background, as shown in Figure 12-11.**



**Figure 12-11:** Blend in the background pieces.

4. Flatten the image (choose Layer → Flatten) to merge all the layers.
5. With the Crop tool, trim the image so it includes only the two main subjects and some of the background around them, as you see in Figure 12-12.



**Figure 12-12:** The photo without the evicted guy looks like this.

## Bringing a family closer together

In some situations, you'll want to bring two subjects who are separated closer together. Perhaps you deleted a person in the middle, leaving a huge gap. Other times, the problem stems from a series of unfortunate seating events. You can use the same techniques from the preceding section to bring family members (or any other subjects) closer together.

I started with the photo shown in Figure 12-12 and brought the people closer together by following these steps. Although every picture is unique, you can likely follow similar steps in your own photos:

1. I copied the fellow on the right and pasted him into his own layer.
2. I copied some of the background that surrounded him because that makes it easier to blend him in later on.
3. I clicked the Eyeball icon in the left column of the Layers palette to make the new layer invisible temporarily.
4. Going back to the original layer (click it to reactivate), I copied portions of the background surrounding his original location and pasted them in a new layer to cover up the original figure.
5. I blended in the new background so it looked natural.



With your own photo, you might need to lighten or darken the background (choose Image⇨Adjustments⇨Brightness/Contrast). Or, copy some of the pixels from one area to the overlapping area by using the Clone Stamp to blend the transition.

6. I clicked the Eyeball icon in the hidden layer with the guy to make him visible again.
7. I used the Eraser to remove some of the edges so the guy blended in with the two layers underneath.
8. I flattened the image (choose Layer⇨Flatten) and cropped to produce the final photo, as shown in Figure 12-13.

## Adding New Backgrounds

You can't always count on having a background that's as interesting as your main subject. If you catch Renée Zellweger or Hugh Grant sneaking out the back door of a restaurant and the background is a pile of garbage cans, you end up with a photo that isn't worth a mention in Bridget Jones' diary. Go to work in Photoshop and replace those cans with, say, Central Park, and you might have something. Adding a new background is easy, particularly if the existing background can be easily selected with the tools I describe in the section, "Making Basic Selections," earlier in this chapter.





**Figure 12-13:** Photoshop brought these brothers closer together.

Figure 12-14 shows a shot taken on an overcast fall day, when the foliage was at its most colorful and the clouds in the sky were dull and lifeless. I shot the photo anyway and let Photoshop come to the rescue.



**Figure 12-14:** A dull sky needn't ruin a perfectly good fall photo.

I used the following steps to improve the original background. You can use the same steps for any background you want to replace:

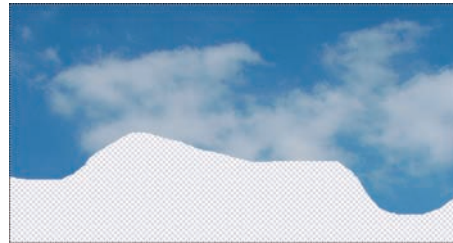
- 1. Find some suitable background in another photo and paste it into a new layer in the photo that needs the facelift.**

Select the new background and then press Ctrl+C on a PC (⌘+C on a Mac), followed by Ctrl+V on a PC (⌘+V on a Mac) in the document that needs the new background.

The new cloudy sky for my picture looked like Figure 12-15.

- 2. Switch to the original layer, use the Magic Wand to select the background that you want to replace, and set a Tolerance level.**

I selected the main, dull-looking sky area and used a Tolerance level of 32.



**Figure 12-15:** Along come some beautiful clouds just when I need them!

- 3. If you have lots of separate little bits of background (like the little bits of sky that peeped through the leaves in my picture), choose Select⇨Similar to expand the selection.**

The selection now includes all the niggly little bits of background that would have been a pain to select individually.

- 4. Invert the selection by choosing Select⇨Invert so that everything *except* the sky and gaps in the leaves is selected.**

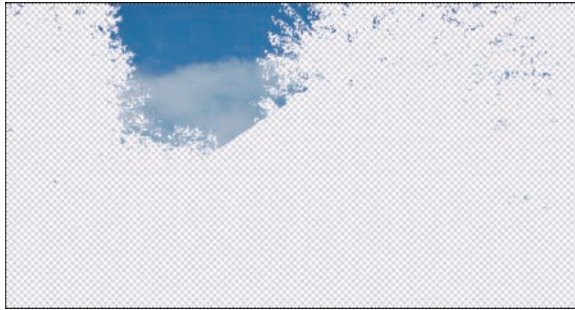
Or press Ctrl+Shift+I on a PC or ⌘+Shift+I on the Mac.

- 5. Switch to the layer that contains the new background and then press Delete to remove the replacement sky area that isn't needed.**

After I pressed Delete, I was left with only one broad patch of clouds, plus many smaller slivers, as shown in Figure 12-16.

- 6. Flatten that image like a pancake (choose Layer⇨Flatten) to end up with your final, one-layer image.**

I ended up with the photo shown in Figure 12-17.



**Figure 12-16:** Every cloud has a sliver lining.



**Figure 12-17:** Nothing brightens a dull day more than a background check.

## *Combining Several dSLR Photos into One*

About the most entertaining thing you can do with a mouse (assuming you're not a cat) is combining photographs to create a new image (also called *compositing*). One of my favorite tricks involves taking an everyday object, such as my car, and placing it in exotic locales. Dropping a new object into an existing photo is no more difficult than replacing a background, and in some respects, it's a lot easier.

Figure 12-18 shows the automobile in question parked in a grungy gravel driveway.

The steps are fairly simple: Select the object and copy it to a new layer on an image that contains a suitable background. The only hard part is blending in the object so it looks like it belongs there. Here's how I did both:

1. **Use the Lasso tool to select the object, including lots of the background, and press Ctrl+J on a PC (⌘+J on a Mac) to copy the selection to a new layer in the current document.**
2. **Click the Eyeball icon in the layer with the background to make it invisible, switch back to the copied layer, and use the Eraser tool to remove everything that isn't part of the object (in my case, my car).**

Using the Eraser makes it easier to remove the surroundings carefully, a bit at a time. Make a mistake and press Ctrl+Z on a PC (⌘+Z on the Mac) to reverse your last step. If you don't catch a goof in time, work your way through the History palette one step at a time until you get back to the point where you want to resume erasing.



**Figure 12-18:** You can take this vehicle for a drive without even leaving Photoshop!



A hard-edged eraser makes a good tool for working on straight edges (like the top of the automobile), and a soft-edged eraser brush comes in handy for areas where you don't have to be precise (like the undercarriage). It wasn't necessary for me to be too precise around the underside

of the car because I planned to blend that portion in with the road in the new background.

You want to end up with an image that looks like Figure 12-19.



**Figure 12-19:** Extract the object carefully so you can blend it in with its new background.

### 3. Copy the extracted object and paste it in a second image.

I selected an image of a rural roadway in southern Spain.

### 4. Sprinkle in special touches as needed.

The auto didn't look like it belonged in this setting, so I added a few special touches:

- I darkened the underside of the car (especially in front) to make it look as if the car was casting shadows on the ground around it.
- Shadows from the surrounding trees were cast on the road, so I used Quick Mask mode to select some areas on the side (just beneath the side mirror) and darkened those areas to match the road shadows. I selected an area above the front wheel well, extending across the hood, and another on the back deck, and *lightened* them as if the bright ray of sunlight was striking those surfaces.
- I used the Photoshop Lens Flare plug-in (choose **Filters** ⇨ **Render** ⇨ **Lens Flare**) to add a bright glare to the rear quarter-window.

### 5. When all is satisfactory, flatten the image (choose **Layer** ⇨ **Flatten**).

I ended up with the version shown in Figure 12-20.



**Figure 12-20:** A successful composite is a lot of work, but it's worth it.

### *The pitfalls of compositing images*



You can see that a lot of work might be necessary to make the merger of two images look realistic. The pasted-in objects must have similar texture and lighting and must be shown from the proper angle and perspective. You can't take a photo from a low angle on a cloudy day and paste an object from that image into a background taken from a higher angle on an overcast day. If you do, you get a less-successful result, like the atrocity shown in Figure 12-21.

In this case, I started with the same automobile picture but decided to jazz it up a little. I copied the original car layer and painted the duplicate with various colors, including red for the body and brown for the convertible top.



**Figure 12-21:** Something is wrong here; it looks like a cutout pasted onto a poster.

Then, I merged the colored layer with the original layer by changing the Blending Mode options in the Layers palette from Normal to Overlay. That combines the colors in the top layer with the detail in the layer underneath.

The car certainly looks sportier, but the scale is all wrong for the plaza it's now set in. The angle of view is too high, and the lighting is wrong because the background image was taken on an overcast day. Not my best effort, but it serves as an example of what *not* to do!

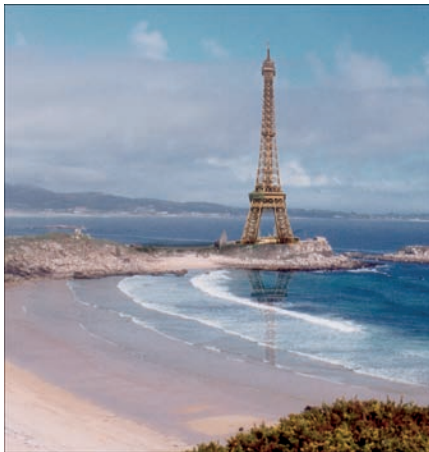
### *Getting creative with compositing*

Don't be afraid to experiment when combining images. You can create realistic composites, like the one shown on the right in Figure 12-22, or completely preposterous fantasies, like the one in Figure 12-23.

For the castle/moat photo, I added some clouds and then reversed the upper half of the photo to create a more vivid reflection in the moat. The Eiffel Tower on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea demonstrates what can be done if you have Photoshop and don't know much about geography.



**Figure 12-22:** From so-so to postcard-worthy with a few minutes of compositing effort.



**Figure 12-23:** It seems like everyone in France takes off for the Mediterranean Sea in August, so why not *La Tour Eiffel, aussi?*



# Hard Copies Aren't Hard

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Someday your prints will come
  - ▶ Output options
  - ▶ Choosing your printer
- 

Years ago, some wise futurists predicted that digital photography would spell the end of photographic prints, just as the advent of word processing, fax machines, text messaging, and e-mail would cause the Post Office to close its doors, overnight delivery services to go bankrupt, and manufacturers of file cabinets to switch to more profitable products, like personal aeroplanes. If you believed these folks, the paperless office would be followed by the printless home, and we'd all be doing our reading and photo viewing on computer monitors, TV sets, or cell phones.

Of course, these seers are the grandchildren of the prognosticators who foresaw the invention of the automobile, but had no clue about smog, traffic jams, or road rage. If anything, we're creating *more* prints today than a decade ago because we can make them at home or in the office, upload digital files to our local megamart for one-hour printing, or stop by a retailer's handy kiosk to custom-print hard copies for about the same cost as those automated machine prints we got from film back in the dark ages.

Technology has helped create brand-new uses for images, including e-mail and desktop presentations, while not reducing the original need for hard copy prints. Electronic distribution of images has blossomed, but not at the expense of traditional applications for prints.

This chapter outlines some of your options and shows you that hard copies really don't have to be hard.



## Prints? What Prints?

As you find out in Chapter 16, some photo sharing sites are geared for serious photographers. They display your prize images in sharp-looking galleries rather than the more amateur-oriented “albums” provided by consumer photo sharing services. You can also display your images on your own Web pages, e-mail them to friends and colleagues, exchange them over instant messaging services, or array them into PowerPoint presentations. It’s entirely possible for a photographic image to begin and end its life as bits and bytes, created by a digital camera and viewed only on a display screen.

But you probably don’t want to go that route for all your photos. Passing prints around and displaying framed photos on the wall or grand piano is one of the greatest joys of photography. Digital photography makes printing copies for distribution or festooning your furniture with frames easier than ever. Here are some very good reasons for making prints:

- ✓ **Share with friends and family.** This is the traditional application for prints. Do you want to drag a computer along to the next family reunion — or do you want to have a stack of prints to pass around?
- ✓ **Display your work.** They do make LCD “photo frames” you can set on the piano to show off a picture or two, but making an 8-x-10-inch or bigger enlargement to frame and hang on the wall is much more satisfying (and, possibly, ostentatious, as you can see by the ornate frame in Figure 13-1).



**Figure 13-1:** You can hang a print on the wall, but it’s hard to frame a computer!

- ✓ **Sell yourself and your work.** Many photographers are turning to digital portfolios, but when you want to have images available for viewing by prospective employers or clients, a print is still the best way to show off your work.
- ✓ **Submit for approval.** You have the job; now you need to secure the approval of your boss or client. You could e-mail a low-resolution copy to the person passing judgment, assuming that person can view the image on a computer. Or, you can print a fine-tuned proof that's an accurate representation of your image and use that.
- ✓ **Restore or re-create an existing photo.** Not all digital prints need to originate from your digital camera. You'll often need to create a restored or enlarged copy of an existing print, with all the wrinkles and tears removed, and perhaps improvements made in your subject matter through judicious image editing. A scanner, an inkjet printer, and an image-editing program may be all you need.
- ✓ **Create camera-ready or for-position-only art.** Most professional printers today can work from digital files. However, you'll find that it's often helpful to have a print to paste into a layout, either for reproduction or to create a dummy that can be used for approval purposes.
- ✓ **Make a teaser.** My local newspaper prefers to receive submissions as high-resolution TIFF files on a CD. Even so, I always include a print or two of the shots I want the editor to look at. A compelling print can bring my CD up to the top of the to-do pile.



## *You Pays Your Money, You Takes Your Choice*

When it comes time to make a print, you need to choose between making it yourself, using an online service, or working with a local retailer/print lab. Oddly enough, with today's technology, you can sometimes end up using all three methods with a single print order. You can, for example, upload digital images online to your local retailer and then trot down and pick prints while making a few yourself with the lab's kiosk.



Indeed, your choice of method for printing images isn't so much an economic decision as it is one of convenience, flexibility, and control. Some options are easier than others. Some let you do more things with your image before printing. Others give you absolute control over how your image looks. All of them end up costing roughly the same on a per-print basis, which is why many serious photographers use a mixture of methods.

## Doing it yourself

If you're serious enough about photography to be using a dSLR, you probably want a photo-quality printer close at hand to run off prints as needed. Here are some considerations to take into account for the do-it-yourself approach:



- ✓ **Equipment:** You need to invest in a printer. Good photo printers can cost \$100 to \$300 or more, which isn't a lot when amortized over the two or three years (or longer) that you'll be using the device. Better printers are always coming along, of course, so you might want to upgrade sooner.

Factor in the price of the printer as well as consumables, like paper and ink, when calculating the per-print cost of your hard copies.

- ✓ **Speed:** Doing your own printing is the fastest way to get a hard copy in your hands when you're in a hurry.
- ✓ **Quality:** When you become familiar with your printer's operation, you can often tweak your images to look their best with your particular setup. The fine-tuning may take place in your image editor or using the printer's own controls.
- ✓ **Flexibility:** If you print your own images, you can use a larger variety of paper stocks than your local retailer may have available, make prints in oddball sizes, or print on *both* sides of a sheet (which you can do with some photo-quality printers with duplexing capabilities, such as certain Canon Pixma models).
- ✓ **Backup:** Unless you have more than one color printer, your rush projects will always be dependent on the continued health of your mainstay. Fortunately, should your printer fail, you can use one of the other printing options or run down to the local Quik-E-Mart and buy a new printer for \$50 or so. Remember to have extra ink on hand!

## Online output outsourcing options

The universe seems to be moving online. I'm sure someday there will be remote digital cameras set up at key tourist spots, like the Taj Mahal, allowing you to take your vacation pictures without ever leaving home. About the only thing you can't do through the Internet is take your dog for a walk.

Meanwhile, you can order and distribute prints right from your computer. Yahoo!, AOL, Shutterfly, Kodak, and other sites have Web-based picture services you can use to share and print your best efforts. Technically, you don't even need a computer or digital camera. Nokia has an agreement with the Kodak Picture Center that allows cell phone users to phone in images they've snapped and place orders for prints.

Here are some considerations for the online option:



- ✔ **Need for speed:** Your digital SLR photos are likely to be megabytes in size even if you're shooting in JPEG format. If you want to upload images from your computer to a Web service, you definitely need a broadband connection. Although most digital photographers have broadband at home and work, sometimes you can't upload photos quickly, such as when you're traveling.
- ✔ **Honest-to-gosh photo prints:** When you order digital prints online, you can receive hard copies made the old-fashioned way, using conventional photographic paper and chemicals. If you value the quality and potentially extended longevity of traditional photo prints, online ordering is one way to get them. (You can also get real prints locally, as I explain in a bit.)
- ✔ **Ordering prints for delivery:** Online services make prints and mail them back to you or to a third party. That makes a Web-print service especially useful for sharing prints with folks back home when, say, you're touring Paris and get a few minutes at *un café de cyber*. (Dozens of these are in the City of Light, by the way, ranging from Jardin de l'Internet to Station Internet Rive Gauche.)
- ✔ **Ordering prints to go:** Retailers, like Wal-Mart, let you upload images to their Web site and specify pick-up at your local store. They're usually ready by the time you get there.
- ✔ **Economy and ease:** If you don't plan to edit your photos much (or the chore is already out of the way), you can't beat the ease and economy of ordering prints online. Just upload, specify print sizes and other details, and pay as little as 10 cents or so per print. What could be easier?

### *Live, and in person!*

If you like, you can also trot down to your local retailer or professional photo lab and get your prints directly. This approach can combine some of the advantages of making prints yourself and using an online service. For example, you can use a kiosk and perform cropping and some image editing just as you would at home — even if you're on vacation hundreds of miles from your own computer. And, you enjoy the speed and economy of using a lab geared up to produce quantity prints.

Your in-person options range from using a standalone kiosk to view and print photos with the kiosk's printer (such as the one shown in Figure 13-2), working with a kiosk that's connected to the retailer's digital photo lab, or handing your digital memory cards (or a CD you've burned) to a technician and leaving everything up to them. You might find these services at a retail store or avail yourself of a lab geared to serious amateur and professional photographers. Either way, you walk in, get your prints made, and walk out (or sometimes, return to pick up your pictures later).

Considerations include

- ✓ **Compatibility:** You don't need to worry about having a broadband connection because retail locations accept your memory cards, CDs, and other media. Or do they? Some older kiosks and facilities might not be compatible with every oddball memory card, mini-CD, or Sony media-of-the-month. Fortunately, digital SLRs generally use the universally accepted CompactFlash or Secure Digital (SD) cards, but if you happen to have some photos on a mini-xD or Sony Memory Stick Duo, ascertain in advance that your chosen retailer can work with it.
- ✓ **Choice of photo-quality or printer-quality output:** Some retailers give you a choice of the type of output you receive. You can have a print made with a kiosk's built-in printer or direct your order to the store's digital photo lab that uses conventional photographic paper and chemicals.
- ✓ **Economy:** Photo labs are geared to produce quantity prints. If you need a whole bunch of hardcopies, you'll almost always find that a quick trip to your retailer saves you money and time.



**Figure 13-2:** Walk up to the kiosk and make your prints live, and in person.

## Choosing a Printer

Digital SLR owners have only one special consideration when choosing a personal printer for their hardcopy needs. As serious photographers, they're likely to want really, really good prints to match the stunning images they create with their sophisticated cameras. As a result, just any old printer probably won't do. You'll want a printer that's especially good for outputting photographs, such as the snapshot photo printer, as shown in Figure 13-3.

Fortunately, printer quality and flexibility has improved dramatically in the past few years. This section helps you choose the perfect printer.

Today, your choices are between inkjet or dye-sublimation printers. Output devices, such as thermal wax or laser printers, have become niche options for some specialized applications, or, in the case of the color lasers, for mass production uses where image quality isn't paramount.



**Figure 13-3:** Some printers do one thing — snapshots — and do it very well.

## Inkjet printers

Most of the photo printers sold now are inkjet models. These models produce images by squirting tiny droplets of ink onto paper, using various methods to control the size and placement of the drops. For example, Epson uses piezoelectric crystals sandwiched between two electrodes to vibrate the ink cartridge with different levels of voltage, causing the crystals to vibrate in ways that adjust the colors and the amount of color sprayed through a nozzle onto the paper. Other inkjet printing systems use heat or other properties to control the flow of ink. With resolutions ranging from about 300 dpi (dots per inch) to 1,440 dpi and higher, inkjets can easily produce photo-quality images, assuming you use good quality photo paper.

Current models run the gamut of features and prices, with many excellent models available from \$100 to \$300. To pay more than that, you probably need to buy a wide-carriage printer capable of handling paper wider than 8.5 inches. As a photographer, you may indeed want to make 11 x 14 or larger prints.



Features to look for are

- ✓ **Size and design:** Some printers hog your desk space or feature clumsy paper paths that require lots of space behind or in front of the printer for the paper trays. A few printers weigh a ton, too. If a printer is so unwieldy that you can't locate it near your computer, you end up doing a lot of walking or reaching to retrieve your printouts.
- ✓ **Speed:** Output speed is likely to be important to you only if you make lots of prints and don't like to wait. Some printers can be two or three times faster than another, so if speed is crucial (say, you're toting your printer around to events to output prints for customers on demand), check your intended printer's specification carefully. You'll want to make a test print, too, because vendors use best-case figures even though you'll probably be printing under worst-case conditions.
- ✓ **Number of inks:** Most photo printers today use six colors of ink: black, cyan, magenta, yellow, photo cyan, and photo magenta. The two latter inks are "weak" versions that provide more subtle gradations of tone. A few printers add red and green tanks (see Figure 13-4), allowing them to print richer reds, additional orange tones, and more realistic greens. Some have both a photo black and text black ink. Generally, in terms of quality, the more ink tanks the better. But, you have to replenish those inks at a cost of \$11 or so per tank. (Ink prices vary by brand and cartridge type.) If your quality needs are slightly lower, you may be able to get away with a printer having fewer colors. I have both a four-color inkjet (used for quick and dirty printouts) and an eight-color model (used for slow and exquisite output).





Figure 13-4: The more ink tanks you have, the more colors you can print.

- ✓ **Resolution:** More resolution is usually better (some models provide 1200 x 4800 dpi resolution), but the higher resolutions have some trade-offs, such as the traditional gamut versus dot-size dilemma. More inks produce a larger range of colors, but printers offering extra color depth often use larger ink droplets. So, a printer with only six colors that outputs 1-picoliter droplets can produce more detail but fewer colors than a printer with eight tanks and 2-picoliter droplets. Higher-resolution printers with tinier nozzles often suffer from clogging issues, too, and the special inks they require may not have the same longevity.
- ✓ **Paper handling:** Some inkjet printers produce *only* 4-x-6-inch prints. They're designed to output snapshots only, quickly and economically. Others let you print 5-x-7 or 8.5-x-11-inch prints as well as other sizes. Investigate your printer's ability to handle various paper stocks and thicknesses, too.
- ✓ **Memory card access/PictBridge capabilities:** A printer that has built-in memory card slots or a PictBridge-compatible camera-to-printer cable connection (as shown in Figures 13-5 and 13-6) are especially convenient. Your digital SLR may allow you to specify images for printing right in the camera. Then, you insert your memory card in the printer's slot or connect the camera to the printer with a cable and start the printing process.
- ✓ **Duplex printing:** The ability to print on both sides of a sheet automatically is useful not only for creating text documents. If you're preparing an album or portfolio, you can print on both sides of the sheet using special dual-sided photo paper and printers that have duplexing capability.





**Figure 13-5:** A memory card can go directly from your camera to the printer . . .

✓ **Input/output trays:** The input tray(s) hold the paper you're printing on; the output trays catch the finished prints when they come out. The higher the capacity of each, the better for you. One of my favorite printers has a vertical 150-sheet input tray that doesn't take up any space behind the printer and a second 150-sheet cassette that fits underneath the printer. I can put different types and sizes of stock in each, alternating, say, between 8.5-x-11- and 4-x-6-inch sheets, or fill both with the same paper and print 300 sheets in a row. Your output tray should be large enough to catch all the prints you make in a session without spilling any on the floor.



**Figure 13-6:** . . . or you can link your camera to the printer with a PictBridge cable.

✓ **Controls:** Printers have a plethora of controls to adjust every function, perhaps an LCD to use to preview images and a keypad to navigate menus and options. Others may have a power switch and a paper tray select button and little more, requiring you to control every parameter from your computer with the printer driver. Each approach has its advantages: Printers with lots of controls, if they have memory card slots, can be used in portable or standalone mode without any computer attached. Printers that rely heavily on the printer driver are usually faster to operate and allow storing groups of settings on your computer for reuse at any time.

### *Dye-sublimation printers*

Your other choice for printer technology is likely to be the dye-sublimation printer, which has been enjoying a rebirth of sorts now that vendors have managed to bring down the costs for the equipment and the prints. You can find excellent snapshot-size dye-sub printers for \$150 or less and pay about the same as you would for an inkjet print or one from your local photo lab.

The advantage of dye-sublimation printers is that even the most modest of them produce prints that are superior to run-of-the-mill inkjet output. The best can generate prints that are exquisite indeed. Most of the dye-sub printers you'll encounter are 4-x-6-inch photo printers, but I've enjoyed using 8.5-x-11-inch models from Olympus and other vendors that are a joy to use.

Despite their cryptic name, dye-sublimation printers work in a relatively straightforward way. A strip of plastic film, called a *transfer ribbon*, is coated with cyan, magenta, and yellow dye. When a print job is sent to the printer, a thermal print head heats up the page-sized panel of plastic transfer ribbon. Variations in temperature control what colors and the amount of color that are applied to the paper. Because the paper has a special coating on it, the dye sticks. Often, a final clear protective layer is applied after the color has been laid on. A dye-sub ribbon cartridge is shown in Figure 13-7.



**Figure 13-7:** Individual color panels apply one hue at a time to your print.

Dye-sub printers can apply color with a vast range of tones because each of the hues can be added over a range of 256 colors, for a possible 16.8 million different colors. These printers don't need the high resolution that inkjets require to mimic millions of colors by combining teeny dots of ink. So, a 300 dpi dye-sublimation printer can achieve photo output that's as good or better than a 1,440-dpi inkjet.

That means that dye-sub printers are useful almost exclusively for photographs; text quality is generally quite poor at their 300 dpi or lower resolution. Still, the subtle results they produce are great for professional designers, artists, and photographers. The high cost of the special paper and ribbons in larger sizes may be prohibitive for small businesses and home users, but the 4-x-6-inch models are economical enough for anyone. If you want dye-sub 8 x 10 prints, you pay a lot more for an advanced unit.

In terms of considerations to look for, some of them are the same as for inkjet printers. Size and design, speed, paper handling options, availability of memory cards, and the placement and use of controls all are important factors for dye-sub printers, too. Others, such as number of inks, resolution, duplexing capabilities, and paper handling, don't apply.

# Part V

## The Part of Tens

### The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

©RICH TENNANT

You must have used a high speed film to get that mottled grainy effect.

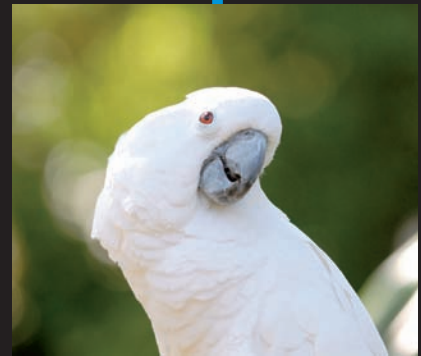
No, Jack is naturally grainy and mottled.



## *In this part . . .*

**T**his Part of Tens gives you 40 very cool ways to get more enjoyment from your digital SLR photography.

Chapter 14 offers the ten easiest ways to improve your photography immediately with better lighting, improved perspectives, and clever use of interchangeable lenses. Chapter 15 serves up ten things you might not have thought of doing with your digital SLR, or if you have, you might not have explored fully. No single book contains all the answers, so Chapter 16 showcases ten online resources that can help you improve your images, gather the latest information about new products and techniques, and display your work for the world to see. Chapter 17 provides some deft definitions for a clutch of confusing terms.



# Ten Ways to Improve Your dSLR Photography

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Improving your lighting
- ▶ Choosing your resolution
- ▶ Shuttering with anticipation
- ▶ Selecting the right aperture
- ▶ Selecting focus
- ▶ Optimizing your angle
- ▶ Using lenses effectively
- ▶ Working with noise
- ▶ Understanding image editing, retouching, and compositing
- ▶ Reading the manual

**E**ach chapter in this book is chock-full of tips that help you improve the quality of your dSLR photos. Add them all to your shooting repertoire, and you're well on the way to technical excellence and photo perfection. However, if you're looking for the top ten techniques to provide instant results, you can't beat the collection of quality-enhancing approaches that I outline in this chapter.



## *Does Lighting Ever Strike Twice?*

Yes, good lighting can be repeatable if you know what you're doing. And nothing can destroy a photo faster than bad lighting. You can make lots of improvements to a challenging subject simply by using good lighting techniques.

Your uncle's bald head, a teenager's less-than-perfect complexion, a harshly lit beach scene, a drop of falling water — you can portray all these attractively with effective lighting techniques. In your uncle's case, throwing the top of his head in shadow and avoiding shiny lights on his upper hemisphere can minimize the glare from his bare pate. The teenager might benefit from diffuse lighting that softens the texture of his or her face. You can fix up that glaring direct sunlight on the beach by using a reflector to bounce light into the shadows. And you can freeze a drop of water in midair with a halo of light added by an electronic flash.



To use light effectively and take your photography to the next level, here are some tricks you'll want to master:

- ✓ **Managing the quality of light:** Light can be highly directional or soft and diffuse. It can cast sharp shadows and dot your subjects with specular highlights. Light comes in different colors, too. Figure 14-1 shows the kind of effect you can get with diffuse light.
- ✓ **Using multiple lights:** Photographers create some of the best pictures by using two, three, four, or more lights. One source can be used to illuminate the main part of your subject, and others can outline its edges, fill in the shadows, or call attention to a particular area. Some lighting arrangements are used often enough that they have their own names: broad lighting, rim lighting, Paramount lighting, and so forth. Other arrangements are setups you create.

If you can master applying multiple lights to model and shape the appearance of your subjects, you'll have a powerful tool at your disposal.



- ✓ **Making best use of a light source's duration:** Generally, electronic flash units are the main noncontinuous light source photographers put to work. Using the duration of the flash creatively requires practice and experience. Some techniques are simple. For example, you can use your flash's brief duration (particularly when shooting up close) to freeze even the fastest action. More complex is the use of repeating flashes to trace movement or balancing flash output with ambient light to create combination exposures. Entire books have been written on these topics, so you have lots to discover.
- ✓ **Subtracting light:** Sometimes, you don't want to *add* light to a scene as much as you want to *remove* it, to create a particular lighting effect or look. *Barndoors* are little flaps that look like a horse's blinders, and fit over an electronic flash or other light source to block the light or feather it onto a subject. Opaque sheets can block light coming from a particular direction, functioning as a sort of reverse reflector. Gadgets that stage lighting directors call *cookies* or *gobos* can change the size and shape of a beam of light. With lighting effects, sometimes less is more.





**Figure 14-1:** Use diffuse light to soften an image.

## Choosing a Righteous Resolution and Other Settings

Strictly speaking, the resolution of your digital SLR is the number of pixels captured — say, 3,872 x 2,592 pixels for the typical 10-megapixel model. Most of the time, the top resolution is the one you want to select. However, as I discuss in Chapter 8, the file format you choose can affect the sharpness and file size of a digital image, too. It's the overall sharpness — which is affected by resolution — that you want to work with.

Some digital SLRs offer a choice of both compressed and uncompressed RAW files, perhaps a TIFF option, and several levels of JPEG compression. You can always select the highest resolution, least compressed, least processed image format. But if you answer “no” to any of the following questions, you'll want to put some thought into your resolution/format/settings decisions:

- ✓ Do you have unlimited memory card and hard drive space?
- ✓ Do you mind waiting while your pictures transfer to your computer?
- ✓ Do you want the ultimate in quality?
- ✓ Are you willing to spend at least some time with each shot in an image editor?

These are some of the things you have to think about. In the following sections, I explain some situations that call for special considerations.

### *Changing environments*

You're taking candid photos under conditions that vary abruptly and unexpectedly, say, at a concert or party in a night club with frequent lighting

changes. Or, you're outdoors at sunset and both the quantity and color of the illumination changes over the course of 10 or 15 minutes.



Although the high resolution afforded by your camera's RAW option has its value, in rapidly changing environments, you should place a higher premium on the RAW format's ability to

- ✓ Adjust white balance and exposure after the fact.
- ✓ Apply noise reduction.
- ✓ Apply tonal curves.

Particularly when it comes to white balance, you'll find that the manual changes you make when the file is imported into your image editor are likely to be more accurate and more easily customized than the default or automatic settings that your camera applies. For details on how to correct these problems in an image editor, flip to Chapter 11.

### *Living with limited memory card space*

You're leaving for a two-week vacation, and you have three 1GB memory cards, want to leave your laptop at home, and don't own one of those portable CD/DVD burners. None of the other options — such as uploading your shots to the Internet at a cyber café — seems attractive. You likely need to explore a resolution other than the highest RAW resolution. For example, the following list illustrates one possible scenario out of dozens, given a particular camera (the numbers you can expect vary, depending on what camera you use):

- ✓ **At the highest RAW setting**, say this particular camera gets 246 shots per 4GB card, or about 18 shots per day over two weeks. You'd need to arm yourself with many, many memory cards and spend a good part of your vacation time swapping out used cards for empty ones.
- ✓ **At the highest JPEG setting**, that same camera gets 460 shots per 4GB card, or 33 shots per day over two weeks. So at this setting, the camera gives you a more reasonable number of photos for a very slight loss of quality. But this still might not be enough pictures per day for your two-week vacation, even if you have three 4GB cards.
- ✓ **At the second-best JPEG quality**, say the 4GB card gets you 914 shots with this particular camera, or 65 shots per day. This is a more reasonable number of pictures, but on this camera, this quality limits prints to sizes no bigger than 5 x 7 inches.



Your best solutions might be to pick up a fourth or even a fifth memory card (for less than \$50 each). Or use your digital SLR's "second-best" JPEG quality level for general shots, but switch to the highest JPEG quality level for any shots or sequences that might be suitable for enlargements beyond 5 x 7 inches. That way, you can grab hundreds of snapshots for smaller prints but still come home with a good selection of higher-resolution photos for those special blow-ups.

## Shooting for a low-resolution destination

You're shooting a bunch of pictures for your eBay auctions or for display on a Web page, and the largest final image size will be about 640 x 480 pixels. Most of the time, having pixels and image quality to spare is good because you can crop and edit to your heart's content before shrinking the original shot down to its finished size.



Auction or Web pictures sometimes are captured with fixed setups on a sort of photo assembly line with the same background and settings, and there really isn't any need for the maximum in resolution and sharpness for your main shots. In fact, all those extra pixels can slow you down. You might be better off shooting at a lower resolution, such as 1,600 x 1,200 pixels, to speed things up. If you're *really* careful in your choice of composition and lighting, you might even be able to get away with taking photos at something very close to their finished size, say 640 x 480 pixels, eliminating most post-processing altogether. Of course, the latest dSLRs probably don't have a resolution setting that low; 1,600 x 1,200 pixel options may be available only on cameras with a maximum resolution of 6 to 8 megapixels.

## Hurrying along

The highest resolution/lowest compression settings take longer to store on your memory card and require extra time to transfer to your computer. The huge size of the best images can affect your shooting in several ways:

- ✓ **When shooting bursts of continuous shots:** Some digital SLRs slow their continuous shooting mode when saving images in RAW, TIFF, or RAW+JPEG modes. Instead of 3 to 5 frames per second (fps), you might be able to grab only 2 fps at the highest resolution. A camera with a larger internal buffer or a memory card with a faster write speed might help, but simply reducing the resolution or boosting compression might give you speedier bursts with little loss of quality. The Nikon D2Xs camera actually takes advantage of this phenomenon, cropping its default 12 megapixel images down to 6.8 megapixels to increase its top continuous shooting rate to 8 fps.
- ✓ **When you transfer photos:** Memory card readers are usually the fastest way to transfer photos from your camera to your computer. Some dSLR owners also depend on direct cable connections through a Firewire connection or, more commonly, through a USB cable. Both card readers and cable connections might use the latest USB 2.0 specification or limp along with the slower USB 1.1 links. A few of the newest cameras use infrared transmitters to transfer photos from camera to computer. All these methods are affected by the size of the file: A JPEG image might be only a few megabytes in size, whereas a RAW file can easily be 5 to 10MB or more, and TIFF files can top 20MB each. If you're in a hurry — for instance, you're covering a fast-breaking news event for your local newspaper — you might find that a compromise in picture quality can save valuable time.

✓ **When working on your computer:** Huge image files take longer to load, longer to process in an image editor, and longer to save when you're finished with them. If you want to speed your image along to its final destination, such as your printer, smaller file sizes can be your friend.

## Stop! What's That Sound?

For the digital photographer, no sound is sweeter than the authoritative clicks that resound when a picture is taken. Flipping mirrors and sliding shutter curtains mean that, once again, you've captured your vision as digital bits. Then, reality sets in — did you use the right shutter speed?

A speed that's too slow means any movement of the subject or the photographer's hands can result in shaky, blurry photos. A speed that's too high might remove all sense of movement, creating a sports picture, for example, that might as well have pictured a statue. A speed faster than your camera's electronic flash sync speed might mean your picture shows a shadow of the focal plane shutter rather than a complete frame. The right shutter speed with flash pictures can also mean that ambient light in the background produces a pleasing effect, but the wrong speed can produce ghost images.



As a digital SLR photographer, you have the responsibility to use the enhanced powers and control at your disposal to optimize your photos, and that includes choosing a shutter speed that's appropriate for the picture you want to create. Figure 14-2 shows how changing from  $\frac{1}{30}$  of a second (top) to  $\frac{1}{25}$  of a second (bottom) can affect an image of a moving subject taken under existing light.



**Figure 14-2:** A monopod steadied the camera, but the shutter speed had to be bumped for  $\frac{1}{30}$  of a second (top) to  $\frac{1}{25}$  of a second (bottom) because of subject motion.

## Working the Right F-Stop

Mark Twain never said, “The difference between the almost-right f-stop and the right f-stop is like the difference between the lightning bug and the lightning.” But, he might have said that if he'd been a digital photographer.

Sometimes, stopping down one or two aperture settings or opening up one or two stops can make a world of difference, so choosing the right f-stop can be an important part of optimizing your finished picture. Here are some examples:

- ✔ **A couple stops can boost sharpness.** Lenses designed especially for their speed — say, a 28mm f/1.4 or a 400mm f/2.8 lens — are also designed to provide excellent sharpness when they're wide open. However, most other optics are their sharpest when they're closed down one or two f-stops from wide open. A 50mm f/1.8 prime lens or an 80–200mm f/4–5.6 zoom lens that produces pretty good results at maximum aperture might excel with an aperture that's two stops smaller.
- ✔ **A few stops can help you stop camera or subject motion.** Going the other way, the ability to open up an extra stop or two can do your pictures a world of good if it lets you use a faster shutter speed. Try shooting a basketball game indoors at ISO 400 and settings of  $\frac{1}{60}$  of a second at f/5.6. Then compare your results with similar pictures taken  $\frac{1}{250}$  of a second at a wider aperture like f/2.8. If the second set of images is carefully focused, the subjects are *a lot* sharper. It doesn't matter that your first batch of pictures has more depth-of-field (which I discuss in Chapter 6). You won't even notice that with the subject blur.
- ✔ **A couple stops can stretch your depth-of-field usefully or trim it for creative effects.** This is especially true when shooting macro (close-up) photos when depth-of-field is sharply limited. Stopping down or opening up an f-stop or two can produce dramatically different results.
- ✔ **Too small is as bad as too large.** Shooting wide open costs you depth-of-field and can impact lens sharpness, but using the smallest possible f-stop can be just as bad. After you stop down past f/8 or f/11, most lenses suffer from *diffraction*, and any sharpness you think you gain in depth-of-field is lost to the resolution-robbing effects of too-small f-stops. It's almost as if your image had a fixed amount of sharpness, and the smaller f-stop is simply spreading it out over a larger range of depth. In addition, small f-stops can accentuate the appearance of any tiny dust motes on your sensor that, at larger apertures, are fuzzy and virtually invisible.

## Focus Is a Selective Service

Knowing how to use the right aperture to control depth-of-field is only half the battle. You'll also want to explore exactly how you can *apply* that depth creatively.



Improve your photography by casting a wide depth-of-field (DOF) net to capture a broad range of subject matter, or focus on a specific object by narrowing depth-of-field to a more selective range. Although there are many different techniques for emphasizing or de-emphasizing parts of an image, applying depth-of-field creatively is one that's easy to master and almost unlimited in its potential.



You need to become familiar with the DOF characteristics of each of your lenses, their zoom settings, and their apertures. I'm not suggesting you memorize all kinds of figures and distances. Just work with, say, your favorite zoom lens and use photos you take or glimpses with the depth-of-field preview to know approximately the sharpness range at, perhaps,  $f/2.8$ ,  $f/8$ , and  $f/16$  when shooting close up, at 5 to 10 feet, and at infinity using 25mm, 50mm, or 100mm zoom settings. Then you'll have a better handle on how focal length, aperture, and distance choices affect your shot before you frame a picture.

## Playing the Angles

Good composition often involves playing all the angles — *all* of them. Don't be satisfied with the different perspectives you get with a 360-degree walk-around. Climb on a nearby rock or ladder, stand on a chair, or experiment with the view from a handy balcony. Or, stoop low, lie on the ground, or get *under* your subject to see what a worm's-eye view looks like. Everybody shoots flowers from above the blossoms; you can take a picture down at the flower's level, as shown in Figure 14-3.



You might be surprised at how different everything looks from a new vantage point. Even hackneyed and clichéd subjects can take on new life if you choose the right angle. If you find yourself at a popular tourist location and all the people are clustered around a recommended "Picture Spot" while you're flat on your back on the grass, you're probably on the right track.



**Figure 14-3:** Shoot blossoms from the side rather than above for a new perspective.

## Through a Glass Brightly

There's a reason why digital SLR photographers frequently succumb to a *lens lust* compulsion, which is the irrational need to add yet another interchangeable lens to one's camera bag, at the expense of luxury items, such as food or clothing.

As I discuss in Chapter 6, lenses are the most powerful tools at your disposal, and you should discover how to leverage the capabilities of your optics even if you own only the lens that came with your camera kit. That lens is likely to be a zoom, which makes it many lenses in one, so even if your camera truly is a *single-lens* reflex, you can use lots of capabilities built into your lenses. Here are some of the capabilities that lenses have:



✔ **Make subjects appear to be closer:** Special macro lenses can capture life-size images of subjects from only a few inches away, but you'll find that many non-macro zooms and prime lenses focus close enough to provide a large image, like the one shown in Figure 14-4. The world of the close-up is one that's worth exploring, whether you're photographing flowers, insects, your stamp collection, or the texture of the rocks in your driveway. Even mundane objects gain interest when photographed up close.



**Figure 14-4:** Getting closer to a subject than the normal view can bring a new perspective to the familiar.

✔ **Bring distant things close:**

When you want to keep your distance from an erupting volcano, capture images of timid wildlife from 50 yards away, or take soccer pictures from the stands that look like they were grabbed from the sidelines, a telephoto lens can do the job for you.

✔ **Make close things appear farther away:** When your back is up against the wall and you can't squeeze everything you want into your image, a wide-angle lens can make your subjects back off to a more manageable distance.

✔ **Flatter your portrait subjects:** A short telephoto lens or zoom setting in the 85mm to 105mm range (using 35mm equivalent focal lengths) provides a more flattering perspective of human subjects. Your victims will like the way their ears and noses don't look out of proportion. Depending on the lens cropping ("multiplier") factor of your camera, this 85mm to 105mm range might be 53mm–65mm (with a 1.6X factor) to 65mm–81mm (with a 1.3 factor). A full-frame dSLR has no factor at all, and you can use your 85mm–105mm lenses. (See Chapter 1 for an introduction to the lens cropping effect.)

- ✓ **Insult or distort your subjects:** A wide-angle lens causes apparent distortion in portrait subjects that can be used for comical effect. With non-human subjects, you can have some creative fun by enlarging things that are very close to the camera while providing a seemingly distorted perspective on objects only a small distance away.
- ✓ **Compress distances:** Telephoto lenses tend to compress the apparent distances between objects, so you can make those utility poles seem as if they're right on top of each other, or make those approaching cars separated by 10 to 20 feet look as if they're cruising along bumper to bumper.
- ✓ **Manipulate depth-of-field:** Telephoto lenses have less DOF at a given aperture, but wide-angle lenses have more. Choose your weapon and you're choosing the amount of depth-of-field you have to work with.

## Feel the Noise

If you're old enough to remember Slade or Quiet Riot, you know that *noise* rocks — as long as you're looking for a bit of multicolored speckly texture in your images. Like grain back in the film era, a bit of digital noise in your images can be used for artistic effect. Rather than avoid noise, you might want to enhance it. On the other hand, if you're looking for a satiny smooth finish on your digital images, you might want to *minimize* it. Fortunately, the techniques for adding or avoiding noise involve the same sets of concepts:

- ✓ **ISO setting:** To *increase* the amount of noise in your photos, switch to a high ISO setting, such as ISO 1,600 or ISO 3,200. The higher the setting, the more noisy speckles you see in your images. To *decrease* the amount of noise, use a lower ISO setting, such as ISO 100 or ISO 200.
- ✓ **Exposure time:** Longer exposures (from 1 second to 30 seconds or more) increase the amount of noise in an image when the sensor heats up and begins to register that heat as spurious image information. If you want to minimize noise, use a larger f-stop if you can to shorten the exposure time.
- ✓ **Software:** Applications, such as Photoshop or Elements, include Add Noise filters that you can use to spice up your photos with a little random grain (multicolored or monochrome, as you prefer). On the other hand, tools like Noise Ninja ([www.picturecode.com](http://www.picturecode.com)) can remove excess noise to a certain extent when you *don't* want it. Chapter 11 offers an introduction to using noise filters in an image editor.

## Editing, Retouching, and Compositing Images

Sometimes your best photographic techniques aren't enough to create the image you want. There's no shame in turning to an image-editing program to manipulate your photos.





High-quality image editors can perform three main kinds of modifications:

- ✓ **Basic editing:** This kind of work includes fixing colors and tonal values, rotating or resizing images or portions of images, adding textures and special effects with filters, and other easy fixes.
- ✓ **Retouching:** If you're looking to remove red-eye effects, soften bad complexions, delete unwanted artifacts or people, and make other improvements to your images, the realm of retouching might be your best choice.
- ✓ **Compositing:** With this kind of editing, you combine several images into one, move objects from one place to another in your photograph, add a more interesting background (see Figure 14-5), and create a brand new picture that might bear little resemblance to the originals.



**Figure 14-5:** Simple compositing techniques provided a more interesting sky background to this shot.

Of course, a lot of overlap is among what can be done with editing, retouching, and compositing, and sometimes you'll use all three when you work on a particular image. You might find yourself using all three techniques with some images.

In Chapter 11, you find an introduction to image editing and image editors. For more complete details on applying these modifications with a specific image editor, check out other *For Dummies* books, such as *Photoshop CS3 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies*, by Barbara Obermeier (Wiley).

## Reading the Funny Manual (RTFM)

If you're like me, you find the manual that's furnished with a digital SLR to be particularly unappealing when you first get the camera. The manuals are usually confusing, and finding what you really need to know can be difficult. I'm always anxious to get shooting, and I've used enough different digital cameras that I can usually fumble my way through their operation without using the manual. While I familiarize myself with a dSLR for the first few weeks, I refer to the instructions only when I can't figure out how to do some particular task.



However, any dSLR is a complex machine, and after you become comfortable with its basic operation, the manual that perplexed you so much at first suddenly makes a lot of sense. You can find tricks you never thought of ("Oh, I can reformat a memory card by pressing these two buttons simultaneously!") and capabilities you didn't even know existed ("The depth-of-field button is *where?*").

So, the best advice I can give you for becoming an expert in the use of your particular digital SLR is that *eventually* you'll want to Read the Funny Manual.

# Ten Things You Never Thought of Doing with Your Digital SLR

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Exploring the secret world of infrared photography
- ▶ Lighting in tents
- ▶ Building the dSLR pinhole camera
- ▶ Doing the time warp again
- ▶ Snapping a somewhere in time exposure
- ▶ Slicing and dicing action
- ▶ Making do-it-yourself effects
- ▶ Shooting skyrockets in flight
- ▶ Saturating your colors
- ▶ Going nuts with image editors

Anybody can take a digital SLR, point it at something interesting, and come back with a good photo. It takes a genu-wine second-degree black belt photo master to turn the mundane into something special. One way to add excitement to your hum-drum photos is to apply some techniques you probably never even thought of. This chapter provides a quick introduction to ten cool techniques.

## *Capturing the Unseen with Infrared Photography*

If you're looking for a new type of photography to play with, infrared imaging with digital cameras can easily become your new playground. By ignoring visible light and capturing subjects solely by the infrared light they reflect, you



can picture the unseen — in more ways than one. That's because, thanks to the magic of the digital SLR, you'll likely be shooting blind. The same techniques that shield your sensor from visible light also keep you from seeing anything through the viewfinder. Fortunately, workarounds exist.

Infrared photography lets you render foliage in eerie shades of white, and the sky in an unearthly black color. Human skin takes on a soft, fuzzy glow. You'll either love or hate the effects.

The first thing to do is to get your camera set up for infrared photography. Because digital camera sensors are highly sensitive to infrared illumination, most camera vendors try to filter this light out by placing a filter called a *hot mirror* in front of the sensor. Some hot mirrors are more effective than others.



You can test your dSLR for infrared compatibility by taking a picture of a TV remote control pointed at the camera with a button depressed. If a spot of light shows up in your image, your camera is sensitive to infrared light.

After you know whether your camera can take infrared photos, the following steps can help you get started:

**1. Get yourself a filter that blocks visible light while letting the infrared illumination through.**

I like the Hoya R72 filter, but others have reported success with Wratten #87, #87C, #88A, and #89B filters.

**2. Set up your camera on the tripod, compose your image, and *then* place the infrared filter on the lens.**

Unfortunately, after you place the filter on your camera, the view through your finder is completely black.

Infrared exposures are likely to be very long anyway (up to several seconds in duration), so be sure to use a tripod.

**3. Set your white balance manually (check your camera's user guide to see how to do this) by using a subject that reflects a lot of infrared.**

Grass is a good choice.

**4. Take a few pictures by using manual exposure.**

I recommend using a small f-stop because the infrared focus point isn't the same as for visible light, and your autofocus mechanism doesn't work when the filter is in place anyway. Small f-stops lead to even longer exposures, but your tripod keeps the camera steady. Start with an exposure of 0.5 to 1 second and then double the exposure time for each successive picture. You might be able to see an image on your camera's LCD after the shot and gauge exposure that way.



Initially, your infrared images will be highly tinged with red, as shown in the picture on the left in Figure 15-1. Play around with them in your image editor to adjust brightness, contrast, and color. (Chapter 11 introduces how to make these adjustments by using an image editor.) The picture on the right in Figure 15-1, for example, shows the same shot rendered only through the Red channel in an image editor (which indeed makes the image look gray, in case you aren't familiar with channels).



**Figure 15-1:** Infrared shots initially look, well, red! You can also produce an eerie gray image like the one on the right in an image editor.

## *Lighting for All in Tents and Purposes*

One of the challenges of shooting close-up pictures of small objects is providing even lighting. You can arrange one or two (or even more) lights but might end up with unsightly shadows, harsh illumination, and reflections. There's a better way.



Pros use handy setups, or *tents*, to provide soft, even illumination for their close-up pictures. These are exactly what they sound like — tent-like arrangements of translucent material, such as cloth, arranged to cloak your item so that it can be illuminated from all sides through the covering. Just remember to leave a hole big enough for your lens to shoot through!

You can make a tent out of coat-hangers, bed sheets, or more elaborate devices. Plastic friction-fit plumbing pipes and joints make a good skeleton for tents of many sizes. You can assemble such a tent and tear it down on a moment's notice.



For small objects, I prefer a free-standing tent, such as the one shown in Figure 15-2, which is made out of a translucent plastic milk bottle. I cut off the bottom so I could fit the tent over the object being photographed, and removed the spout and enough plastic from the neck to insert my dSLR's macro lens. My milk-bottle tent can be illuminated from all sides and creates a soft, even lighting effect, like the one shown in Figure 15-3.



**Figure 15-2:** Cut up a gallon milk bottle to create a tent for shooting small objects.



**Figure 15-3:** Small porcelain figurines, coins, and other shiny objects are often best photographed inside a tent.

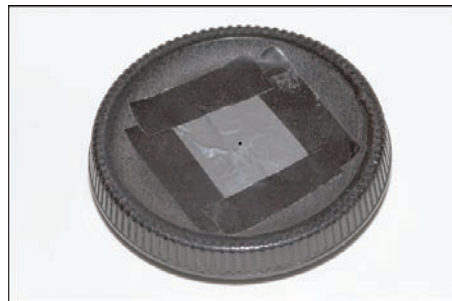
## Turning Your dSLR into a Pinhole Camera

You probably paid at least a few hundred dollars for the lens mounted on your dSLR right now. How would you like to play with a “lens” that cost you, maybe, five bucks? Now you, too, can turn your digital SLR into a pinhole camera by using the technique I explain in this section.

If you come to digital cameras from the film world, you might be way ahead of me. You likely experimented with pinhole cameras when you figured out exactly how images are produced. You can also use digital cameras as pinhole cameras. All you need is a pinhole!

An easy way to create a pinhole “lens” is to poke a hole in a body cap that’s used when no lens is mounted on your camera. (You might have to buy a real body cap if your camera came with a cheap plastic translucent cover instead.) The body cap already has a flange that fits your digital SLR’s lens mount. Find the exact center of the cap and cut a hole in the center. That hole is likely to be too large: the smaller and more precisely made your pinhole is, the sharper your pictures will be.

So, cover the hole you made with a piece of metal, as shown in Figure 15-4. Then, poke a tiny hole in the metal. I used a piece of aluminum foil pierced with a sewing needle, but you can use a piece cut from a cookie sheet or other thin metal —

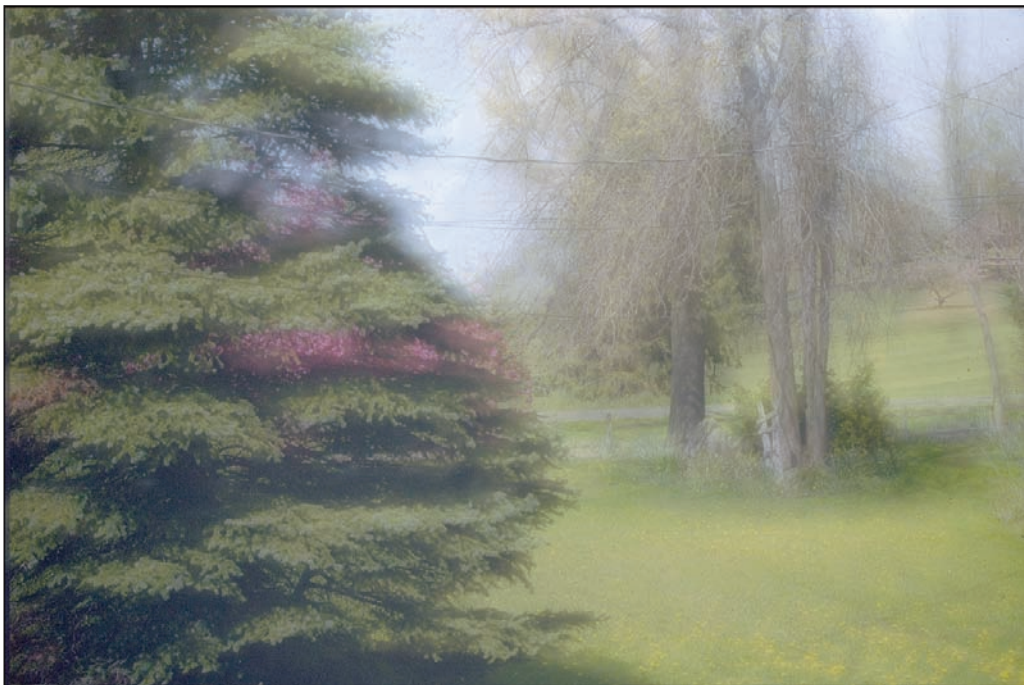


**Figure 15-4:** A hole pierced in a body cap can make a nifty pinhole “lens.”

the thinner the better. If you have a hobby hand drill with tiny bits, you can probably cut a precise hole in the metal sheet. Experiment with several different sizes until you get one that produces the sharpest image.

After you mount your pinhole lens, you can look through the viewfinder and see a fuzzy, dim image. If you have extension tubes, you can try mounting one between your camera body and your pinhole lens to change the “focal length” of the lens. The “f-stop” of the pinhole is so small that you don’t have to worry about focusing after you establish the correct distance away from the sensor to mount the pinhole. Virtually everything is in focus.

Of course, your aperture is so small you’ll have to mount the camera on a tripod and shoot time exposures, even in bright daylight. Figure 15-5 shows an image exposed for three seconds at f-whatever, using my own pinhole rig. (Actually, a quick calculation based on the normal exposure times in bright daylight, I’d estimate that my pinhole is approximately  $f/256!$ ) I always use manual exposure to make my pinhole pictures. If you’re using your camera’s meter, you might need to cover the viewfinder eyepiece to keep extraneous light from venturing inside and affecting the metering system.



**Figure 15-5:** Pinhole photographs have a fuzzy, romantic look. Get used to it!



## Warping Time with Time-Lapse Photography

Time-lapse photography is a great way to show a flower unfolding, the sun marching across the sky, the process of building construction, and, over the course of a year, the change of seasons. You can take time-lapse photos in two ways. One of them is pretty easy, works only with some dSLR cameras, and might require special software. The other way can be used with any dSLR, needs no special gadgets or applications, and is a whole lot of work.

The easy way usually requires tethering your camera to a computer through a USB cable, and working with software that can automatically trigger the camera to take a picture at intervals. The Nikon and Canon dSLRs have applications that can do this for you.

The images are automatically downloaded to the computer when they're taken, so you can take many more pictures in sequence than you could fit on a single memory card. Having your dSLR connected to an AC power source is a good idea because even cameras that use very little juice eventually deplete their batteries if left on and connected to a computer for hours at a time. (Your dSLR uses much more power when linked to a computer than when operating in standalone mode.)

The other way to shoot time-lapse photos calls for more effort on your part. No special software is needed, nor do you need to connect your camera to a computer. Instead, you can use a digital tool (the index digit of your right hand) to trigger each picture. Set your camera on a tripod and press the shutter release (or use a remote control/cable release) to take a picture at the interval you select. This can be a tedious process and is actually best suited for longer-term sequences, such as construction progress pictures or the "changing seasons" shots shown in Figure 15-6, which shows the same river bend in winter (top) and summer (bottom).



To take a series, you need to set up your camera in the exact same spot at intervals. The easiest way to do this is to mount the camera on a tripod and record the height the legs have been set, the extension of the center pole, and the tilt and angle of the tripod head. Then, mark the position of the tripod legs on the supporting surface. Then you can repeat your setup any time you want and take a series of pictures over the course of a few days or, in this case, a year. Be sure and use the same lens or zoom setting for each photo, too!



**Figure 15-6:** The same river bend in winter (top) and summer (bottom) has a dramatically different appearance.

## Expanding Your Creativity with Slow Shutter Speeds

Ordinarily, blurry images are considered a bad thing. When I use a shutter speed that's so slow that my subjects are rendered as a big blur, I tend to say something like, "Oh, I *meant* to do that! I was showing the fleetingness of time against the backdrop of our fast-paced society." Yeah, that's the ticket.

On the other hand, you *can* get some interesting images by using a slow shutter speed if you allow some portions of your image to blur while other portions remain razor-sharp. The classic application of this concept is the photograph of the babbling stream, with the woodsy surroundings rendered in sharp detail, while the flowing water merges into a ghostly blur.

The secret, of course, is to mount the camera on a tripod and use a slow shutter speed. Anything that moves is blurred, but the stationary surroundings are, in contrast, very sharp. Figure 15-7 shows a street scene, with blurry car headlights and tail lights adding some foreground interest.



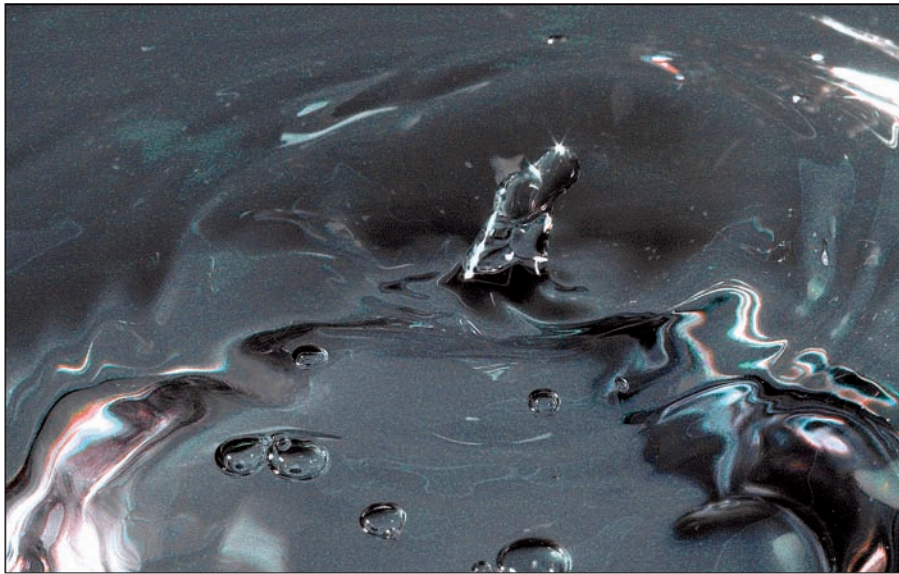
**Figure 15-7:** With a slow shutter speed, moving objects blur, while stationary objects are sharply rendered.



If you look around you, you can find lots of subjects that can become more interesting if you let them blur a little. Be sure to mount the camera on a tripod. Try different shutter speeds, reviewing your results on your dSLR's LCD until you find the speed that produces the effect you want. Use shutter priority mode and select a range of speeds from  $\frac{1}{30}$  of a second to about 1 second.

## *Capturing an Instant in Time with Fast Shutter Speeds*

Some subjects move so quickly that normally the human eye could never observe them. However, a very fast shutter speed can freeze a moment in time. Falling water, breaking light bulbs, bullets penetrating an apple, and other events that are over in an instant lend themselves to hyper-freezing techniques. Figure 15-8 shows the ripples and splashes produced by a drop of water landing in a glass. I illuminated it by placing an electronic flash off to the left and triggering an exposure manually. This method involves a lot of trial and error, but with digital cameras, you can easily take 30 or 40 pictures to get the exact one you want.



**Figure 15-8:** A tiny-fraction-of-a-second exposure can freeze the quickest action.

Most digital SLRs have shutter speeds of at least  $\frac{1}{4,000}$  of a second; some have speeds of  $\frac{1}{8,000}$  to  $\frac{1}{6,000}$  of a second. You can get even briefer “shutter speeds” by taking advantage of the fleeting duration of an electronic flash unit when used in close-up mode. Many strobes wink on and off in as little as  $\frac{1}{50,000}$  of a second when used up close. That’s because only a very quick flash is needed to properly expose an image from that range, but you can use the effect to stop action.



If you want to try freezing action with an electronic flash, use one that you can operate off-camera, connected with a cable. Or, try mounting your camera on a tripod, darkening the room, and shooting a time exposure. During the exposure, trip the flash manually by pressing the Test button. Because the room is dark, only the illumination from the flash is used for the exposure.

## Making Your Own Effects Filters

Believe it or not, filters were originally something you put on the front of your lens — not a plug-in mini-application found in image editors, such as Photoshop. Certainly, software filters can duplicate many of the effects of their glass or gelatin real-world counterparts, but that doesn’t mean you have to abandon the joy of using real, actual filters on your lens. Lots of special effects are tricky to duplicate in an image editor, such as polarization to remove reflections or split-filter gradients to even out the bright sky and dimmer foreground.



You don’t even have to *pay* for special effects filters. You can make your own. Manufacture them out of ordinary, fairly useless filters, like skylight or UV (ultraviolet) filters, or better yet, purchase a Series *x* adapter ring. Series adapter rings come in various sizes to suit the front filter diameter of your lens, with the *x* replaced by the number of the ring suitable for your lens, such as Series V, Series VI, Series VII, or Series VIII.

A Series *x* adapter ring comes in two parts:

- ✓ One part has a thread that screws into the front of your lens.
- ✓ The second part screws into the first part, usually with a filter of your devising between the two, forming a little sandwich of two metal rings and your custom filter inside.

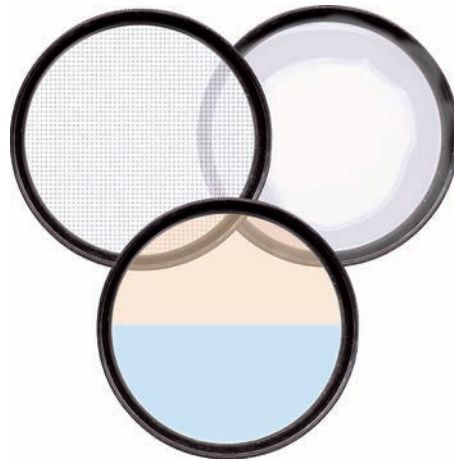
The Roman numeral designations show the relative size of the ring set. For example, Series IX rings are sized to fit lenses with filter threads of 72mm, 77mm, and larger. Series VIII rings are good for lenses with 62mm to about 67mm filter threads.

You can purchase step-up and step-down adapters so you can use, say, a Series IX ring on a lens with a 62mm thread. Mounting a larger ring on a smaller lens thread is always better, and you'll want to make sure the rings don't cause *vignetting* (darkening) in the corners of your image (which can be a particular problem with wide-angle lenses).



Here are some ideas for special effects filters that you can create on your own:

- ✓ **Starry night:** Use a piece of window screen cut to fit the Series rings to create a star filter that transforms each pinpoint of light into a star effect.
- ✓ **Color your world:** Cut a piece of gelatin filter material into a circle to fit in the Series ring to create a color filter.
- ✓ **Color your world times two:** Use two pieces of filter material of different colors to create a split-color filter. For example, you can use orange-red on top to give the sky a sunset color and blue on the bottom to add cool tones to the foreground. The “real” (expensive) filters of this type have a smooth gradient between the colors, but a quick-and-dirty split filter approach can work, too.
- ✓ **Life’s a blur:** Smear the outer edges of a piece of round glass (or another filter) with petroleum jelly to create a romantic blur filter. This method is great for portraits of females and teenagers with complexion problems.
- ✓ **Feature your filters:** Try shooting through a feather or other textured material to create interesting effects.



**Figure 15-9:** Create your own star filter (upper left), smudgy portrait filter (upper right), or split-field color filter (bottom).

Figure 15-9 shows some of these filters.

## Shooting the Works!

You don't have to wait until Independence Day to shoot fireworks. Lots of other events and celebrations, including baseball games and auto races, are commemorated with an aerial display. Perhaps you've avoided shooting fireworks because you thought capturing skyrockets in flight was too difficult. Or, maybe you just wanted to watch the show rather than fiddle with your camera. I'm here to tell you that you can do both!



The secret to shooting fireworks is to do a little planning. Here are some tips:

- ✓ **Choose your spot.** You can position yourself up close and capture the display from underneath the exploding canopy, or get farther back and shoot the fireworks against a skyline.

Both approaches work great. What you *don't* want is a view that is obstructed by buildings, trees, or very tall fellow observers.

- ✓ **Use a tripod.** Set your camera on a tripod so it remains rock-steady during exposures that can last several seconds.
- ✓ **Check it out.** Take a few pictures at the beginning of the display and evaluate them to make sure your exposures are reasonable. Try two to three seconds at  $f/8$  for starters. Focus on infinity!
- ✓ **Go long.** Use longer exposures to capture multiple bursts in one frame, as shown in Figure 15-10.
- ✓ **Shoot RAW.** Use your dSLR's RAW option so you can adjust exposure and other parameters as the image is imported into your photo editor.
- ✓ **Don't use noise reduction.** If your camera kicks into noise reduction (NR) mode automatically, disable it. Don't manually activate NR, either. The extra time required to create the noise reduction "dark frame" can cause you to miss the next blast-off.

Even a several-second exposure still looks good without this extra step.

- ✓ **Enjoy the show.** After you set up your camera and frame an area of the sky where the bursts will appear, just watch the display without peering through the viewfinder. Trigger your shots by pressing the shutter release button or using a remote control or cable release (if your dSLR can be used with one).



**Figure 15-10:** A long exposure can capture multiple bursts.

## Going for Baroque

Normally, you'll want to set your camera's controls to get the best-exposed, most realistic image. However, at times you might want to go for baroque and get a really over-the-top image right in the camera. Simply adjust your settings to get some off-the-wall results. Of course, if you shoot RAW, you can manipulate your images when importing them to your image editor to get much the same effects, but adjusting the camera's controls is faster and repeatable.

Here are some things to try:

- ✓ **Boost saturation/change the hue.** Set your camera's color saturation controls to the max to generate rich, unrealistic colors. Film photographers favored Kodak Ektachrome films for this very reason, and digital shooters can do the same thing electronically. Increasing saturation can also provide good color on dull, overcast days. Or, you can go overboard and *really* pump up the color richness while manipulating hues to create an otherworldly effect, as shown in Figure 15-11.





**Figure 15-11:** Crank up your color saturation and manipulate the hues to produce an offbeat look.

- ✓ **Enhance contrast.** Your dSLR probably has a contrast control intended to give you acceptable images of low-contrast subjects, but which can be subverted to produce high-contrast results of normal subjects. You lose detail in highlights and shadows, but that's what you're going for with this effect.
- ✓ **Add grain.** High ISO ratings can add unwanted noise to your images, except when it's *wanted* noise because of a creative decision. Crank your camera's sensitivity up all the way and then experiment. In bright light, you generally have to use high shutter speeds, small apertures, or both, but most digital SLRs can shoot photos on the beach at high noon at ISO 1,600 even if it means using  $\frac{1}{4,000}$  of a second at f/16.

## Going Crazy with Your Image Editor

Many digital SLR users have more experience fiddling with images in Photoshop than they do taking pictures with a dSLR. After all, Photoshop has been around since 1990 and was an excellent tool for modifying scanned film images long before digital cameras began hitting their stride a decade later.

So, odds are, you have no fear of image editing and you might, in fact, be striving to create an image that's as close to your vision as possible *in the camera* in order to reduce the time you spend in post-processing.

All the more reason to take your image editor to its limit and work on special effects (like the one shown in Figure 15-12) that unleash your creativity.



**Figure 15-12:** Every picture tells a story, but even the best story can be spiced up with editing.

# Ten Online Resources for Digital SLR Photography

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding the PBasics
  - ▶ Reviewing digital photography
  - ▶ Debugging your shutter
  - ▶ Mastering popular photography
  - ▶ Sharing with newsgroups
  - ▶ Creating luminous landscapes
  - ▶ Using photo bytes
  - ▶ Visiting with Rob Galbraith
  - ▶ Browsing Fred Miranda
  - ▶ I want my eBay!
- 

One of the advantages of using a digital SLR is that, in terms of new ideas, new techniques, new applications, and new add-on gadgets, the sky's the limit. Certainly, an imaginative photographer finds it challenging to wring every last bit of potential out of a non-SLR digital camera and can spend years doing so. But if the possibilities of an ordinary point-and-shoot camera are vast, the tricks you can do with a digital SLR are easily twice as vast. The expandability and versatility of a dSLR mean you have no excuse for doing things in a half-vast way (ahem).



One tool you'll want to avail yourself of is the Internet, with its unlimited treasure trove of ideas, showcases for your photos, equipment tests, and places to buy or sell dSLRs, lenses, and accessories. This chapter gets you started by introducing ten of the best online resources. (Although I give only ten resources the full feature treatment, I sprinkle in a couple bonus sites here and there.)



I provide all the links here, but you don't have to go to the trouble of typing them into your browser. Instead, go to [www.dbusch.com/dslrlinks.htm](http://www.dbusch.com/dslrlinks.htm), where you'll find a page full of clickable links for these sites and many more.

## All Your PBase Are Belong to Us

[www.pbase.com](http://www.pbase.com)

A ton of image-hosting sites out there let you upload your photos to a Web page album so anyone with access to the Internet can view them. However, most of these are aimed at consumers, not serious photographers. Album and image size might be limited, and the things that you can do with the albums might be confined to a few levels of sharing (that is, you might be able to share with everyone in the world, with a fixed list of users, or only by invitation). These sites are great if you want to share a few pictures online and perhaps order some prints, personalized calendars, or photo coffee mugs.

PBase has become wildly popular for a good reason: It goes well beyond the album sites to provide true online photo galleries — and a lot more besides. Here's a sampling of the features:

- ✓ **Explain your settings:** You can specify that the EXIF (image data) parameters of each photograph are available to viewers, so other photographers can see the settings you used to create a particular picture.
- ✓ **Search by keywords:** A search engine enables visitors to look for photographs — including yours — by using specific keywords.
- ✓ **Upload batches of photos at once:** You can upload batches of photos that have been compressed into archives (such as .zip files) to save time. (Most of the album sites ask you to upload non-zipped photo files individually and limit you to five to ten images.)
- ✓ **Link galleries:** You can link galleries that you create. So if you start a gallery showing off your sports photos, you can subdivide it into football, baseball, tennis, or other appropriate categories.
- ✓ **Link your photos to other forums:** If you frequent any of the various online discussion forums, such as those shown in Figure 16-1, you can link directly to your photos.

Many compatible sites can display PBase photos right in your postings, with buttons to zoom in and out.



PBase is even a terrific information resource. It publishes a magazine compiled entirely from the efforts of members. The premiere issue highlighted the work of two photographers and provided some useful tips on sensor cleaning.

PBBase galleries forum search					help	logout	home
PBBase Forum Index   FAQ   Search   Settings   You have no new messages   Log out [lasorfaire]							
Digital Cameras							
Users browsing this forum: lasorfaire					Goto page 1, 2, 3 ... 43, 44, 45 Next		
New Topic		PBBase Forum Index > Digital Cameras		Mark all topics read			
Topics	Replies	Author	Views	Last Post			
1 Sticky: Camera Database with sample photos [ oGoto page: 1, 2, 3, 4 ]	51	slu	80439	19 Apr 2007 03:26 am ewhelen <img alt="arrow"/>			
1 Sticky: Where is the best place on line to buy? [ oGoto page: 1, 2, 3, 4 ]	59	aga30me	27748	06 Apr 2007 10:30 pm thecellatrol <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Refurbished Canons	1	courtleigh	29	07 May 2007 03:45 pm glo <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Macro, multipurpose and wildlife lenses Ideas? for Canon 30D	12	olstercote	760	07 May 2007 02:37 pm dano <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Where can I buy the LENOVO digital camera in USA?	3	wonochi	90	07 May 2007 10:29 am drou <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Help pls! Sigma 10-20mm doesn't work with D50	2	zzhou	64	07 May 2007 05:26 am zzhou <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Using Lens from 35mm Rebel on Digital Rebel	3	courtleigh	52	07 May 2007 03:30 am drc21 <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Tripod Recommendations	3	uplander	102	06 May 2007 04:16 pm angstrom <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 News...My Meeting with PENTAX Today! [ oGoto page: 1, 2 ]	21	benikan	404	05 May 2007 03:03 pm glo <img alt="arrow"/>			
2 Purple, cyan and magenta fringes with a Sony DCR-TRV730	2	woodsmith	124	04 May 2007 11:53 pm woodsmith <img alt="arrow"/>			

**Figure 16-1:** Forums in PBbase are devoted to topics, like Digital Cameras.

Of course, something this good isn't free. You can check out PBbase for 30 days with 10MB of online disk storage. If you like it, a hefty 500MB of storage (enough for more than 2,000 images of an average 250 KB size) costs \$23 a year (less than \$2 a month) at the time of this writing. If you need 1,500MB of online space, that's \$60 a year, and you can add more storage in 500MB increments for a reasonable cost.

## Digital Photography Viewed and Reviewed

www.dpreview.com

An incredible free resource is Digital Photography Review (usually called DPRreview). DPRreview is a top-notch site for information about any digital SLR camera. A British chap named Phil Askey publishes this site with help from a knowledgeable staff and thousands of avid fans and visitors. Amazon.com recently purchased this site, but it's too soon to see what changes — if any — the new parent company will make. Phil was advertising for new reviewers and technicians to beef up the content when this book went to press.



Visiting DPReview needn't cost you anything but your time, which is well-spent. However, you can donate funds through any credit card or PayPal, or you can support the effort by purchasing a t-shirt, coffee mug, tote bag, or whatever.

It's no exaggeration to say I spend a minimum of 30 minutes at this site virtually every day of the year. Here are the kinds of useful features at DPReview that will keep you coming back for more:

✔ **User forums:** You can find individual forums for all the key digital SLR cameras (as well as non-dSLRs) from Canon, Nikon, Sony, Pentax, Kodak, Fuji, and Sigma. There are even separate forums for topics, such as Canon SLR Lens Talk, Nikon SLR Lens Talk, Lighting, Storage and Media, and Retouching. Those who own a particular camera model enjoy the specialized forums for groups of cameras, such as the Nikon D40/D40x/D50/D70/D80, Nikon D1/D2/D200, Canon 300/350/400, Canon 10D/20D/30D, and so forth. Even with all these subdivisions, most of the forums have hundreds of fascinating posts a day. I spend most of my time on this site just trying to keep abreast of the interesting discussions.

✔ **Camera comparisons:** The site has separate pages for each digital camera vendor, listing *all* the most recent models, with complete specifications for every camera and links to reviews. For example, the Nikon page lists 33 different Nikon models in detail and links to 17 discontinued models. You can compare the features of cameras from different vendors, too, as shown in Figure 16-2.



Be sure to use this trove of information to compare cameras. For example, if you want to know the sensor size of the Canon Digital Rebel XTi compared to that of the Nikon D40x, simply retrieve that information with a couple clicks.



✔ **Comprehensive reviews:** The DPReview evaluations of cameras are among the most complete and thorough available on the Internet. For example, the review of one recent Nikon dSLR is 26 pages long and includes a description of every feature, screen shots of each menu, tests, sample images, and an evaluation of the software that comes with the camera. You can even listen to the sound the shutter makes if that's important to you. These reviews don't appear the instant a camera comes on the market, but they're worth waiting for.

✔ **Daily news updates:** The main page provides a listing of the main digital photography news stories of the day and more than a few rumors. You can find things, like notices of the latest firmware updates for your camera, new product introduction announcements, and other breaking stories.

✔ **An online glossary:** Wonder what *bokeh* is? You can find a glossary on the DPReview site that explains this and just about any other term you care to look up.

Digital Cameras Side-by-Side, 3 cameras			
	Nikon D-40X	Nikon D80	Canon EOS-1D Mark III
Image			
More information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Announced 06-Mar-07</li> <li>Preview article</li> <li>All Nikon products</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Announced 09-Aug-06</li> <li>Our in-depth review</li> <li>Our samples gallery</li> <li>All Nikon products</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Announced 22-Feb-07</li> <li>All Canon products</li> </ul>
Discussion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nikon D80/D70/D50/D40 Forum</li> <li>Find related discussion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nikon D80/D70/D50/D40 Forum</li> <li>Find related discussion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Canon EOS-1D/1Ds/5D Forum</li> <li>Find related discussion</li> </ul>
Owners opinions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Read owners opinions (22)</li> <li>Post / Edit your opinion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Read owners opinions (97)</li> <li>Post / Edit your opinion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Read owners opinions (3)</li> <li>Post / Edit your opinion</li> </ul>
Support this site by purchasing from our affiliate merchants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>\$704.95 at Beach Camera</li> <li>\$729.99 at RitzCamera.com</li> <li>\$729.99 at Willoughbys Est. 1898</li> <li>\$704.95 at Abes Of Maine</li> <li>\$729.00 at PCNation.com</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>\$999.99 at Crutchfield</li> <li>\$999.99 at RitzCamera.com</li> <li>\$949.99 at Circuit City</li> <li>\$999.95 at Willoughbys Est. 1898</li> <li>\$924.00 at PCNation.com</li> <li>\$899.95 at LITPhoto.com</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click here to check price / order</li> </ul>

**Figure 16-2:** DPReview's Side-by-Side comparison feature lets you pit one camera's features against another's.

As I write this, DPReview is fast closing in on 750 *million* visitors since it began keeping track in January 1999. You should jump on the bandwagon, too.

## For the Shutterbug in You

[www.shutterbug.net](http://www.shutterbug.net)

If you're an old-line photographer, someone who was a serious photo hobbyist back when people had to use something called *film*, you'll appreciate the full-spectrum viewpoint provided by this venerable resource. It's an online adjunct to *Shutterbug* magazine, and as such, it covers digital photography in depth as well as recent and classic film cameras, photo techniques, and other topics of interest.

Like DPReview, Shutterbug's strength lies in its forums, which, like the magazine and Web site, span a broad range of interests. You can find forums dedicated to Nikon, Canon, Pentax, Olympus, and Sony digital SLRs. Shutterbug also offers several forums for the film SLR counterparts (always a good source for information about compatible lenses and accessories), along with forums for inkjet, dye sublimation, and traditional silver halide printing. Color management, lighting and exposure, and collectible cameras are also covered.

Whereas DPReview's product evaluations are mostly devoted to digital cameras, Shutterbug looks at all kinds of items, including equipment bags, gadgets, books, and photo shows. You can find interesting monthly columns, too.

## Pop Goes the Photo!

[www.poppphoto.com](http://www.poppphoto.com)

*Popular Photography & Imaging* magazine has been the most authoritative resource for serious amateur photographers for longer than most of us have been alive. Indeed, long-time editor and columnist Herbert Keppler, who has been providing insights since the 1950s, understands the progress that's been made in the photographic industry because he's *lived* through much of it.

The addition of a Web site as a supplement to the magazine's coverage and increasing emphasis on digital photography prove that venerable doesn't have to equal stodgy or old-fashioned. Pop Photo remains as up-to-date as the latest digital camera, and most of the time, it's several steps ahead of the technology in its predictions. (In the interest of full disclosure, I should point out that I'm a contributor to *Popular Photography & Imaging* from time to time — but I've been a subscriber and avid reader ever since I was in high school.)



The Popular Photography Web site's strength is its authoritative voice when it comes to the technology. The editors really, *really* understand all the finer points of digital and conventional photographic imaging, and their lab tests of equipment are unmatched. When you read the performance figures on various lenses or other equipment, you have information at your fingertips that you can use to go out and make purchases with confidence.

Nowhere else can you find solid information available in such depth. Can a 16.2MP digital SLR produce better results than a fine-grain ISO 100 film? What are the seven most significant breakthroughs in tripod design? What are



some of the best photos taken in the last year? The answers are all available at the Popular Photography Web site. The site offers forums, of course, but it also provides lots of tips and tricks, how-to's, workshops, and videos.

## News Groupies

Internet newsgroups, known to old-timers as *Usenet*, are a wonderful, unbridled resource where anything goes. Groups with names like `rec.photo.digital`, `rec.photo.digital.slr-systems`, or `rec.photo.digital.rangefinder` remind you of the Old West, full of gunslingers and common folk, sheep-herders and cattlemen (think Canon users versus Nikon gunslingers). The only law in the land of Usenet anarchy is whoever wins has the most time to spend posting.

Newsgroups are a little like the online forums sponsored by DPReview, Shutterbug, or Pop Photo, only less focused. Posts range far and wide, and you're likely to see hundreds of different topics and comments in a particular group on virtually anything — in a single day. One key strength of Usenet is this diversity: You're bound to stumble across information you'd never pick up anywhere else, in a refreshing, serendipitous way. Another advantage is the potential for speed: If you have a question, you can post it on a newsgroup and sometimes get an answer in minutes.



Newsgroups operate in a way that's a little different from purely Web-based resources. The information doesn't reside on a single, central Web server as it does with pages that you access through a browser, such as Internet Explorer. Instead, messages are received by a loosely connected network of news servers scattered around the world. The news servers might be operated by your Internet service provider (ISP) for free access by the ISP's customers. AOL, Roadrunner, and other ISPs all operate their own news servers. They also decide which newsgroups to carry. Or, you can access newsgroups through free or fee-based services, such as TeraNews or GigaNews. These sources often carry a larger and more varied selection of newsgroups than those offered by ISPs and keep the postings available for longer periods of time.

The most common way to access newsgroups is through a special program, or *client*, called a newsreader. Among the most popular newsreaders are Free Agent and the newsreader built into Outlook Express. However, you can also search through newsgroup postings with a Web browser by accessing Google Groups (<http://groups-beta.google.com>).

After you launch your newsreader, you need to tell it which news server to use, connect to that server, and download a list of groups available from that source. (Sources can number 50,000 or more!) Choose which groups you want to monitor by *subscribing*. Then you can download the available message headers (titles of the posts), sort through them, and mark specific messages for retrieval.

You can sort messages by parameters, including author and date, but messages are most frequently listed by *thread*, that is, all the messages stemming from an original post. Viewing threads lets you follow a discussion easily. At any time, you can respond to a post by typing a message of your own. After you send your reply, it's uploaded to your particular news server and then, in minutes or hours, is distributed (*or propagated*) to all the other news servers that carry that particular newsgroup.

Although the process might sound complicated, newsgroups are a great resource for collecting a lot of varied information on many different topics. Figure 16-3 shows a typical newsgroup search conducted from Google.

The screenshot shows a Google search for "rec.photo.digital Dave Busch" on the Google Groups platform. The search results are sorted by relevance and show several relevant posts from the "rec.photo.digital" newsgroup. The posts include discussions about digital cameras, computer hardware for digital photography, and digital image storage. The interface includes navigation links like "Web", "Images", "Video", "News", "Maps", and "more »", along with options for "Advanced Groups Search" and "Preferences".

Google Groups | My Groups | Favories | Profile | Help | My Account | Sign out

Web Images Video News Maps more »

rec.photo.digital Dave Busch Search Advanced Groups Search Preferences

Groups View all web results » Results 1 - 49 of 49 for rec . photo . digital Dave Busch

**Digital Camera advice sought** Group: [alt.marketing.online.ebay](#) Sorted by relevance Sort by date  
OK, nuff said **Dave**..... off to take a look. Les ... camera! Les Check out the newsgroup **rec.photo.digital**. About 1000 message a day, most of them recommendations about what digital camera to buy.  
Aug 14 2003 by Les & Claire - 11 messages - 5 authors

**Newbie book(s) on digital SLR** Group: [rec.photo.digital.slr-systems](#)  
... To me, this book was a wonderful discovery, and well worth every penny. Hope this helps, Charles I'm not familiar with that particular title myself, but **Dave Busch** can be relied upon to put out a worthwhile book ...  
Jun 4 2006 by Warren - 6 messages - 5 authors

**Computer Horsepower for Digital Photography** Group: [rec.photo.digital](#)  
I build computers, and my current pc for digital photography is: AMD Athlon XP2500+ cpu (Barton core) overclocked to 2.4ghz ATI Radeon 9800Pro 128mb video card Abit NF7 motherboard 1gb PC3500 RAM at 166mhz 80gb Samsung 7200rpm hard drive ...  
Jan 31 2005 by Ron Hunter - 105 messages - 29 authors

**New computer...what kind of monitor?** Group: [rec.photo.digital](#)  
My followup to this message from tom ander. @ncmail.net (Tom Anderson) offers little new information: I'm shopping for a new home computer that I will also use for digital photo-editing and printing. ...  
Aug 8 2003 by Dave Busch - 15 messages - 13 authors

**Extra hard disc to store digital images?** Group: [rec.photo.digital](#)  
Hi... I agree completely, but go even one step further... the pictures of my youngsters are amongst my most precious possessions. Blank CD's are cheap. So, when I back up (to closed CD's, btw) I make two copies of each ...  
Dec 13 2003 by Ken Weitzel - 6 messages - 5 authors

**Original Nikon F lens compatibility with digital SLR cameras?** Group: [rec.photo.digital](#)

**Figure 16-3:** Google newsgroup searches can yield lots of good information.

## Landscapes Can Be Luminous

[www.luminous-landscape.com](http://www.luminous-landscape.com)

Calling The Luminous Landscape a Web site devoted to landscape and nature photography is a little like calling the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* a collection of articles. This site is, above all, amazingly comprehensive, with more than 2,000 *pages* of information, articles, tutorials, product reviews, and photographs.



This site has everything you'd want to know about nature photography but goes far beyond that. Here are some of the features to check out:

- ✓ The site's *Understanding* series of tutorials covers everything from SLR viewfinders and how they work to sensor cleaning. You can discover how to use unsharp masking, work with histograms, and use polarizing filters effectively.
- ✓ The *Tutorial* series covers digital workflow, pinhole photography, high dynamic range photography, and other topics.
- ✓ You can find lists of workshops occurring around the world. (China, Africa, Antarctica, Ireland, and Iceland are just a few destinations where these workshops have been held in the past.)
- ✓ The descriptions of prime shooting locations for nature photography help you find new places to take photos.
- ✓ Oh yeah — and don't miss the essays, regular columns, and hundreds of product reviews on cameras, tripods, and other essentials.

If you're interested in nature, landscape, or documentary photography, you must visit this site. However, everyone from sports photographers to portrait specialists can discover something by stopping by.

## Photos That Don't Bite

[www.bytephoto.com](http://www.bytephoto.com)

I include BytePhoto because it's a slightly lesser-known site that deserves a little more attention, if only for its quirkiness. It includes lots of features but is especially strong as a portal to other sites. For example, BytePhoto offers online galleries, but you can also find links to sharing services, including

SmugMug ([www.smugmug.com](http://www.smugmug.com)), which is the strongest competitor to PBase. BytePhoto gives you links to other interesting pages on external sites, a Google search box for combing the Net, and a ton of ads with interesting offers you might want to jump to.

BytePhoto offers news, reviews (not especially great, but interesting), and photo contests. You can also find tutorials on image editing, Photoshop Actions (macros), and the usual collection of forums. If you have old gear to unload or things to buy, you might find the classified ads useful. (One of the site's forums contains the ads.) You might need to use the home page's search box to find a particular feature, but it's worth the look.

## Cult of Personality

When you search the Web, you'll find a ton of sites founded and operated by individuals, such as [www.kenrockwell.com](http://www.kenrockwell.com) (good stuff, but focusing mostly on Nikon and *highly* opinionated), [www.fredmiranda.com](http://www.fredmiranda.com), and [www.robgalbraith.com](http://www.robgalbraith.com) (which I discuss next).

### Rob Galbraith

[www.robgalbraith.com](http://www.robgalbraith.com)



Rob is probably best known for his exhaustive evaluation of CompactFlash (CF) and Secure Digital (SD) card performance data. He has tested virtually every CF and SD card available, with just about every camera on the market. There are more than 20 pages of tables and data to pore through. If you want to know how a SanDisk Extreme III 8GB CompactFlash card performs with a Nikon D2Xs, you'll find that information. These tests are quite literally the Bible of the industry.

Although Rob no longer offers forums, as he did in the past, the site includes a good list of links to other useful Web pages, from the American Society of Media Photographers (ASMP) to *National Geographic*. There are authoritative news and reports, links to software upgrades, and the usual array of ads that help pay for the cost of publishing all this information online.

Most photographer-run sites focus more on promoting the photographer than providing solid information, but this is one exception.

## Charmin' Miranda

www.fredmiranda.com

Another photographer who believes it's better to give than receive is Fred Miranda. His gorgeous site is bursting with valuable information, all arranged logically and easy to access. Lots of digital photographers agree: On a recent night when I logged in, nearly 1,500 *other* photographers were also using the site at that exact moment!

Of course, Fred does hawk some amazing software, but in an unobtrusive way. You almost have to stumble across the FM Software offerings, mostly Photoshop plug-ins and Actions that do tasks such as reduce noise, resize photos, or manage workflow.



You'll be highly engaged by the forums, as shown in Figure 16-4, which are some of the best available online, with contributions from more than 70,000 members. You can also find useful articles and reviews, as well as image hosting. Even if you don't want to set up showcases of your own, you'll definitely want to browse the hosted galleries. You can get lots of ideas by viewing other photographers' best efforts.

Topics	Topic Starter	Posts	Views	Latest Post
<a href="#">Two New Forums Coming!</a> [1] 2 3 ... Last	Jeff	59	4603	2 hours ago by Badvmc
<a href="#">Canon autofocus information</a> [1] 2 3 ... Last	Jeff	36	5388	5 hours ago by Steve_T90
<a href="#">1.3x + Fisheye??</a>	Zane Yau	5	181	3 minutes ago by pasisalminen
<a href="#">how do you know how many shots...</a>	alarratt	2	9	4 minutes ago by cmama

**Figure 16-4:** The forums are one of the more engaging parts of Fred Miranda's Web site.

## Don't Miss eBay

[www.ebay.com](http://www.ebay.com)

Once called “the nation’s garage sale,” eBay is one online resource that really pays if you have old equipment to unload. It’s also a great place for registered members to locate hard-to-find camera equipment at reasonable prices. Although [www.keh.com](http://www.keh.com), a real camera dealer in Atlanta, [www.bhphotovideo.com](http://www.bhphotovideo.com), and [www.adorama.com](http://www.adorama.com) (all reliable dealers) are the go-to organizations for much new and used stuff, nothing beats eBay for variety and, if you get caught up in bidding, excitement.

I know whereof I speak. I’ve had more than 8,000 transactions on eBay myself, and I ended up writing a book about my experiences, *The eBay Myth Buster*, available from the same John Wiley & Sons folks who brought you this tome. (You can pick up a copy through my Web site at [www.dbusch.com](http://www.dbusch.com) or visit your local or online bookstore.)

eBay is a great place to locate new and used equipment at a price you’re willing to pay, especially if you do some research ahead of time and have a good idea of what an item is truly worth. The venue does best with supplies (such as ink for inkjet printers), older cameras and lenses, and difficult-to-find accessories. For example, when I picked up a used 170–500mm zoom lens from my local camera dealer, no lens hood was available for it. The lens hood I found on eBay was delivered to me in less than a week for quite a bit less than my dealer would’ve charged for a special order.

Perhaps you’re looking for older, manual-focus (MF) lenses that are compatible with your dSLR. A MF macro lens for \$150 probably performs as well as a new auto-focus (AF) version for two or three times as much, and you can probably get away with manual focus for precision close-up work anyway.

Perhaps you’re upgrading to a new camera and want to sell your old one. Your dealer or a company, like KEH, will be glad to buy it from you, but they must offer enough less than the camera’s worth to allow for some profit when they resell. Peddle the camera on eBay and your net might be a lot more than you would’ve gotten as a trade-in or selling outright with a dealer.

Ever since I went all-digital, I’ve been slowly selling off my film cameras on eBay. Figure 16-5 shows an edited version of an eBay auction I conducted for a beloved old half-frame camera I wanted to relocate to a new home.

Back to home page Listed in category: Cameras & Photo > Film Cameras > 35mm SLR > Olympus

**Very RARE Olympus 42mm f1.2 with Pen FT camera, case.** Item number: 75123


You are signed in This item is being tracked in My eBay | Email to a

reps You have 1 offer on this item. Do buyers see this section? No. This is your own customized information will not be displayed to others.

[Revise your item](#)  
[Promote your item](#)  
[Sell a similar item](#)


**RARE Olympus H-Zuiko Auto-S f1.2 42mm lens Serial # 103657  
 with Olympus Pen FT camera (chrome)**

[Click for larger image](#)



**This rare lens comes mounted on my non-rare Pen FT (shown), which comes with a never-ready leather case. Both camera and lens are in excellent condition, with little visible wear, no major scratches, dings, or lost paint. Both lens and camera have been sitting idle for a decade and have collected some dust which should be easily cleaned. I don't sell cameras for a living; I write books, so I'm unable to provide a professional grading rating. However, this camera looks sharp, and everything works just fine.**

[Click for larger image](#)



**Figure 16-5:** Sell your old film gear on eBay and use the proceeds to buy new digital stuff!



Here are a few keys to using eBay successfully:

- **Check the seller's feedback.** Each eBay ID has a Feedback Rating number next to it, which represents the net number of positive feedbacks (that is, positives minus negatives) received. Click the number to view the actual feedback comments. Sellers or buyers with 50 to 100 or more positives and no negatives are probably reliable. Those with fewer feedbacks or a few negatives might also be good eggs, but be sure to check a little further. The venue recently added more detailed feedback ratings that allow buyers to rate sellers on delivery promptness and other aspects of the transaction.

- ✔ **Pay for your items by using your credit card through a service like PayPal.** Although eBay provides a modicum of buyer protection, if you use your credit card through PayPal, you have two extra levels of security. If a deal goes awry, PayPal might be able to get you a refund. If not, you can go directly to the credit card company and frequently get a chargeback that way. Scams are fairly rare on eBay in the overall scheme of things. If you avoid deals that seem too good to be true (for example, a Nikon D40x for \$200), you won't easily fall victim.
- ✔ **Don't expect sensational deals on cameras or lenses that have just been introduced.** It's unlikely that "used" ones are available in any case, and the new ones are probably being sold by dealers who have a profit margin to make. New cameras are likely to be no more than about \$50 cheaper than you'd pay locally (if that), but you can save on local sales tax, unless you're a New York resident. In most cases, you'll do better on newly introduced equipment at B&H Photo or Adorama.
- ✔ **Don't buy memory cards on eBay.** There's a robust trade in counterfeit memory cards (mostly purporting to SanDisk models), and an alarming percentage of rock-bottom CompactFlash or SD card offerings are bogus. Even though eBay stomps out evil sellers almost as fast as they appear, the odds are still against you. Unless a seller has hundreds or thousands of favorable feedbacks, you're better off buying your memory cards elsewhere.
- ✔ **When purchasing used equipment, see whether you can get a money-back guarantee or an inspection period.** This gear is frequently sold as-is, which can be okay if the seller is well-respected (has a lot of positive feedback), but risky if the seller is new.



# Ten (Or More) Confusing Concepts Clarified

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ A certain ambience
  - ▶ Also known as anti-aliasing
  - ▶ Bracket busting
  - ▶ Just an aberration
  - ▶ Artful dodging
  - ▶ Fill-in flash
  - ▶ Get hyper
  - ▶ It's no loss
  - ▶ That's a moiré
  - ▶ Saturation effect
  - ▶ Crossing the threshold
  - ▶ Using tolerance
  - ▶ Look sharp, be sharp
- 

**p**hotography is easy: It's the jargon that's difficult! Today's digital SLRs make it simple to point and shoot and get great pictures right out of the box. Even the most basic dSLR is smart enough to save you from your own mistakes when your ambitions don't extend beyond simple scenes, simple set-ups, and simple subjects.



It's when you want to spread your wings and try different techniques that more advanced features and more advanced photographic concepts come into play. At that point, it's a good idea to become comfortable with that jargon — not so that you can sound knowledgeable when hanging around with other photographers, but so you can put those sometimes-confusing concepts to work for you. I explain all the key terms throughout this book, but here I single out a few of the trickiest relating to cameras, photography, and image editing.

## *Ambient Lighting/Available Lighting*

Ambient lighting is sometimes confused with *available lighting* or *existing lighting*, which are themselves often confusing for those not steeped in photo jargon. Available and existing lighting are the same thing (or should be) and are most commonly defined as the illumination that's already present in a scene, whether it's sunlight, street lights, moonlight (outdoors), or lamps and other light sources (indoors), including light that streams into the room from outside through windows, doors, or openings. Add-on sources — including additional lamps or electronic flash — may be considered *available* (if you have them on hand), but they're not *existing*. (Hence the confusion.)

Ambient lighting, on the other hand, is something entirely different; although, in most cases, you'd consider it to be available or existing light. In practice, *ambient lighting* is nondirectional lighting that appears to come from “everywhere” rather than from a single source. It's soft and diffuse, and is supplied by light bouncing off the ceiling, walls, or other objects in a scene. When used with a stronger primary light source, ambient light fills in dark shadows and pares the rough edges off contrasty lighting transitions. Ambient lighting is your friend, now that you know what it is and how to best use it.

## *Anti-Aliasing*

*Anti-aliasing* is an edge-smoothing process applied by your camera and/or by an image-editing program to account for the fact that the seamless analog information in your original scene must be converted into discrete rectangular pixels when the picture is digitized.

Blocky little pixels work great for reproducing straight lines but aren't so great for creating curves or diagonal lines. Without anti-aliasing, you'd end up with ragged edges, like the one shown at top in Figure 17-1. Anti-aliasing creates partially transparent pixels along these boundaries, which merge into smoother, non-jaggy lines when viewed (bottom of Figure 17-1).

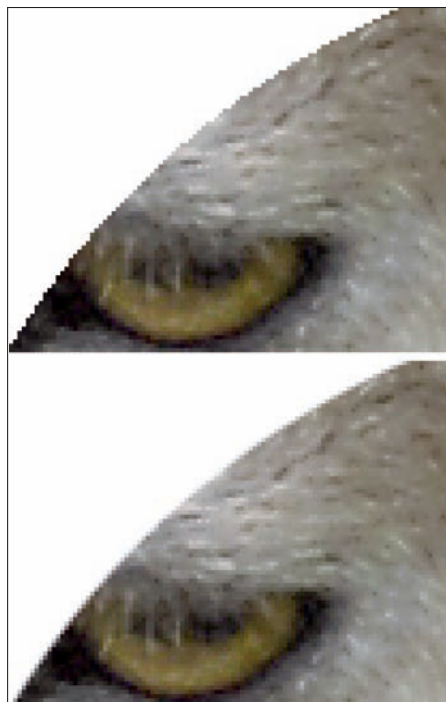
## Bracketing

Even small changes in settings can make a difference to finicky photographers, and *bracketing* is a way of providing several alternate “takes” at different exposures, color balance settings, or using other parameters so you can choose the one that best suits your image.

Many (but not all) digital SLRs have a bracketing feature that automatically takes successive exposures at incremental settings you specify. For example, you can choose to take the first picture at the exposure setting determined by the camera's meter and a specified number of photos (typically three or five) at exposures that are less and more than the calculated exposure. The bracketed exposures can be taken by you one at a time (until the requested number of bracketed shots are completed) or taken rapidly, one after another, when the dSLR is in continuous shooting/burst mode.

Certain dSLRs may allow you to bracket parameters other than just exposure, such as white balance or color; specify the order in which the bracketed shots are exposed; or set the size of the increment between shots (such as  $\frac{1}{2}$  stop,  $\frac{1}{3}$  stop, or one full stop). You may also be able to bracket electronic flash exposures as well.

Figure 17-2 shows a series of bracketed exposures (top) and color balance changes (bottom).



**Figure 17-1:** A jaggy line (top) can be smoothed with anti-aliasing (bottom).



**Figure 17-2:** Many digital SLRs can bracket exposure (top), color (bottom), or both.

## Chromatic Aberration

*Chromatic aberration (CA)*, which produces colored blurs and/or green/purple fringes around the outlines of an object, is usually most obvious in backlit subjects, as shown by the purple fringes around the pine branches in Figure 17-3. CA is caused by the inability of the lens to focus all the colors of light at the same plane on the sensor. That splits the red/green/blue light into separate components, like a prism, and the stray colors are diverted to one side (with *lateral chromatic aberration*) or to form a color-tinged blur (with *axial or longitudinal chromatic aberration*). Neither form is much fun to find in your photographs.

Although you can partially reduce axial CA with a smaller f-stop, both types are defects that you must avoid (by checking reviews before purchase to see if a particular lens suffers badly from chromatic aberration), live with, or — if you have Photoshop or a specialized add-on tool — fix. Photoshop's Lens Correction filter can counter some chromatic aberration, and DxO Labs ([www.dxo.com](http://www.dxo.com)) offers DxO Optics Pro, which has remedies for many types of lens and perspective distortion.



**Figure 17-3:** Chromatic aberration can cause green or purple fringing.

## *Dodging/Burning*

Back in the film era, a skilled darkroom worker who was an artful dodger could hold back portions of an image while a print was made with an *enlarger* (a type of vertical projector that casts an image through the negative or positive film on a piece of photosensitive paper). By moving the hands or various light-blocking tools in the light path while the exposure was made, portions of the image subjected to dodging ended up darker than they would've if the exposure was allowed to proceed unhindered. The converse was true for *burning*, in which all portions of an image were blocked *except* the portions exposed for an added period of time.

Dodging and burning allowed darkening or lightening of only certain portions of an image, thus toning down highlight areas that would otherwise be washed out and preventing shadow areas to preserve detail. Similar techniques are available in all image editors today, but many digital photographers confuse the two because they don't know where the terms came from. Now you know.

## Fill Flash

Flash? *Outdoors?* What am I thinking? Actually, even if plenty of light is available for an acceptable exposure, that illumination may not provide a decent picture. That's especially true in bright sunlight or other situations in which the highlights are much brighter than the shadows. The result? Shadows that are way too dark. Providing extra exposure to those inky shadows doesn't help: The highlights are then washed out.

The solution is to flip up your camera's built-in flash and let it do its stuff. Digital SLRs are smart enough to recognize situations in which the electronic flash should be used at a lower power setting to fill in shadows without washing out the highlights. Your camera may do this for you automatically or may have a Fill Flash setting somewhere in the menus that tells the dSLR to throttle back the strobe. The goal is to provide just enough of a kick with the flash to brighten the shadows, without making it obvious that a flash was used. As a bonus, you may find that the Fill Flash adds some useful sparkle to the eyes of human subjects who are looking directly at the camera, as shown in Figure 17-4. A reddish filter placed over the flash can add some warmth, too.



Figure 17-4: Fill Flash brightens dark shadows.

## Hyperfocal Distance

The hyperfocal distance is a quick way of stretching your available depth-of-field so it's most useful. This distance is a point of focus where everything in your scene from half the hyperfocal distance to infinity appears to be acceptably sharp.

For example, if a hyperfocal distance is six feet, everything from three feet to infinity would look sharp at the most common print sizes and viewing distances. (Apparent depth-of-field varies, depending on how close you are to the image and its magnification.) The actual hyperfocal distance varies by the lens and the f-stop in use; Google **hyperfocal length** to find Web pages with tables that list the distance for a particular focal length and f-stop.

Knowing the hyperfocal distance (even if only a rough estimate) is useful if you want to be ready for a “grab” shot. Turn off your dSLR's autofocus, set the lens at the hyperfocal distance for the f-stop you'll be using, and you can snap off a picture quickly without having to wait for the camera to lock in focus.

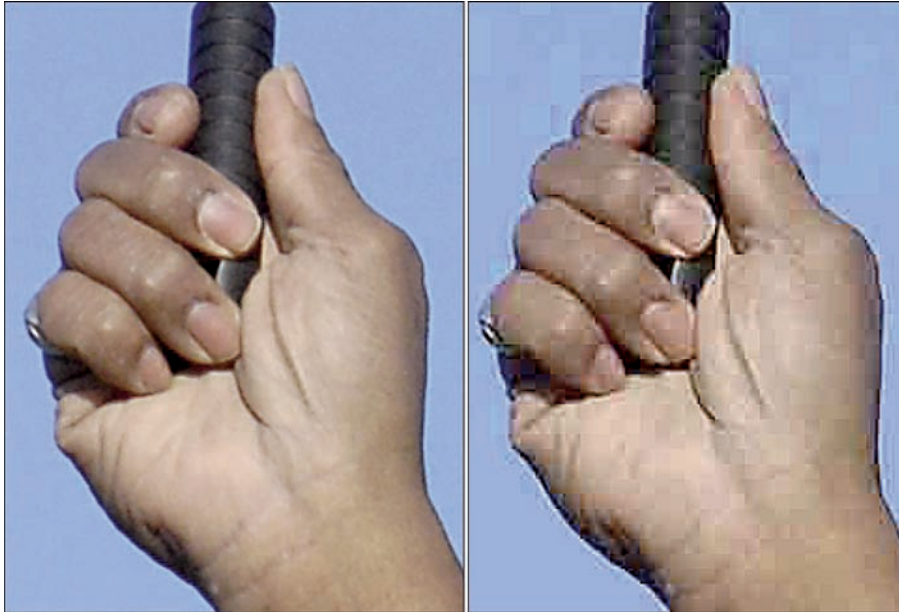
## Lossy/Lossless Compression

*Lossy* and *lossless* are terms that cause confusion, partially because the former uses a word that's not officially a part of the English language (I know *lossy* causes Microsoft Word fits until you add it to your custom dictionary). *Lossy* compression is the opposite of *lossless* compression. Both schemes squeeze down the size of image files (thus saving space on your memory card and computer hard disk) by replacing the long strings of information that represent the image data with shorter numbers.

The TIFF and compressed RAW file formats are examples of lossless or virtually lossless file formats (some dSLRs can also use an *uncompressed* RAW format). Lossless methods do reduce file size, but retain all the information in the original image so that the uncompressed version can be reconstituted at any time.

Lossy compression, used in JPEG files and some other formats, takes an additional step and examines an image for redundant information that makes little or no difference visually when the squeezed image is viewed. After you've compressed an image and some of the image data is discarded, you have no way to restore the original image. If you re-save the same image as a JPEG file over and over, you lose some image quality each time.

Digital cameras and image editors that use lossy compression offer options for selecting the amount of compression (and the amount of information lost), so you can end up with an image that's virtually undetectable from the original (as shown on the left in Figure 17-5) or one that's much smaller but has a noticeable amount of image information missing (as shown on the right in Figure 17-5), as well as every quality level in between.



**Figure 17-5:** Lossless compression (left) preserves all the original image information, unlike lossy compression (right), which discards some information to reduce file size.

## *Moiré*

As the old song goes, when a newscaster's tie hits you right in the eye, that's a *moiré*. If you've ever gotten dizzy watching a television personality with a checkered neckpiece on the tube, you'll know exactly what *moiré* is. When two patterns — such as the pattern of the tie and the scanning lines of the television screen — interfere with each other, a maddening new pattern appears.



Moiré can be produced when taking digital photos of subjects with a regular pattern, which is why virtually all dSLRs have an anti-aliasing filter placed over the sensor. This filter blurs the image slightly, reducing the moiré effect that would otherwise be caused by interference patterns that result under certain conditions when an analog visual image is converted to digital form.

One almost sure way to create moiré is to scan a picture that's already been published and, thus, printed through a halftone screen. The scanner's own pattern frequently produces the effect.

The best cure for moiré, whether it appears in a digital photo or scanned image, is to blur the image slightly to disguise the interference. You can sometimes improve scanned images by rescanning with the original at a slight angle to reduce the interference.

## Saturation

Take a perfectly good can of red paint, dump in an equal quantity of white, and what do you have? Pink? Well, maybe. But in another sense, what you have is a less-saturated red. *Saturation* is the purity of a color, from a full, rich vivid hue, progressing down to duller, less rich colors until you reach gray. When it comes to paint, you can reduce the saturation by adding white, black, or gray paint or by mixing in the complement of the original hue to dilute the color. With digital cameras and light, it's a little more complicated.

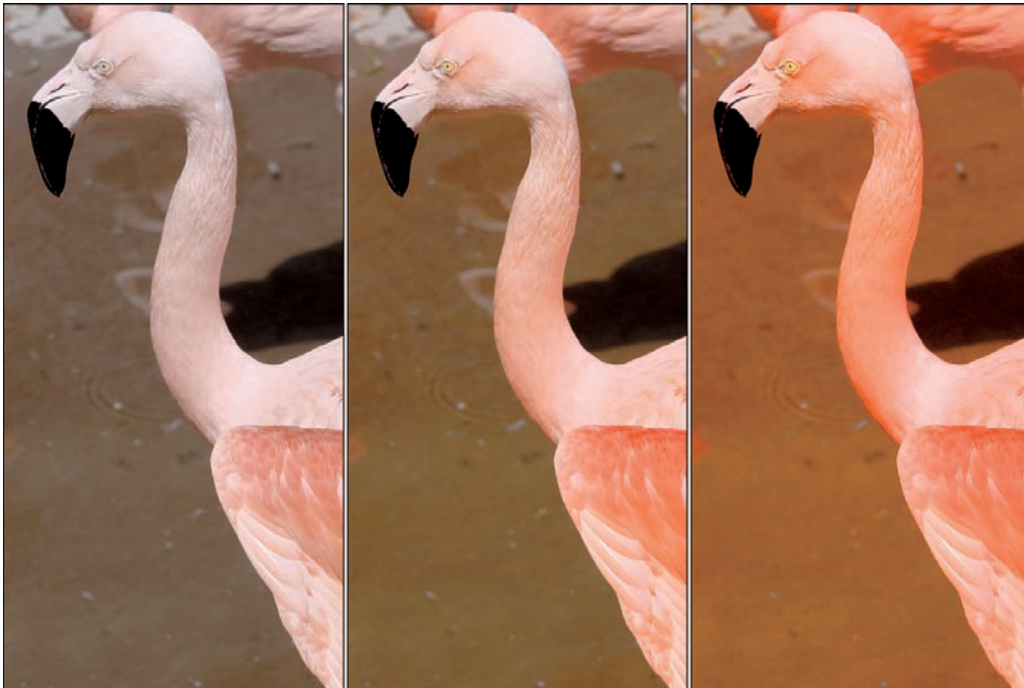
Defining saturation isn't easy using nothing more than the red, green, and blue (RGB) channels in a digital camera image. You might think that an image that has a 100 percent brightness level in, say, the red channel and a zero brightness level in the green and blue channels would have 100 percent saturation in the red. If all the channels were equal, the saturation would be zero.

Unfortunately, RGB color does a poor job of providing absolute saturation values simply as the difference among the color channels because the results aren't linear and can vary, depending on what's defined as the *white point* in an image. Instead, those who care about such things divide the characteristics of color into a different set of components: hue, saturation, and brightness (or lightness/luminance), often called HSB or HSL. *Hue* is the absolute color, as seen on the color wheel (as shown in Figure 11-16 in Chapter 11). *Saturation* is intensity of the hue, and brightness is the amount of light produced.

The distinctions are important to understand when you're adjusting the degree of saturation provided by the camera settings in your dSLR or are modifying the saturation of an image in an image editor. A low degree of saturation produces a low-key, pastel image (as shown on the left in Figure 17-6) whereas exaggerated saturation creates a garish look (as shown on the far right in the figure).

## Threshold

Thresholds do more than provide a rite-of-passage for newly married couples. In digital imaging, *thresholds* determine how a given pixel is represented in an image. By understanding how thresholds work, you can better understand, for example, why some of your images lack shadow detail or have blown-out highlights.



**Figure 17-6:** Low saturation (left), normal saturation (middle), and high saturation (right).

For example, when you take a photo, the individual photosites in the sensor begin collecting photons the instant the shutter opens. If fewer photons at a given pixel position are collected than the sensor's threshold, that pixel is represented as black. Thousands of photons might have dropped into the photosite "bucket" while a neighboring photosite might have collected only a few, but unless the sensor's threshold is reached, that pixel is black in your finished picture.

After the threshold is passed, additional photons allow the pixel to show up as brighter shades of gray, then midtones, and finally, white, at which point, another threshold is reached. Any additional photons collected don't register at all unless they happen to spill out of the bucket into adjacent photosites (producing a *blooming* effect). Increasing the ISO setting effectively lowers the threshold by multiplying the number of pixels actually collected until they can be counted by the sensor. Thresholds are used in many different ways, particularly in image editors when you use a threshold to specify a contrast level that is used to apply, say, unsharp masking to an image.

## Tolerance

Tolerance is an image-editing concept that confuses many. It generally refers to the range of *both* color or tonal values that are selected by a particular tool, such as the Magic Wand, Magic Eraser in Photoshop. (Many think tolerance involves only brightness, when in fact, color is also factored in.)

Tolerance is usually specified in values from 0 to 255 because that range is used to represent both black-and-white and color brightness values (from 0, which is black, to 255, which is white). Low tolerance settings mean that only pixels that are very close in brightness or color value are selected. For example, if you click a pixel with a value of 220 using the Magic Wand with the tolerance set to 10, adjacent pixels with color or brightness values within 10 of that value are chosen; a value of 64 would select a much larger set of pixels.

When making selections in an image editor, set tolerance levels that are, like Goldilocks' choices, "just right." With a low tolerance, you don't select enough pixels to be useful, whereas too high a tolerance selects pixels that you really don't want.

## Unsharp Masking

The term *unsharp masking* often throws new photographers because the process doesn't make images *less* sharp — it makes them sharper. The confusion comes from unsharp masking's origins as a technique originally used with photographic film.

Darkroom workers would take a sheet of negative film and create a positive image that's slightly blurred. Like any out-of-focus image, the blurred positive spreads out a little. Then, when the original negative and positive were placed together in a sandwich, the dark areas of the negative partially cancelled out (*masked*) the equivalent light areas of the reversed positive, except at the edges, where the blurring produced lighter and darker lines on each side of the boundary between those edges. Copying the sandwich produced a new image that emphasized the edges, enhancing the appearance of sharpness.

Image editors retain the name *unsharp masking* because photographers who were familiar with the process were early users of the programs. However, the Unsharp Mask filters do all their work electronically, searching for pixels that differ in value from their surrounding pixels based on a threshold level you specify. When pixels differ more sharply from their neighbors, the image editor judges that an "edge" has been defined and increases the contrast to make the edge seem sharper.

# Index

## • A •

- accessory lenses, advantages of, 104–108
- action shots
  - benefits of blur, 167
  - manual focus for, 100
  - panning technique, 168–169
  - strobes for, 170
- Adobe Camera Raw plug-in, 124, 143, 153
- Adobe Creative Suite, 204
- Adobe DNG (digital negative) format, 139
- Adobe Photoshop. *See also* selection in Photoshop
  - Auto Color, 224
  - Auto Contrast tool, 219
  - Auto Levels tool, 219
  - basics, 202–205
  - blur filters, 230–231
  - Box blur, 231
  - Brightness/Contrast controls, 219–220
  - Clone Stamp tool, 227–228
  - Color Balance, 224
  - Crop tool, 217–218
  - Curves, 220, 222–223
  - Despeckle filter, 227
  - Dust & Scratches filter, 227
  - Eraser tool, 252
  - file format options, 140
  - Gaussian Blur filter, 231
  - Healing Brush, 228
  - Hue/Saturation control, 224
  - Lasso tools, 217, 252
  - Lens Correction tool, 190–191
  - Levels, 220, 221–222
  - Magnetic Lasso tool, 239, 240
  - Patch tool, 228
  - Polygonal Lasso tool, 239
  - Quick Selection tool, 241, 242
  - Radial blur, 231
  - Reduce Noise filter, 124, 226
  - Refine Edge tool, 245
  - Shadow/Highlight controls, 220–221
  - Shape blur, 231
  - Sharpen Edged filter, 229
  - Sharpen filter, 229
  - Sharpen More filter, 229
  - Smart Sharpen filter, 230
  - Spot Healing Brush, 228
  - Unsharp Mask filter, 229
  - Variations, 224
- Adobe Photoshop Elements
  - basics, 205–207
  - Reduce Noise filter, 124
- adorama.com, 310
- Aldus, 140
- Alien Skin, 204, 231, 232
- ambient lighting, 314
- amp glow, 123
- amp noise phenomenon, 123
- Andromeda, 204
- anti-aliased edges for selection, 236
- anti-aliasing, 314–315
- anti-aliasing filter, 37
- anti-shake feature, 112
- anti-vibration technology, 128–130
- anticipating action for lag reduction, 161
- AOL, picture services, 260
- aperture
  - basics, 35
  - and depth-of-field, 15
  - and f-stop, 41–42
- Aperture Priority mode, EV adjustment
  - and, 94, 97
- Apple iPod, for backup, 70
- Applied Science Fiction, 204
- architecture photographs
  - composition of, 188–193
  - wide-angle lenses for, 109
- archives for photos, 70–71
- Askey, Phil, DPReview, 301
- Auto Color (Photoshop), 224
- Auto Contrast tool (Photoshop), 219

Auto FX, 204  
 Auto Levels tool (Photoshop), 219  
 autofocus  
   basics, 101–102  
   lock, and shutter lag, 160  
 automatic autofocus, 102  
 available lighting, 314

## • B •

background  
   adding new, 248–251  
   and composition, 181  
   out-of-focus, 112, 114  
 background noise, 38  
 backup media, 69  
 backups of photographs, 215  
 bald heads in photographs, 183  
 barndoors, 273  
 barrel distortion, 191  
 basic dSLR cameras, 55–56  
 battery, dSLR power consumption, 17  
 battery pack, for external flash, 164  
 Bayer pattern, 38  
 bhphotovideo.com, 310  
 Bible Pro, 153, 154  
 black, clipping, 221  
 blooming, 35, 86, 323  
 blurring for effect, 215, 230–231  
 bokeh, 114  
 Box blur (Photoshop), 231  
 bracketing, 93, 315–316  
 Brightness/Contrast controls (Photoshop), 219–220  
 buffer memory, for temporary photo  
   storage, 17, 45, 163–164  
 build quality of lenses, 61  
 burning, 317–318  
 burst shooting mode  
   basics, 17, 45, 162, 165  
   file format for, 275  
 BytePhoto, 307–308

## • C •

camera costs, and photo quality, 52  
 camera electronics, preventing damage  
   from flash, 175

camera selection  
   checking out key features, 60–64  
   feature categories, 52  
   having second body, 80–81  
   with upgrade potential, 53–54  
 camera shake, 125–130  
 Canon digital cameras  
   basics, 12, 30  
   image stabilization, 129  
   lenses, 61  
   RAW format variations, 138  
 Canon Digital Photo Professional, 152  
 Canon Digital Rebel, 55  
 Canon Digital Rebel XTi, 57, 104  
 Canon EF-series lenses, 54  
 Canon EOS 1D Mark III, 58, 166  
 Canon EOS-1Ds Mark II, 58  
 Canon EOS 5D, 58  
 Canon EOS 30D/40D, 58  
 Canon EOS utility, 152  
 capacity of memory card, 66, 68  
 Capture One PRO, 153, 154, 155  
 catadioptric telephoto lens, 114  
 CCD (charge coupled device) imagers, 36,  
   62  
 CDs  
   maximizing life of, 71  
   for photo backup, 69  
 center weighting metering scheme, 91  
 charge coupled device (CCD) imagers, 36,  
   62  
 chromatic aberration, 316–317  
 chrominance (color) information in JPEG,  
   142  
 circular polarizer, 73  
 cleaning  
   CDs and DVDs, 71  
   sensors, 47  
 Clipboard, copying or cutting Photoshop  
   selection to, 237  
 clipping black or white, 221  
 Clone Stamp tool (Photoshop), 227–228  
 close-up equipment, 81  
 CMOS (complementary metal-oxide  
   semiconductor) imagers, 36, 62  
 Cokin, 73  
 Color Balance (Photoshop), 224

- color correction, in image editing, 215, 223–226
  - color filters, 37, 294
  - CompactFlash (CF) memory card
    - basics, 45
    - evaluation, 308
  - complementary metal-oxide semiconductor (CMOS) imagers, 36, 62
  - compositing
    - basics, 251–254
    - creativity with, 255–256
    - pitfalls, 254–255
  - composition
    - for architecture photographs, 188–193
    - basics, 177–179
    - group photos, 184–185
    - individual portraits, 183–184
    - landscapes, 194–195
    - for message and intent, 179–181
    - for publicity and PR photography, 185–188
    - Rule of Thirds, 181–182
    - travel shots, 195–197
    - visual frames, 193
  - computer, for time-lapse photography, 131
  - continuous advance, 165
  - continuous autofocus (AF-C), 101–102, 162
  - continuous shooting mode, 162
  - contrast, 297
  - cookies, 273
  - copying Photoshop selection, 237
  - Corel Paint Shop Pro, 208–210
  - Corel Painter, 205, 210–211
  - Corel Photo-Paint, 207–208
  - CorelDRAW, 207
  - costs
    - of cameras, and photo quality, 52
    - of digital SLRs, 55
    - of memory card, and capacity, 68
  - CR2 files, 154
  - creativity
    - with compositing, 255–256
    - fast shutter speed and, 292–293
    - slow shutter speed and, 291–292
    - with telephoto lens, 117–118
    - with wide-angle lenses, 115–116
  - crop factor, 22, 47–49, 113, 166
  - Crop tool (Photoshop), 217–218
  - cropping photos, 215, 216–218
  - CRW files, 154
  - Curves (Photoshop), 220, 222–223
  - cutting Photoshop selection, 237
- D •
- DCR files, 154
  - DCT (Discrete Cosine Transformation), 142
  - dedicated flash unit, 174
  - deep focus, 115
  - defocus control, 112
  - diffraction, 277
  - demosaicing, 38
  - depth-of-field
    - basics, 10, 277
    - control of, 14–16
    - and f-stop, 15, 44
    - hyperfocal distance and, 319
    - maximizing, 97
    - telephoto lens and, 119
    - wide-angle lenses to increase, 115
  - depth-of-field preview, 10
  - Despeckle filter (Photoshop), 227
  - diaphragm in lens, 44
  - diffused lighting, 184, 272, 273
  - Digital Negative Converter, 139
  - digital photography, advantages of, 1
  - Digital Photography Review, 301–303
  - digital SLRs
    - advantages of, 8, 9
    - basics, 7–9
    - comparisons, 302, 303
    - components, 34
    - controls location, 19
    - costs, 55
    - downsides, 21–26
    - versus film SLR, 9
    - manual for, 282
    - overcoming quirks, 46–49
    - special features, 63–64
    - types
      - basic cameras, 55–56
      - dSLR-like, 59–60
      - entry-level enthusiast, 57–58
      - professional cameras, 58–59
      - prosumer, 58
      - weight of, 25–26

digital video (DV) camcorder, 26  
 Discrete Cosine Transformation (DCT), 142  
 DNG (digital negative) file format, 139  
 documentation for camera, 282  
 dodging, 317–318  
 downsampling, 32  
 DPReview, 301–303  
 duplex printing, 265  
 dust  
   automatic removal, 133  
   and sensor, 22–23  
 Dust & Scratches filter (Photoshop), 227  
 DVDs  
   for archiving images, 70  
   maximizing life of, 71  
   for photo backup, 69, 150  
 dye-sublimation printers, 267–268  
 dynamic focus area, 101  
 dynamic range of sensors, 87, 219

## ● E ●

ears, in photographs, 184  
 eBay, 310–312  
 eBay auctions, photos for, 275  
 Edgerton, Harold, 170  
 effects filters, creating, 293–294  
 electronic flash. *See* flash  
 electronic viewfinder (EVF)  
   basics, 10, 43  
   internal, 59  
 entry-level enthusiast dSLR, 57–58  
 Eraser tool (Photoshop), 252  
 EV (exposure value)  
   basics, 90, 94  
   for night photos, 122  
 EXIF data, 149  
 exposure  
   basics, 40–43, 86–88  
   bracketing, 315  
   camera systems, 62  
   and histograms, 88–90  
   metering system to fine-tune, 90–93  
   ways to choose, 94–98  
 exposure time, 41  
 exposure value (EV)  
   basics, 90, 94  
   for night photos, 122

extension tubes, 81, 82, 110, 288  
 Extensis, 204  
 external flash, 164, 174–175  
 Eye Candy, 231  
 eye-point, 24

## ● F ●

f-stop  
   and aperture, 41–42  
   to correct exposure, 90, 276–277  
   and depth-of-field, 15, 44  
   ND filter and, 72  
 feathered edges for selection, 236, 239  
 feedback on eBay, 311–312  
 feet, in photographs, 183  
 field of view, of lens, 22  
 file formats  
   choosing, 144–147  
   DNG (digital negative), 139  
   JPEG, 137, 138, 141–143, 145–147  
   proliferation, 138  
   RAW, 137, 138, 143–144, 147–148  
   saving photo in RAW and JPEG, 147  
   TIFF, 137, 138, 140–141, 144–145  
 fill flash, 318  
 film SLR, versus digital SLRs, 9  
 filters  
   basics, 71–73  
   creating, 293–294  
   gradient color, 195  
   for infrared photos, 284  
   neutral density (ND), 72, 73  
   for Photoshop selection, 237  
   size of, 54  
   types, 73  
 filters in software, for image editing,  
   231–233  
 fireworks, 295–296  
 first-shot delays, minimizing, 162–163  
 fish-eye lens, 151  
 fish-eye view, 106  
 fixed-focal-length lenses, 44, 108  
 flare, from telephoto lens, 119  
 flash  
   basics, 78  
   coordinating with shutter, 172–174  
   at different distances, 171–172



disadvantages, 172  
 external, 164, 174–175  
 fill flash, 318  
 freezing action, 293  
 lag from recharging, 160  
 Manual Exposure mode and, 98  
 minimizing delays from, 164  
 optimal distance for, 172  
 strobes, 170  
 and telephoto lens, 119  
 tools for triggering, 79–80  
 types, 78–79  
 and wide-angle lens, 117  
 flash memory  
   basics, 45  
   versus hard disk, 67  
 flash sync speed, 172  
 focal length  
   basics, 44  
   and depth-of-field, 15  
   ranges, 61  
 focal plane shutter, 172  
 focus assist lamp, 101  
 focus zones, 162  
 focusing system  
   autofocus, 101–102  
   automatic or manual, 63  
   basics, 62–63, 99  
   manual, 99–100  
   and shutter lag, 162  
 folders for storing photos, 214  
 form factor of memory card, 66  
 Foveon CMOS imager, 39  
 framing subject of photo, 193  
 freezing action, 167–171  
 front curtain, 172  
 front-curtain sync, 173  
 Fuji, 12  
 Fujifilm cameras, 36  
 Fujifilm FinePix S3 Pro UVIR D-SLR, 133  
 Fujifilm FinePix S5 Pro, 58  
 Fujifilm SuperCCD SR sensor, 39

## • G •

Galbraith, Rob, 68, 308  
 Gaussian Blur filter (Photoshop), 231

gelatin filters, 73  
 ghost image, preventing, 173  
 glass filters, 73  
 glasses, avoiding reflections from, 184  
 gobos, 273  
 GoLive (Adobe), 204  
 Google, newsgroup searches, 305, 306  
 gradient color filters, 195  
 grain, adding, 297  
 GraphicConverter, 153  
 Greeks, Golden Rectangle, 181  
 group photos, 184–185

## • H •

hands in photographs, 183  
 hard disk, miniature  
   basics, 66  
   versus flash memory, 67  
 hardwired Prontor-Compur (PC)  
   connection, 79  
 harsh lighting, 193  
 HDR (high dynamic range), 87  
 head of tripod, 77  
 Healing Brush (Photoshop), 228  
 high contrast, 219  
 high dynamic range (HDR), 87  
 high-speed sync, 174  
 highlight details, exposure to preserve, 87  
 histograms  
   absence of live, 24  
   and exposure, 88–90  
   in Photoshop Levels dialog box, 221–222  
 Hitachi, 67  
 hood for lens, 119  
 horizon, positioning on landscape photos,  
   195  
 horizontal composition, 180  
 hot mirror filter, 132, 284  
 hot shoe connection, 80  
 Hoya R72 filter, for infrared photos, 284  
 hue  
   basics, 224, 225, 321  
   manipulating, 296  
 Hue/Saturation control (Photoshop), 224  
 hyperfocal distance, 319

## • I •

Illustrator (Adobe), 204  
 image editing, 201  
   adding new background, 248–251  
   adding to, 248  
   basics, 280–282  
   blurring for effect, 230–231  
   color correction, 223–226  
   combining several photographs, 251–256  
   creativity in, 298  
   cropping, 216–218  
   filters, 231–233  
   selective modifications, 236–237  
   sharpening of images, 228–230  
   spot removers, 226–228  
   subtracting from, 245–247  
   tonal adjustments, 219–223  
   workflow workarounds, 213–215  
 image editors, 20–21. *See also* Adobe  
   Photoshop  
   Adobe Photoshop Elements, 205–207  
   basics, 202  
   Corel Paint Shop Pro, 208–210  
   Corel Painter, 210–211  
   Corel Photo-Paint, 207–208  
   noise reduction with, 124  
   for RAW files  
     basics, 150  
     Canon Digital Photo Professional, 152  
     Canon EOS utility, 152  
     Nikon Capture NX, 151  
     third-party applications, 153–154  
   Ulead PhotoImpact, 212–213  
 image stabilization, 125–130  
 InDesign (Adobe), 204  
 indoor sports, lens for, 109  
 InfranView, 153, 154  
 infrared filter, 37, 73  
 infrared photos  
   basics, 131–133, 283–285  
   filter for, 24  
 inkjet printers, 264–266  
 input tray on printer, 266  
 internal electronic viewfinder (EVF), 59  
 interpolation, 31, 38  
 inverse-square law, 171

ISO (International Organization for Standardization), 12  
   for night photos, 122  
   and noise, 13–14, 38, 280  
 ISO Auto option, 97  
 isolating subject, telephoto lens for, 118

## • J •

JPEG file format, 137, 138, 141–143, 145–147

## • K •

keh.com, 310  
 Keppler, Herbert, *Popular Photography & Imaging*, 304  
 Kodak DCS 460, 55  
 Kodak picture services, 260  
 Kurosawa, Akira, 115, 178

## • L •

lag. *See also* shutter lag  
   minimizing first-shot delays, 162–163  
   minimizing flash delays, 164  
   minimizing shot-to-shot delays, 163–164  
 landscapes  
   composition of, 194–195  
   wide-angle lens for, 110  
 Lasso tools (Photoshop), 217, 239–240, 252  
 lateral chromatic aberration, 316  
 layers in Photoshop  
   to add to image, 248  
   to subtract from image, 246  
 LCD  
   on point-and-shoot digital camera, 10  
   working without preview, 23–24  
 Lens Correction tool (Photoshop), 190–191  
 lens hood, 119  
 lens lust, 8, 279  
 lenses, 35  
   advantages of accessory, 104–108  
   and camera selection, 61  
   capabilities, 279–280  
   concepts, 112–114  
   flexibility, 19–20

- macro, 108, 110, 112, 279
  - prime, 20, 44, 108–112
  - switching, 8
  - telephoto, 8, 107
    - basics, 8, 107, 111, 279
    - and camera shake, 126
    - creative use, 117–118
    - impact on photo sharpness, 75
    - pitfalls, 119
  - wide-angle
    - for architecture photographs, 188
    - basics, 22, 106, 280
    - creative use, 115–116
    - for landscape photos, 194
    - pitfalls, 117
    - zoom lenses, 110
  - Levels (Photoshop), 220, 221–222
  - light-sensitive component, 35
  - light sensitivity, measuring, 12
  - lighting
    - ambient versus available, 314
    - for architecture photographs, 192
    - common problems, 192–193
    - Manual Exposure mode to balance, 98
    - and photo quality, 271–273
    - for portraits, 184
    - shooting in low, 104
    - for small objects, 286
  - linear polarizer, 73
  - lock, for exposure, 92–93
  - longitudinal chromatic aberration, 316
  - lossless compression, 141, 319–320
  - lossy compression, 142, 319–320
  - low contrast, 219
  - low light, shooting in, 104
  - luminance in JPEG, 142
  - The Luminous Landscape, 307
- M ●
- macro photography
    - lens for, 108, 110, 112, 279
    - manual focus for, 99
    - telephoto lens for, 118
  - Macromedia, 204
  - Magic Wand tool (Photoshop), 240–242
  - Magnetic Lasso tool (Photoshop), 239, 240
  - magnification factor, 22
  - magnification of lens, and depth-of-field, 15
  - Manual Exposure mode, 97
  - manual modes, for reduced shutter lag, 162
  - marching ants, 236
  - Marquee selection (Photoshop), 238–239
  - masking in Photoshop, 237
  - megapixels
    - basics, 29
    - problems of excess, 33
  - memory card
    - basics, 45, 66–68
    - delay from writing to, 160
    - on eBay, 312
    - file size and consumption, 33, 274
    - flash memory versus hard disk, 67
    - printer slot for, 265, 266
    - risk of lost photos, 69
    - speed of, 163
    - transferring files from, 275
    - writing JPEG files to, 146
  - memory, for TIFF requirements, 145
  - mergers, avoiding, 196
  - metering system to fine-tune exposure, 90–93
  - microlenses, 37
  - mid-range zoom lens, 111
  - Miranda, Fred, 309
  - mirror telephoto lens, 114
  - modems, 142
  - moiré, 320–321
  - monolights, 79
  - monopod, 76
  - motion picture clips, 26
  - movement, camera detection of speed, 167–168
  - moving objects, vanishing, 72
  - multiplication factor, 48
  - multipoint metering, 92
- N ●
- National Institute of Standards Technology (NIST), 70
  - nature photography, 307

ND (neutral density) filter  
 for architecture photographs, 193  
 basics, 72, 73  
 nearest subject, autofocus on, 101  
 Neat Image, 124  
 NEF files, 154  
 neutral density (ND) filter  
 for architecture photographs, 193  
 basics, 72, 73  
 newsgroups, 305–306  
 newsreader, 305, 306  
 night photos  
 basics, 122  
 at short shutter speeds, 122  
 Nikkor lens, 106  
 Nikon cameras  
 basics, 30, 36, 53–54  
 image stabilization, 129  
 lens with defocus control, 112  
 lenses, 61  
 RAW format variations, 138  
 Nikon Capture NX, 151  
 Nikon D2xs, 58  
 Nikon D2Xs model, sequence shooting, 166  
 Nikon D40, 55, 104  
 Nikon D40x, 55, 104  
 Nikon D80, 57  
 Nikon D200, 58  
 Nikon LBCAST CMOS sensor, 39  
 Nikon zoom lens, 108  
 noise  
 background, 38  
 basics, 1, 280  
 high ISO settings and, 122  
 Noise Ninja, 124  
 noise reduction  
 basics, 12–14, 123–124  
 with image editors, 124, 226  
 non-antialiased edges for selection, 236  
 noses in photographs, 184





ohnoseconds, 21  
 online resources  
 BytePhoto, 307–308  
 Digital Photography Review, 301–303  
 eBay, 310–312

Fred Miranda, 309  
 The Luminous Landscape, 307  
 news groupies, 305–306  
 PBase, 300–301  
*Popular Photography & Imaging*, 304–305  
 Rob Galbraith, 308  
 Shutterbug, 303–304  
 optical image stabilization, 112  
 ORF files, 154  
 out-of-focus areas of image, 114  
 outdoor sports, lens for, 109  
 output tray on printer, 266  
 overexposed image, histogram for, 89



PageMaker (Adobe), 204  
 Paint Shop Pro (Corel), 208–210  
 Painter (Corel), 205, 210–211  
 painting with light, 192  
 panning technique, 168–169  
 panorama series, tripod for, 75  
 paper, printer options for, 265  
 Patch tool (Photoshop), 228  
 PayPal, 312  
 PBase, 300–301  
 peak action, catching, 169–170  
 PEF files, 154  
 Pentax K10, 57  
 Pentax K10D, 104  
 Pentax/Samsung cameras, 36, 53, 55, 129  
 personal storage devices (PSDs), 70  
 perspective control lens, 109, 112, 190  
 perspective distortion, 189  
 Phase One C1 Pro, 153, 154, 155  
 photo galleries, online, 300–301  
 Photo-Paint (Corel), 207–208  
 photographs. *See also* prints  
 backups of, 215  
 combining several, 251–256  
 displaying on Web, 258  
 folders for organizing, 214  
 improvement options  
 angle of shot, 278  
 f-stop, 276–277  
 focus, 277–278  
 image editing, 280–282  
 lenses, 279–280

- lighting, 269–273
    - noise, 280
    - resolution, 273–276
    - shutter speed, 276
  - risk of lost, 69
  - use, and resolution, 30
  - PhotoImpact (Ulead), 212–213
  - photons, 12, 35
  - photosites, 29, 35, 113
  - PictBridge cable, printer connection for, 265, 266
  - pincushion distortion, 191
  - pinhole camera, digital SLR as, 287
  - pixels
    - adding or dropping, 32
    - basics, 27–28
    - determining camera needs for, 30
    - matching to print sizes and printers, 31
    - selection in Photoshop based on similar hue, 240
  - point-and-shoot cameras
    - design, 18–19
    - LCD on, 10, 177
    - speed, versus dSLRs, 17
  - polarizing filters, 73
  - Polygonal Lasso tool (Photoshop), 239
  - Popular Photography & Imaging* magazine, 304–305
  - portraits
    - basics, 183–184
    - lens for, 109
  - post-processing, 201. *See also* image editing
  - PR photography, composition for, 185–188
  - preflash, 174
  - preview, depth-of-field, 10
  - prime lenses, 20, 44, 108–112
  - print size
    - at different resolutions, 32
    - matching to pixels to, 31
  - printers
    - basics, 263
    - dye-sublimation, 267–268
    - inkjet, 264–266
    - resolution of, 30
  - prints
    - options for creating
      - basics, 259
      - do it yourself, 260
      - local retailer or professional lab, 261–262
      - online outsourcing options, 260–261
      - reasons for, 258–259
    - professional dSLR cameras
      - basics, 58–59
      - pixel dimensions, 28
    - Programmed exposure mode, 94, 95
    - proprietary RAW format, 138
    - prosumer dSLR, 58
    - PSDs (personal storage devices), 70
    - publicity, photo composition for, 185–188
-  •
- quality of photo
    - camera costs and, 52
    - loss from repeated JPEG editing, 146
  - Quick Mask mode (Photoshop), 242–244
  - Quick Selection tool (Photoshop), 241, 242
-  •
- Radial blur (Photoshop), 231
  - RAF files, 154
  - RAW file format
    - archiving, 149–150
    - basics, 137, 138, 143–144, 147–148
    - conversion in workflow, 214
    - image editors
      - basics, 150
      - Canon Digital Photo Professional, 152
      - Canon EOS utility, 152
      - Nikon Capture NX, 151
      - third-party applications, 153–154
      - salvaging images from, 148–149
  - rear curtain, 172
  - rear-curtain sync, 173
  - Reduce Noise filter (Photoshop), 124, 226
  - Refine Edge tool (Photoshop), 245
  - resampling, 31

- resolution
    - of photo, 30, 273–276
    - print sizes at different, 32
    - of printers, 30, 265
    - of sensor, 29
  - RGB+E sensor technology, 39
  - Rule of Thirds, 181–182
- S •
- saturation, 224, 225, 296, 321–322
  - saving Photoshop selection, 237
  - Scene modes, 95
  - Secure Digital High Capacity (SDHC)
    - memory card, 46
  - Secure Digital (SD) memory card
    - basics, 45, 46
    - evaluation, 308
  - selection in Photoshop
    - adjusting, 244–245
    - basics, 236, 238
    - border for, 236
    - changes, 237
    - with Lasso tool, 239–240
    - with Magic Wand tool, 240–242
    - Marquee selection, 238–239
    - Quick Mask mode, 242–244
  - selective focus, 99
  - sensors
    - basics, 11–12, 35
    - cleaning, 47
    - cleaning kit, 81
    - crop factor, 113
    - and dirt, 22–23
    - dynamic range of, 87
    - exceptions, 39
    - heat, and noise, 123
    - and image processors, 62
    - operation by, 35–43
  - sequence shooting, 165–166
  - Series *x* adapter ring, 293
  - Shadow/Highlight controls (Photoshop), 220–221
  - shadows, fill flash to soften, 318
  - shakiness, 125–130
  - Shape blur (Photoshop), 231
  - Sharpen Edged filter (Photoshop), 229
  - Sharpen filter (Photoshop), 229
  - Sharpen More filter (Photoshop), 229
  - sharpening of images
    - basics, 215, 228–230
    - lens change and, 105
  - shooting angle, impact on composition, 180
  - shot-to-shot time
    - minimizing delays, 163–164
    - speed of, 17
  - shutter
    - basics, 35
    - coordinating with flash, 172–174
    - and exposure time, 41
  - shutter lag
    - basics, 18, 21, 158–159
    - minimizing, 160–162
    - sources of, 160
  - Shutter Priority mode, EV adjustment and, 95, 96–97
  - shutter speed
    - for action shots, 167
    - to correct exposure, 90, 276
    - creativity with fast, 292–293
    - creativity with slow, 291–292
    - and exposure, 93
    - ND filter and, 72
    - tripod for long, 75
  - Shutterbug, 303–304
  - Shutterfly, picture services, 260
  - Sigma 10-20mm f/4-5.6 optic, 106
  - Sigma lenses, 61
  - single autofocus (AF-S), 102, 162
  - single lens reflex (SLR), 7, 103
  - skewed lines, in wide-angle shots, 117
  - slave device for external flash, 79, 174
  - slow-sync, 173
  - SLR (single lens reflex), 7
  - Smart Sharpen filter (Photoshop), 230
  - SmugMug, 308
  - SnapArt, 231, 232
  - Sony Alpha, 163
  - Sony Alpha DSLR-A100, 57
  - Sony cameras, 36, 129

Sony Memory Stick Pro Duo cards, 45  
 Sony sensor, emerald color addition, 39  
 special effects filters, 73  
 speed  
   point-and-shoot versus dSLRs, 17  
   of printer, 264  
 speedlight, 78–80. *See also* flash  
 Spot Healing Brush (Photoshop), 228  
 spot metering, 92  
 spot removers, in image editing, 215, 226–228  
 starry night, creating filter for, 294  
 Steadicam, 129  
 step-down rings, 54  
 storage media  
   basics, 35, 45, 69–71  
   variations in file format requirements, 147  
 strobes for action shots, 170  
 studio flash, 79  
 subscribing to newsgroup, 306  
 super-wide lenses, absence or expense of, 21–22

## • T •

tags in TIFF, 140  
 Tamron lenses, 61  
 telephoto lens  
   basics, 8, 107, 111, 279  
   and camera shake, 126  
   creative use, 117–118  
   impact on photo sharpness, 75  
   pitfalls, 119  
 tents, for soft lighting, 286  
 threads of newsgroup messages, 306  
 threshold for pixel, 35, 322–323  
 through-the-lens (TTL) metering, 174  
 TIFF file format, 137, 138, 140–141, 144–145  
 tilting, 168, 189  
 time exposure, 41  
 time lag, point-and-shoot versus dSLRs, 158–159  
 time-lapse photography, 289–290  
   basics, 131  
   USB port for, 64  
 tripod clamp, 76

Tokina fish-eye zoom lens, 106  
 Tokina lenses, 61  
 tolerance, 323  
 tonal adjustments, in image editing, 215, 219–223  
 transfer ribbon, for dye-sublimation printers, 267  
 travel shots, composition of, 195–197  
 tremor, testing for, 126  
 tripod  
   basics, 74–75  
   choosing, 76–77  
   for fireworks photos, 295  
   for infrared photos, 24, 133  
   for landscape photos, 195  
   need for, 125  
   for night photos, 122  
   reasons to use, 75–76  
 TTL (through-the-lens) metering, 174  
 twin-lens reflex, 103

## • U •

Ulead PhotoImpact, 212–213  
 underexposed image, histogram for, 89, 90  
 Unsharp Mask filter (Photoshop), 229  
 unsharp masking, 324  
 upsampling, 32  
 USB port, 64  
 Usenet, 305  
 user forums, 302

## • V •

Variations (Photoshop), 224  
 vertical composition, 180  
 viewfinder, 10–11, 43–44, 177–178  
 viewing system, 35  
 vignetting, 73, 117

## • W •

wake-up time, speed of, 17  
 Web display  
   JPEG file format for, 145  
   photos for, 275

weight, of digital SLRs, 25–26  
Wein Safe-Sync, 79, 175  
white, clipping, 221  
white point, 321  
wide-angle lenses  
  for architecture photographs, 188  
  basics, 22, 49, 106, 280  
  creative use, 115–116  
  for landscape photos, 194  
  pitfalls, 117  
  zoom lenses, 110  
wireless trigger, for external flash, 79, 174  
workflow workarounds, 213–215  
Wratten filters, for infrared photos, 284  
write-once CD-R, for archiving images, 70  
write speed, of memory card, 66, 67–68



xD cards, 45  
Xenofex, 231



Yahoo!, picture services, 260



Zoom Blur feature, in image editor, 20  
zoom lenses, 44, 110–111